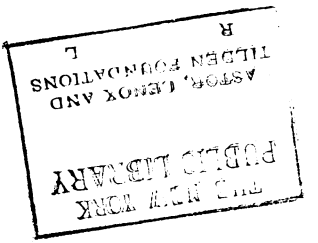
This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

https://books.google.com

Oxfordshire
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



Digitized by Google

DEFEAT OF THE PRUSSIAN GUARD BY THE 52ND LIGHT INFANTRY.

NONNE BOSSCHEN, 11th NOVEMBER 1914.

[*From the painting by W. B. Wollen, exhibited at the Royal Academy, 1916, and now the property of the Officers, 52nd Light Infantry.*]

Digitized by Google

THE OXFORDSHIRE & BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY CHRONICLE, 1914–1915.

AN ANNUAL RECORD OF THE FIRST AND SECOND BATTALIONS.
FORMERLY THE 43RD AND 52ND LIGHT INFANTRY.

TOGETHER WITH THE

WAR RECORDS

OF THE

OTHER BATTALIONS OF THE REGIMENT.

Compiled and Edited
BY
LIEUT.-COLONEL A. F. MOCKLER-FERRYMAN.

VOLUME XXIV.

From the Outbreak of War to the 31st July 1915.

NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

London:
EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE, Ltd.
Government and General Publishers,
EAST HARDING STREET, E.C.4.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
414152 A
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

NEW YORK
PUBLIC
LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

PREFACE.

THE aim of this, the first War Volume of the REGIMENTAL CHRONICLE, is to give as clear an account as possible of the events with which the Battalions of the Regiment were connected, bearing in mind the fact that the CHRONICLE is not in any sense a Regimental History, but rather a medium for the collection of material from which a history may be compiled later on.

It is outside the scope of a Regimental publication to discuss, even briefly, the complex political ramifications which directly and indirectly plunged Europe, and eventually the whole world, into war. Such matters are fully dealt with in books without number, and for our immediate purpose it is sufficient to know that war came upon us in the summer of 1914.

At that time the Regiment consisted of two Regular Battalions, one Special Reserve Battalion, and two Territorial Force Battalions. The 1st Battalion (43rd) was quartered at Ahmednagar, India, and there it remained until Turkey came into the war, when it proceeded, with the Indian Expeditionary Force "D," to Mesopotamia. The 2nd Battalion (52nd) was at Aldershot, in the 5th Infantry Brigade, 2nd Division, and went to France with the Expeditionary Force. The 3rd Battalion (Special Reserve) mobilized at

Digitized by Google

Cowley Barracks, Oxford, and proceeded to its allotted war station (Portsmouth), where its function was to train men and to prepare drafts for the reinforcement of the two Regular Battalions overseas. The 4th (T.F.) Battalion mobilized at Oxford, and the Buckinghamshire (T.F.) Battalion at Aylesbury, afterwards moving to their war stations, with the intention of training for home defence.

Such was the Regiment at the outbreak of war. How each battalion was brought up to war strength; how the number of battalions was added to, and the work that they carried out, will be found described in these pages. The story of each battalion is told in the words of an officer or soldier who was an eye-witness of events, and who wrote down his impressions within a very short time of their occurrence. In some instances private diaries and letters have been drawn upon, but these have not always been available, and, consequently, it has been often necessary to make use of the Official Battalion War Diaries which are forwarded each month to the Record Offices. In this way it is hoped that it has been possible to arrive at actual facts concerning movements and operations, while short editorial notes have been added here and there, in order to explain the general situation at the particular time.

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Regimental Diary of the War, 1914–15	1
Services of Officers Extra-Regimentally Employed	27
Services of Former Officers of the Regiment Employed or Re-employed	31
The Army List, 1st August, 1914	36
Record of the 1st Battalion	37
Record of the 2nd Battalion	117
The Depôt	299
The Record Offices	305
Territorial Force Battalions	307
1/4th Battalion Record	311
2/4th Battalion Record	328
1/1st Bucks Battalion Record	334
2/1st Bucks Battalion Record	342
Service Battalions	343
5th Battalion Record	348
6th Battalion Record	383
7th Battalion Record	385
8th Battalion Record	391
Roll of Honour	395
Obituary, 1914–15	414
List of Subscribers	415

Illustrations:

Defeat of the Prussian Guard at Nonne Bosschen, November 1914 . . . . . *Frontispiece*

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. Lethbridge, D.S.O., 1st Battalion 37

Digitized by Google

ILLUSTRATIONS (*cont.*): PAGE

S.S. "Ekbatana" sunk by Turks off Mohammerah . 45
Ashar Creek, Basra 46
Captains Foljambe and Brooke at Kurna . . . 47
Bazaar Arabs 49
"Drumming Up" 53
"Temptation Square," Kurna 57
Bridge of Boats at Amara 58
Trench Digging at Camp Tigris 60
Officers' Mess, Camp Tigris 61
No. 3 Redoubt, Mazera 63
Lieut. Davenport and Captain Foliambe at Mazera . 67
Punitive Expedition, Suwaib Creek 73
Officers' Mess, Kurna 77
Captain Startin, R.A.M.C. 80
Punting on the Euphrates 81
Officers' Mess, Kurna, May 1915 87
1st Battalion Embarking at Kurna 93
The 17th Brigade Starting the Attack 94
Captured Trenches on Norfolk Hill 95
Officers on Bahran Island 97
Prisoners Taken on Tower Hill 98
Advancing on Norfolk Hill 99
Prisoners Captured on Gun Hill 101
Officers' Mess at Ezra's Tomb 103
Ezra's Tomb 105
"The Ark," Hospital Ship 107
Lieut.-Colonel H. R. Davies, 2nd Battal on . *facing page* 117
Officers of the 2nd Battalion, 1914 117
Cave Mouth near La Cour de Soupir 159
Symphonie Interrompue 205
2nd Battalion Headquarters, Festubert . . 221
Officers, 2nd Battalion, February 1915 223
2nd Battalion near Bethune 225
No. 1 Harley Street 226
Park Lane, Cuinchy 227
French Lines at Cuinchy 229
The Brick-Stacks at Cuinchy 231

Digitized by Google

ILLUSTRATIONS (*cont.*): PAGE

In Cuinchy Trenches 232
Beuvry Square 233
2nd Battalion Officers at Havre 234
"Estaminet Corner," Festubert 235
Some 2nd Battalion Officers, April 1915 . . . 239
C Company Officers 241
A 2nd Battalion Group 243
In the Breastworks 245
Officers' Mess, Richebourg St. Vaast 247
Lieut E. H. Whitfeld and 2nd Lieut. L. A. Dashwood . 260
2nd Lieut. C. R. Horley and Lieut. C J Warner . . 261
Lieut. J. H. Boardman. 270
2nd Battalion H.Q. at Le Rutoire 271
Vermelles Trenches 273
Vermelles, June 1915 274
Headquarters at Labourse 275
Ruins of Vermelles Church 277
In Cuinchy Trenches 279
Captain G. Blewitt, M.C. 281
Lieut. P. F. Newton-King 285
Lieut. D. H. W. Humfrey 287
Captain S. F. Hammick 288
Lieut. F. E. L. Riddle 289
Captain and Adjutant R. B. Crosse, D.S.O. . . . 297
Depôt Group, November 1914 298
Depôt Group, March 1915 300
Colonel W. H. Ames, T.D. 328
Officers 2/4th Battalion, October 1914 331
Lieut.-Colonel C. H. Cobb 344
2nd Lieut. A. H. Barrington-Kennett 396
Captain F. H. Beaufort 397
Captain R. R. M. Brooke 397
2nd Lieut. L. A. Dashwood 398
2nd Lieut. R. E. B. Bull 399
Captain R. C. Evelegh 401
2nd Lieut. P. C. Girardot 402
Captain A. H. Harden 403

Digitized by Google

ILLUSTRATIONS (*cont.*): PAGE

2nd Lieut. J. L. Johnston 405
Major E. H. Kirkpatrick 406
2nd Lieut. J. S. C. Marshall 407
Lieut. H. Mockler-Ferryman 409
Lieut. C. F. Murphy 410
2nd Lieut. F. Pepys 411
Lieut. A. D. Tylden-Pattenson 412
2nd Lieut. J. B. M. Ward 412
Lieut. C. J. Warner 413
Lieut. R. G. Worthington 413

MAPS:

Part of Mesopotamia . . . . *facing page* 37
The Advance up the Tigris . . . ,, ,, 100
From Mons to the Aisne . . . ,, ,, 125
Northern France and Part of Belgium . ,, ,, 171
Neighbourhood of Ypres . . . ,, ,, 376

Digitized by Google

THE
OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

DIARY OF THE WAR.

1 AUGUST 1914 to 31 JULY 1915.

Battalions in existence on 1 *August* 1914.

1st Battalion (43rd).
2nd Battalion (52nd).
3rd Battalion (Special Reserve).
4th Battalion (T.F.).
Bucks Battalion (T.F.).

New Battalions raised up to 31 *July* 1915.

2/4th Battalion (T.F.).
2/1st Bucks Battalion (T.F.).
5th, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th Battalions (Service).

Digitized by Google

AUGUST.

1	S	**Austria at war with Serbia. Germany declared war on Russia.** 1*st Bn.* at Ahmednagar, 17th Brigade, 6th (Poona) Division; 2*nd Bn.* at Aldershot, 5th Brigade, 2nd Division.
2	Su	**Germany's Ultimatum to Belgium.**
3	M	**Germany declared war on France.**
4	Tu	**Great Britain declared war on Germany.** Mobilization ordered.
5	W	1st day of Mobilization; 2*nd Bn.* Colours sent to the Depôt. 4*th* (*T.F.*) *Bn.* mobilized at Oxford; *Bucks Bn.* mobilized at Aylesbury, and proceeded to Cosham, Hants.
6	Th	2nd day of Mobilization; 4*th* (*T.F.*) *Bn.* Colours deposited in Ch. Ch. Cathedral, Oxford.
7	F	3rd day of Mobilization.
8	S	4th day of Mobilization. 3*rd* (*Reserve*) *Bn.* mobilized at Cowley Barracks, and proceeded to Portsmouth.
9	Su	2*nd Bn.* preparing for overseas. 4*th* (*T.F.*) *Bn.* left Oxford for Swindon.
10	M	**France declared war on Austria.**
11	Tu	2*nd Bn.* training reservists and awaiting orders at Aldershot.
12	W	**Great Britain declared war on Austria.** 2*nd Bn.* received orders to embark with the Expeditionary Force. Inspected by H.M. the King.
13	Th	2*nd Bn.* embarked at Southampton. 3*rd Bn.* in training at Portsmouth. 4*th* (*T.F.*) *Bn.* and *Bucks Bn.* (T.F.) in training near Chelmsford.
14	F	2*nd Bn.* arrived at Boulogne, and encamped.
15	S	2*nd Bn.* in camp at Boulogne.
16	Su	2*nd Bn.* moved by rail from Boulogne to Wassigny, and bivouacked.

Digitized by Google

AUGUST.

17	M	2*nd Bn.* marched to Mennevret.
18	Tu	2*nd Bn.* in training at Mennevret.
19	W	Germans overrunning Belgium.
20	Th	2*nd Bn.* received orders to advance towards Mons.
21	F	2*nd Bn.* marched to La Groise (11 miles).
22	S	2*nd Bn.* marched to Pont-sur-Sambre (15 miles).
23	Su	**Japan declared war on Germany.** 2*nd Bn.* marched to Pâturages (20 miles), and thence to Frameries. BATTLE OF MONS.
24	M	RETREAT FROM MONS commenced. 2*nd Bn.* to Bavai (10 miles). 5*th* (*Service*) *Bn.* formed at Deepcut (near Aldershot).
25	Tu	2*nd Bn.* marched to Leval (10 miles).
26	W	2*nd Bn.* marched to Aymeries and thence to Barzy (17 miles). Captain P. Godsal and Lt. Button injured by blowing up of a bridge, and captured by Germans in hospital.
27	Th	2*nd Bn.* marched to Neuvillette (22 miles).
28	F	2*nd Bn.* marched to Servais (22 miles).
29	S	2*nd Bn.* at Servais, resting.
30	Su	2*nd Bn.* to Terny (5 miles).
31	M	2*nd Bn.* to Laversine (15 miles).

Digitized by Google

SEPTEMBER.

1 Tu	2*nd Bn.* marched to Cuvergnon (17 miles).
2 W	2*nd Bn.* to Chauconin (20 miles).
3 Th	2*nd Bn.* to Petit Courrois (14 miles).
4 F	2*nd Bn.* to Le Fay (9½ miles).
5 S	2*nd Bn.* to Champlet (9 miles). End of the Retreat from Mons.
6 Su	2*nd Bn.* advanced to Pézarches (3 miles).
7 M	2*nd Bn.* to St. Simeon (13½ miles).
8 Tu	1*st Bn.* at Ahmednagar received orders to mobilize. 2*nd Bn.* to La Belle Idée (11½ miles). BATTLE OF THE MARNE.
9 W	2*nd Bn.* to Domptin (9 miles).
10 Th	2*nd Bn.* to Monnes (12 miles).
11 F	2*nd Bn.* to Beugneux (13 miles).
12 S	BATTLE OF THE AISNE commenced. 2*nd Bn.* to Vieil Arcy, captured 107 Germans.
13 Su	2*nd Bn.* crossed the Aisne and reached Moussy.
14 M	2*nd Bn.* to Soupir; Lieut. R. M. Owen wounded. 2/4*th* (*T.F.*) *Bn.* raised at Oxford. 6*th* (*Service*) *Bn.* formed at Old Dean Common (Camberley).
15 Tu	2*nd Bn.* heavily shelled near Soupir.
16 W	2*nd Bn.* heavily shelled. Lieuts. Worthington, Mockler-Ferryman, Girardot, and 8 men killed; Capts. Higgins and Evelegh, Lt. Tylden-Pattenson, and 8 men wounded.

Digitized by Google

SEPTEMBER.

17	TH	*2nd Bn.* in trenches near Soupir.
18	F	*2nd Bn.* at La Cour de Soupir; Captain Evelegh and Lt. Tylden-Pattenson recovered of their wounds and returned to duty.
19	S	*2nd Bn.* at Soupir, lost Captain Evelegh and Lt. Barrington-Kennett killed, and Captain Blewitt and 32 men wounded.
20	SU	*2nd Bn.* in trenches near Soupir, subjected to shelling and M.G. fire.
21	M	*2nd Bn.* relieved from trenches, moved to Dhuizel, in reserve.
22	TU	*2nd Bn.* at Dhuizel, received a reinforcement of 120 men from England.
23	W	*2nd Bn.* resting in billets at Dhuizel.
24	TH	*2nd Bn.* at Dhuizel.
25	F	*2nd Bn.* digging trenches near Dhuizel.
26	S	*7th Bn.* formed at Oxford, and moved to camp Codford St. Mary.
27	SU	*2nd Bn.* at Dhuizel, held in readiness to move.
28	M	*2nd Bn.* training and digging trenches S. of Dhuizel.
29	TU	*2nd Bn.* moved from Dhuizel to Bourg (3½ miles).
30	W	*2nd Bn.* at Bourg; 1 company in trenches with heavy artillery.

Digitized by Google

OCTOBER.

1 Th	2*nd Bn.* moved from Bourg to La Cour de Soupir trenches.
2 F	2*nd Bn.* Soupir trenches; 3 companies in front line; 1 man killed.
3 S	2*nd Bn.* in trenches, had 3 men killed and 19 wounded.
4 Su	2*nd Bn.* had 1 man killed, 9 men wounded.
5 M	2*nd Bn.* 6 men wounded by shrapnel in La Cour de Soupir farmyard.
6 Tu	2*nd Bn.* at La Cour de Soupir; enemy's artillery quieter.
7 W	
8 Th	
9 F	
10 S	
11 Su	
12 M	2*nd Bn.*, in La Cour de Soupir trenches, under orders to move. Casualties to date; 5 officers and 32 men killed; 5 officers 110 men wounded.
13 Tu	
14 W	2*nd Bn.* moved from Soupir to Vauxière on relief by French troops, and entrained at Fismes for Flanders. 8*th Bn.*, formed at Oxford, proceeded to Codford.
15 Th	2*nd Bn.* detrained at Hazebrouck and marched to Morbeck.
16 F	2*nd Bn.* at Morbeck (Morbecque) ready to move.

Digitized by Google

OCTOBER.

17 S	*2nd Bn.* marched to Godewaersvelde.
18 Su	*2nd Bn.* halted for the day.
19 M	*2nd Bn.* marched to Poperinghe.
20 Tu	FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES began. *2nd Bn.* marched to Pilkem and took up outposts.
21 W	*2nd Bn.* ACTION AT LANGEMARCK (First Battle of Ypres); 5 officers and 61 men killed; 5 officers and 143 men wounded; 3 men missing; total casualties, 217.
22 Th	*2nd Bn.* in trenches on the Haanixbeck; 7 men killed, 8 wounded.
23 F	*2nd Bn.* on the Haanixbeck; 2 men killed; 2 officers and 5 men wounded.
24 S	*2nd Bn.*, on relief by the French, moved to east of Ypres, thence to Gheluvelt in support, and at night to Veldhoek; 1 man killed, 3 wounded.
25 Su	*2nd Bn.* to trenches N.E. corner of Polygone Wood.
26 M	*2nd Bn.* moved to wood S.E. of Westhoek.
27 Tu	*2nd Bn.* advanced to support 6th Brigade.
28 W	*2nd Bn.* to trenches N.E. corner of Polygone Wood; 1 man killed; 1 officer and 18 men wounded.
29 Th	*2nd Bn.* to N.W. corner of Polygone Wood.
30 F	*2nd Bn.* moved to W. of Zwarteleen, and dug trenches.
31 S	*2nd Bn.* engaged in wood-fighting near Zwarteleen; 8 men killed, 34 wounded, 3 missing.

Digitized by Google

NOVEMBER.

1	Su	2*nd Bn.* near Zwarteleen heavily engaged; 7 men killed, 48 wounded, 9 missing.
2	M	2*nd Bn.* wood-fighting; 1 man wounded.
3	Tu	2*nd Bn.* near Zwarteleen; Lieuts. Pepys and Pendavis gained D.S.O., and Privates Merry and Hall D.C.M.; 1 man killed, 1 officer and 9 men wounded.
4	W	2*nd Bn.* in trenches near Zwarteleen shelled all day; 9 men wounded.
5	Th	**Great Britain declared war on Turkey.** 2*nd Bn.* in trenches near Zwarteleen.
6	F	2*nd Bn.* near Zwarteleen, had 1 officer and 1 man killed, and 6 men wounded.
7	S	2*nd Bn.* in same trenches; 1 man killed and 1 wounded.
8	Su	2*nd Bn.* relieved in trenches by London Scottish; 2 men wounded.
9	M	2*nd Bn.* moved to trenches near Verlorenhoek. N.C.O.'s promoted 2nd Lieuts. for Service in the Field: G. Field, C. Dean, J. Jones, W. W. Wooding.
10	Tu	2*nd Bn.* in Corps Reserve near Verlorenhoek.
11	W	2*nd Bn.* attacked and routed the Prussian Guard in NONNE BOSSCHEN Wood, killing a great number; 1 officer and 4 men killed, 1 officer and 21 men wounded.
12	Th	2*nd Bn.* engaged in Polygone Wood; 1 officer and 7 men killed, 14 men wounded.
13	F	2*nd Bn.* in Polygone Wood; 1 man killed.
14	S	2*nd Bn.* relieved, and moved to Molenaareelsthoek trenches; 1 man wounded.
15	Su	2*nd Bn.* relieved by a French regiment, and moved to trenches near Westhoek.
16	M	2*nd Bn.* had 2 men killed and 3 wounded; relieved by another French regiment, and moved to Ypres.

Digitized by Google

NOVEMBER.

17	Tu	2*nd Bn.* in billets at Ypres.
18	W	1*st Bn.* left Ahmednagar by train and arrived in Bombay. 2*nd Bn.* marched to Bailleul for rest.
19	Th	1*st Bn.* with 17th (Ahmednagar) Brigade, 6th (Poona) Division, Indian Exped. Force "D," embarked at Bombay for Mesopotamia.
20	F	1*st Bn.* sailed for the Persian Gulf.
21	S	2*nd Bn.* in rest at Bailleul.
22	Su	1*st Bn.* off Bunder Abbas (Persian Gulf).
23	M	2*nd Bn.* Short leave to England opened for officers and N.C.O.'s
24	Tu	2*nd Bn.* in billets at Bailleul.
25	W	2*nd Bn.* went into trenches near Wytschaete ; 1 man wounded.
26	Th	1*st Bn.* reached Mesopotamia. 2*nd Bn.* in trenches near Wytschaete ; 3 men killed, 1 officer and 2 men wounded.
27	F	2*nd Bn.* had 3 men wounded ; relieved in trenches, and returned to billets at Bailleul.
28	S	1*st Bn.* still on board ship in the Shatt-el-Arab.
29	Su	1*st Bn.* on board ship 10 miles below Mohammerah. 2*nd Bn.* at Bailleul.
30	M	2*nd Bn.* A reinforcement of 80 men arrived from England.

Digitized by Google

DECEMBER.

1 Tu	*2nd Bn.* at Bailleul. Lieuts. C. S. Baines, R. B. Crosse, A. V. Spencer, gazetted D.S.O.
2 W	*2nd Bn.* at Bailleul.
3 Th	*2nd Bn.* H.M. the King inspected troops on the Meteren Road; a reinforcement of 208 men and 4 officers arrived from England.
4 F	*1st Bn.* anchored below Basra.
5 S	*1st Bn.* reached Camp Magil, above Basra, and disembarked.
6 Su	*1st Bn.* pitching tents, unloading stores, etc.
7 M	
8 Tu	*1st Bn.* at Magil, road-making, etc.
9 W	
10 Th	*1st Bn.* on outpost, Magil.
11 F	
12 S	
13 Su	
14 M	
15 Tu	
16 W	

Digitized by Google

DECEMBER.

17	Th	
18	F	
19	S	
20	Su	
21	M	
22	Tu	
23	W	2*nd Bn.* moved from Bailleul to La Couture.
24	Th	
25	F	**Christmas Day.** 1*st Bn.* Camp Magil, Mesopotamia. 2*nd Bn.* La Couture; all other battalions in billets at home.
26	S	
27	Su	2*nd Bn.* in trenches near Richebourg l'Avoué.
28	M	2*nd Bn.* in trenches; 1 man killed and 1 wounded.
29	Tu	1*st Bn* moved up Tigris to Kurna ("Garden of Eden"). 2*nd Bn.* relieved in trenches; 1 man wounded.
30	W	
31	Th	2*nd Bn.* returned to the trenches.

Digitized by Google

JANUARY.

1	F	1*st Bn.* took part in reconnaissance in front of Kurna. 2*nd Bn.* Captain G. Blewitt awarded M.C.
2	S	1*st Bn.* entrenching Camp Tigris. 2*nd Bn.* in trenches near Richebourg.
3	Su	1*st Bn.* in Camp Tigris sniped by Arabs every night.
4	M	2*nd Bn.* in trenches; 1 man wounded.
5	Tu	2*nd Bn.* left the trenches and moved to Richebourg St. Vaast; Lieut. A. D. Tylden-Pattenson killed.
6	W	1*st Bn.* Arabs made a weak attack on Camp Tigris.
7	Th	
8	F	2*nd Bn.* moved to Locon.
9	S	1*st Bn.* Arabs still threatening Camp Tigris
10	Su	1*st Bn.* moved across Tigris to Camp Mazera.
11	M	
12	Tu	2*nd Bn.* training at Locon.
13	W	1*st Bn.* building redoubts on left bank of Tigris.
14	Th	2*nd Bn.* to trenches at Le Plantin, near Festubert.
15	F	1*st Bn.* at Mazera, sniped by Arabs at night.
16	S	2*nd Bn.* in trenches.

Digitized by Google

JANUARY.

17 Su	1*st Bn.* constructing chain of redoubts and wiring front near Mazera.
18 M	
19 Tu	
20 W	1*st Bn.* Reconnaissance in force on Tigris; 14 men wounded. 2*nd Bn.* relieved in trenches after 6 days' duty; 1 man killed and 2 wounded.
21 Th	2*nd Bn.* in billets at Essars.
22 F	
23 S	
24 Su	
25 M	
26 Tu	
27 W	
28 Th	
29 F	2*nd Bn.* to trenches near Festubert.
30 S	
31 Su	

Digitized by Google

FEBRUARY.

1 M	
2 Tu	
3 W	
4 Th	
5 F	
6 S	*2nd Bn.* returned to Essars from trenches, having lost in the 8 days 2 men killed and 8 wounded.
7 Su	
8 M	*2nd Bn.* in Brigade Reserve at Essars.
9 Tu	
10 W	
11 Th	
12 F	
13 S	
14 Su	
15 M	
16 Tu	*1st Bn.* The Tigris rising rapidly and flooding the country.

Digitized by Google

FEBRUARY.

17 W	2*nd Bn.* to trenches near Festubert.
18 Th	1*st Bn.* flooded out of their redoubts at Mazera
19 F	
20 S	
21 Su	
22 M	2*nd Bn.* relieved from trenches, moved to Les Choquaux; casualties during the week, 2 men killed and 3 wounded.
23 Tu	2*nd Bn.* Colonel Davies appointed to command 3rd Infantry Brigade; Major Eden commands Battalion.
24 W	
25 Th	2*nd Bn.* moved from Les Choquaux to Bethune.
26 F	
27 S	1*st Bn.* flooded out of Camp Mazera, moved across Tigris to Kurna.
28 Su	2*nd Bn.* from Bethune to Beuvry.

Digitized by Google

MARCH.

1 M	*2nd Bn.* in Brigade Reserve at Beuvry.
2 Tu	
3 W	
4 Th	*2nd Bn.* to trenches at Cuinchy
5 F	
6 S	*1st Bn.* engaged in punishing Arab tribes.
7 Su	
8 M	*2nd Bn.* left Cuinchy trenches, having lost 1 man killed and 8 men wounded.
9 Tu	*2nd Bn.* in Brigade Reserve at Beuvry.
10 W	
11 Th	
12 F	*2nd Bn.* to Cuinchy trenches.
13 S	
14 Su	
15 M	
16 Tu	*2nd Bn.* returned to Beuvry; casualties, 2 men killed and 12 wounded.

Digitized by Google

MARCH.

17 W	
18 Th	
19 F	*2nd Bn.* Sergeant-Major A. Warnock appointed Lt. and Qr.-Mr.
20 S	*2nd Bn.* to Cuinchy trenches.
21 Su	*2nd Bn.* relieved, and returned to Beuvry.
22 M	*2nd Bn.* to trenches near Festubert.
23 Tu	
24 W	
25 Th	
26 F	
27 S	
28 Su	*2nd Bn.* relieved, and moved to billets at Gorre, having lost 3 men killed and 8 wounded.
29 M	1/*4th Bn.* went overseas, reaching Boulogne at midnight.
30 Tu	1/*4th Bn.* reached Steenvoorde (Flanders). 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* went to France, arriving Boulogne 11 p.m.
31 W	*2nd Bn.*, furnishing working parties from Gorre, had 1 man wounded. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* moved by rail to Cassel.

Digitized by Google

APRIL.

1 TH	1*st Bn.*, at Kurna, training boats' crews for operating on Tigris floods. 2*nd Bn.* in Brigade Reserve at Gorre. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Terdeghem.
2 F	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Steenvoorde.
3 S	
4 SU	1/4*th Bn.* moved to billets about Moolenacher. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets on Oultersteene-Bailleul Road.
5 M	2*nd Bn.* to trenches near Festubert (Le Plantin breastwork line).
6 TU	
7 W	1/4*th Bn.* to billets at Oosthove Farm, near Nieppe. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Lebizet.
8 TH	1/4*th Bn.* went into trenches (Ploegsteert Wood) for instruction. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* attached to 4th Division for trench instruction.
9 F	
10 S	
11 SU	1/4*th Bn.* still undergoing trench instruction, had 1 man killed.
12 M	1*st. Bn.* Camp Tigris heavily shelled by Turks. 1/4*th Bn.* to billets near Bailleul. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Steenwerck.
13 TU	2*nd Bn.*, relieved from trenches near Festubert, moved into Divisional Reserve at Les Choquaux and Essars; casualties (5th to 13th), 2 killed, 6 wounded.
14 W	
15 TH	1/4*th Bn.* to billets at Nieppe. 1/1*st* Bucks *Bn.* in Ploegsteert Wood and Touquet Berthe.
16 F	

Digitized by Google

APRIL.

17 S	1/4*th Bn.* into trenches near Nieppe (Prowse Corner Section).
18 Su	
19 M	1/4*th Bn.* relieved from trenches; 1 man wounded. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to St. Ives trenches.
20 Tu	
21 W	
22 Th	
23 F	2*nd Bn.* returned to trenches near Festubert. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Romarin.
24 S	2*nd Bn.*, on relief from trenches, moved to billets in Bethune. 1/4*th Bn.* returned to trenches.
25 Su	
26 M	
27 Tu	1/4*th Bn.*, on relief from trenches, moved to Romarin; 1 man killed. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to St Ives trenches.
28 W	1/4*th Bn.* went into new section of trench line (Ploegsteert Wood).
29 Th	1/4*th Bn.*, in trenches, had 2 men wounded.
30 F	

Digitized by Google

MAY.

1 S	1/4*th Bn.* in Ploegsteert Wood ; 1 man wounded. 1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Romarin.
2 Su	
3 M	
4 Tu	1/4*th Bn.* in Ploegsteert Wood ; 1 officer wounded.
5 W	1*st Bn.* took part in small punitive expedition against Euphrates Arabs. 1/4*th Bn.* in Ploegsteert Wood ; 1 man wounded. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to St. Ives trenches.
6 Th	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* had 3 officers and 9 O.R. wounded.
7 F	
8 S	1/4*th Bn.* in Ploegsteert Wood ; 1 man killed, 1 wounded.
9 Su	BATTLE OF FESTUBERT began. 2*nd Bn.* to trenches near Richebourg. 1/4*th Bn.* took part in Divisional demonstration ; 1 man killed, 3 men wounded.
10 M	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Romarin.
11 Tu	2*nd Bn.* in trenches near Richebourg ; 1 officer and 3 men wounded ; 1 officer missing. 1/4*th Bn.* in Ploegsteert Wood ; 1 officer wounded.
12 W	2*nd Bn.* Richebourg trenches ; 4 men wounded. 1/4*th Bn.* Ploegsteert Wood ; Captain E. G. Dashwood killed ; 1 officer and 3 men wounded.
13 Th	2*nd Bn.* in Brigade Reserve at Richebourg St. Vaast. 1/4*th Bn.* Ploegsteert Wood ; 2 men wounded.
14 F	2*nd Bn.* at Richebourg preparing for attack. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to St. Ives trenches.
15 S	2*nd Bn.* at Action of RICHEBOURG L'AVOUÉ (Battle of Festubert) ; took part in assault on German position. 1/4*th Bn.* Ploegsteert Wood ; 1 man wounded.
16 Su	2*nd Bn.* moved back into reserve in breastwork line.

Digitized by Google

MAY.

17	M	2*nd Bn.* relieved and went to billets at Richebourg St. Vaast, having lost since the 15th 20 officers and 387 other ranks.
18	Tu	2*nd Bn.* moved to Bellerive. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Romarin.
19	W	2*nd Bn.* moved to Gonnehem.
20	Th	2*nd Bn.* to Raimbert. 5*th Bn.* reached Boulogne from England.
21	F	5*th Bn.* in camp at Boulogne.
22	S	5*th Bn.* moved by rail from Boulogne to billets at Rubrouck. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to St. Ives trenches.
23	Su	**Italy declared war on Austria.** 1/4*th Bn.* Ploegsteert Wood; 1 man killed, 1 wounded.
24	M	5*th Bn.* training at Rubrouck.
25	Tu	
26	W	1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Romarin.
27	Th	1/4*th Bn.* Ploegsteert Wood; 1 man killed, 3 men wounded. 5*th Bn.* marched from Rubrouck to Steenvoorde.
28	F	1/4*th Bn.*, 1 man killed, 2 men wounded.
29	S	2*nd Bn.* to trenches near Mazingarbe in relief of French troops. 1/4*th Bn.* Ploegsteert Wood; Sergeant-Major Adams and 1 man wounded.
30	Su	1/4*th Bn.*, 1 man wounded. 5*th Bn.* marched to Zevecoten. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to St. Ives trenches.
31	M	1*st Bn.* Advance on Amara (Tigris). CAPTURE OF NORFOLK HILL by attack in boats; Captain R. M. Brooke killed; 1 officer and 3 men wounded. 2*nd Bn.* in trenches near Mazingarbe; 1 man killed, 7 men wounded. 5*th Bn.* first tour of duty in second-line trenches near Ypres.

Digitized by Google

JUNE.

1	Tu	1*st Bn.* Capture of Turkish positions on Tigris; routed Turks pursued by gunboats. 1/4*th Bn.* Ploegsteert Wood; 3 men wounded. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.*, in St. Ives trenches, had 1 officer wounded.
2	W	1*st Bn.* steamed up Tigris to Ezra's Tomb. 2*nd Bn.* relieved from trenches.
3	Th	2*nd Bn.* in billets at Philosophe. 1/4*th Bn.* Ploegsteert Wood; 1 man wounded. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Romarin.
4	F	5*th Bn.* marched to Dranoutre; companies to trenches for instruction; others formed working parties and had 2 men wounded.
5	S	1*st Bn.* left Ezra's Tomb for Amara. 2*nd Bn.* at Philosophe, had 1 man killed and 1 wounded.
6	Su	1*st Bn.* reached Amara, which had been captured by gunboats. 1/4*th Bn.* had 1 man wounded.
7	M	1*st Bn.* in billets at Amara. 2*nd Bn* moved to Verquin. 1/4*th Bn.* from Ploegsteert Wood trenches. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to St. Ives trenches
8	Tu	5*th Bn.* in trenches near Ypres; 1 man wounded.
9	W	
10	Th	5*th Bn.* in trenches; 1 man wounded.
11	F	1/4*th Bn.* to trenches about Prowse Point. 5*th Bn.* had 1 man wounded in trenches. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Petit Pont.
12	S	5*th Bn.* moved from Dranoutre to La Clytte.
13	Su	1/4*th Bn.* in trenches, had 6 men wounded.
14	M	5*th Bn.* moved to Vlamertinghe.
15	Tu	2*nd Bn.* to trenches near Vermelles. 1/4*th Bn.* relieved from trenches and moved to subsidiary line. 5*th Bn.* to trenches S. of Ypres. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Douve trenches, facing Messines.
16	W	5*th Bn.* advanced from trenches towards Wittepoort Farm; heavily shelled; lost Lt. Berlein killed; 2 officers and 30 men wounded; to Vlamertinghe at night.

Digitized by Google

JUNE.

17 Th	1/4*th Bn.* in subsidiary trenches; 1 man killed.
18 F	
19 S	2*nd Bn.* from Vermelles trenches to billets at Labourse. 1/4*th Bn.* moved into Divisional Reserve in huts between Romarin and Neuve Eglise; 1 man wounded. 5*th Bn.* to Railway Wood trenches near Ypres; 6 men killed; 2 officers and 7 men wounded. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Romarin.
20 Su	5*th Bn.* in Railway Wood trenches.
21 M	5*th Bn.* in trenches; 13 men wounded, 3 gassed.
22 Tu	2*nd Bn.* at Labourse, held Annual Waterloo Sports. 5*th Bn.* assaulted a redoubt opposite their trenches; suffered heavy casualties.
23 W	2*nd Bn.* to billets at Vermelles.
24 Th	1/4*th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* marched to Bailleul.
25 F	1/4*th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Vieux Berquin. 5*th Bn.* relieved from Railway Wood trenches and marched to billets near Poperinghe, having lost, since the 19th, 2nd Lt. Davies and 26 men killed; 2nd Lt. Jackson mortally wounded; 1 officer and 96 men wounded.
26 S	1/4*th Bn.* to Gonnehem. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Busnettes.
27 Su	1/4*th Bn.* and 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Allouagnes, in Corps Reserve.
28 M	2*nd Bn.* at Vermelles, heavily shelled; 1 man killed, 8 men wounded; marched to Bethune.
29 Tu	5*th Bn.* in billets at Poperinghe, training.
30 W	2*nd Bn.* into trenches at Givenchy.

Digitized by Google

JULY.

1 TH	*2nd Bn.* in Givenchy trenches; 1 man killed.
2 F	
3 S	
4 SU	*2nd Bn.* in Givenchy trenches; 1 man killed and 1 wounded; relieved at night and moved to billets at Le Preol.
5 M	
6 TU	
7 W	*2nd Bn.*, at Le Preol, furnishing working parties; 1 man killed.
8 TH	*2nd Bn.* returned to Givenchy trenches. *5th Bn.* to Railway Wood trenches.
9 F	*2nd Bn.* in Givenchy trenches; 2 officers wounded. *5th Bn.* had 1 man killed, 3 men wounded.
10 S	*5th Bn.*, in Railway Wood trenches, heavily shelled; 7 men wounded.
11 SU	*5th Bn.* had 1 officer and 17 men wounded.
12 M	1/*4th Bn.* to Noeux-les-Mines. *5th Bn.* in Railway Wood; 1 man killed, 13 men wounded. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Houchin.
13 TU	*2nd Bn.* in Givenchy trenches; 1 man wounded; relieved and moved to Bethune. *5th Bn.* relieved from trenches and moved to Ypres; 4 men killed, 7 wounded.
14 W	*5th Bn.* in dug-outs in ramparts at Ypres; 3 killed, 7 wounded.
15 TH	*5th Bn.* at Ypres finding carrying parties; 7 men wounded. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Lières.
16 F	

Digitized by Google

JULY.

17	S	1/4*th Bn.* moved to Ames.
18	Su	1/4*th Bn.* entrained at Berquettes for Doullens, billeted at Terramesnil. 5*th Bn.* relieved, and marched to Vlamertinghe. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* by rail to Doullens.
19	M	1/4*th Bn.* marched to Coigneux. 5*th Bn.* in dug-outs between Vlamertinghe and Poperinghe. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to bivouacs in Marieux Wood.
20	Tu	1/4*th Bn.* into trenches at Hebuterne. 1/1*st Bucks Bn* to bivouacs at Coigneux.
21	W	2*nd Bn.* to trenches at Cuinchy.
22	Th	2*nd Bn.* in Cuinchy trenches; 3 men wounded. 1/4*th Bn.* in trenches at Hebuterne; had 1 man killed and 1 wounded. 6*th Bn.* landed at Boulogne from England. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to billets at Bayencourt and Sailly-au-Bois.
23	F	6*th Bn.* moved by rail and road from Boulogne to Acquin.
24	S	2*nd Bn.* in Cuinchy trenches; 2 men wounded. 1/4*th Bn.* relieved from trenches, moved to billets at Hebuterne; 1 man wounded. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne trenches.
25	Su	2*nd Bn.* from trenches to billets at Bethune.
26	M	5*th Bn.* to trenches near Ypres; 1 man killed.
27	Tu	5*th Bn.* had 2 men killed; 1 officer and 3 men wounded. 6*th Bn.* marched from Acquin to billets at Campagne.
28	W	1/4*th Bn.* returned to trenches. 5*th Bn.* had 2 men killed, 8 wounded. 6*th Bn.* to billets at Borre. 1/1*st Bucks Bn.* to Hebuterne Keep.
29	Th	2*nd Bn.* returned to Cuinchy trenches. 5*th Bn.*, 2 killed, 20 wounded. 6*th Bn.* marched to billets between Bailleul and Oosteene.
30	F	1/4*th Bn.* changed section of trenches; 1 man killed. 5*th Bn.* 3 men killed, 1 officer and 25 men wounded.
31	S	2*nd Bn.* in Cuinchy trenches, had 5 men wounded since 29th. 5*th Bn.* 1 man killed, 15 wounded. On this date the 1*st Bn.* was at Amara (Mesopotamia); 2*nd*, 1/4*th*, 1/1*st Bucks*, 5*th*, and 6*th Bns.* in France, and all other *Bns.* under training in England.

Digitized by Google

No finer force for technical efficiency, and no body of men more hot-hearted in their keen desire to serve their country, have ever left the shores of Britain. It is a conservative estimate to say that within four months a half of their number were either dead or in the hospitals. They were destined for great glory, and for that great loss which is the measure of their glory.

SIR A. CONAN DOYLE (" *The British Campaign in France and Flanders,* 1914 ").

The British Army was so small as to be a mere drop in the ocean of armed men who were hurrying to confront one another on the plains of Belgium. It was derisively described as " contemptible." And yet, in the first three months of the war, this little army, varying in numbers from 80,000 *to* 130,000, *may justly claim to have in some part moulded the history of Europe. It was the deciding factor in a struggle where the sides—at first—were none too equally matched. For this alone its deeds are worthy of record, and they are worthy of record too for another reason. They represent the supreme sacrifice in the interests of the national honour of what was familiarly known as our " regular army."*

LORD ERNEST W. HAMILTON (" *The First Seven Divisions* ").

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS ON THE STRENGTH OF THE 1ST AND 2ND BATTALIONS EXTRA-REGIMENTALLY EMPLOYED AT THE OUTBREAK OF WAR, WITH THEIR SERVICES UP TO 31ST JULY 1915.[1]

MAJOR H. L. RUCK-KEENE, D.S.O. Temporarily medically unfit for active service. Subsequently joined the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion for duty.

MAJOR H. F. DARELL-BROWN. Commanding the Depôt. Proceeded with 3rd (Reserve) Battalion on mobilization. Appointed to the command of the 5th (Service) Battalion, 19th August 1914, but found medically unfit for active service, and appointment cancelled. Subsequently joined the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion for duty.

MAJOR C. H. COBB. At home on leave from the 1st Battalion in India. Appointed to the command of the 5th (Service) Battalion, 19th August 1914. *See* Services of Officers of that Battalion.

MAJOR W. MARRIOTT-DODINGTON. G.S.O. 2nd Grade, S.E. Coast Defences, since 16th July 1912. Special Appointment (Graded as G.S.O. 2), 3rd July 1915.

MAJOR L. H. R. POPE-HENNESSY, D.S.O. Brigade-Major, 1st West Riding Infantry Brigade, since 13th May 1912. G.S.O. 3rd Grade, 15th March 1915.

CAPTAIN E. R. CLAYTON. Brigade-Major, Durham Light Infantry Brigade, since 12th October 1910.

CAPTAIN C. H. FRITH. Adjutant of the Depôt and 3rd (Reserve) Battalion. Proceeded with that Battalion on mobilization.

CAPTAIN J. A. BALLARD. Adjutant, 4th (T.F.) Battalion. Proceeded with it on mobilization, and accompanied the 1/4th to France in March 1915. *See* that Battalion.

CAPTAIN A. G. BAYLEY. Student at the Staff College. Assistant Embarkation Officer, 5th August 1914; Brigade-Major, 2nd September 1914.

[1] This list (arranged according to seniority) includes all officers who did not take the field as Regimental Officers of the 1st or 2nd Battalions.—ED.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN AND BREVET-MAJOR H. R. M. BROOKE-POPHAM, Royal Flying Corps, Squadron Commander. Appointed D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 5th August 1914. Legion of Honour, Croix d'Officier, 3rd November 1914. Wing Commander (temp Lt.-Colonel), R.F.C., 20th November 1914; G.S.O. 1st Grade, 20th May 1915; awarded D.S.O., 23rd June 1915.

CAPTAIN J. F. C. FULLER. Student at the Staff College. Assistant Embarkation Staff Officer, 5th August 1914. Dep. Asst. Director of Railway Transport (graded as D.A.A.G.), 25th August 1914; G.S.O. 3rd Grade, 17th December 1914.

CAPTAIN R. D. KEYWORTH. Seconded for duty with West African Regiment (Sierra Leone) since February 1912.

CAPTAIN J. T. WEATHERBY. Brigade-Major, 15th Infantry Brigade. Brevet-Major, 18th February 1915; G.S.O. 2nd Grade, 3rd May 1915; mentioned in Dispatches; awarded D.S.O., 23rd June 1915.

CAPTAIN G. A. SULLIVAN. Appointed Asst. Provost Marshal, 2nd Division (graded as Staff Captain), 5th August 1914, and accompanied the Expeditionary Force to France. Graded as D.A.A.G., 10th February 1915; mentioned in Dispatches, June 1915.

CAPTAIN E. H. KIRKPATRICK. At Depôt, doing duty with 3rd Battalion, and mobilized with it; joined 2nd Battalion in France, 8th October 1914. *See* Services with that Battalion.

CAPTAIN C. G. HIGGINS. At Depôt, doing duty with 3rd Battalion (from 1st Battalion); mobilized with it; joined 2nd Battalion in France, 8th September 1914. *See* services with that Battalion.

CAPTAIN L. TUNNARD. Serving with the Egyptian Army since April 1909.

CAPTAIN J. A. POLLOCK. Serving with the Egyptian Army since December 1908.

CAPTAIN A. W. N. PONSONBY. Asst. Military Secretary, South Africa, 25th July 1914, but resigned appointment before taking it up. Restored to the establishment, 21st September 1914. *See* Services of Officers of 2nd Battalion.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN R. O. LOGAN. At Depôt. Proceeded with 3rd Battalion on mobilization. Appointed to 5th (Service) Battalion on formation. *See* Services of Officers of 5th Battalion.

CAPTAIN B. C. PARR. Serving with the N. Nigeria Regiment since November 1912.

CAPTAIN A. J. N. BARTLETT. Adjutant Bucks Battalion (T.F.); proceeded with it on mobilization, and accompanied it to France in March 1915. *See* Services of Officers of that Battalion.

CAPTAIN U. J. D. BOURKE. Royal Flying Corps (Flight Commander); mentioned in Dispatches, October 1914; Squadron Commander (temp. Major), 2nd March 1915.

CAPTAIN G. BLEWITT. A.D.C. to G.O.C. South Coast Defences. Resigned, and proceeded to France with 2nd Battalion. *See* Services with that Battalion.

CAPTAIN F. H. BEAUFORT. En route to join 2nd Battalion, to which he had been posted on promotion to Captain; joined 2nd Battalion in France, 3rd December 1914. *See* Services with that Battalion.

CAPTAIN F. V. HOLT. Royal Flying Corps (Flight Commander); mentioned in Dispatches, January 1915; Squadron Commander (temp. Major), 1st February 1915; D.S.O., 18th February 1915, for the following: "For gallantry on 22nd January 1915 in engaging, single-handed, a group of twelve German aeroplanes which were attacking the town of Dunkirk. He was subsequently joined by two of our own biplanes, which resulted in one of the German machines being brought down and its pilot and observer being captured."

CAPTAIN A. E. SANDERSON. At Depôt. Proceeded with 3rd Battalion on mobilization. Appointed to 5th Battalion on formation. *See* Services with that Battalion.

LIEUT. C. F. K. CARFRAE. Promoted Captain, 5th August 1914; at Depôt. Proceeded with 3rd Battalion on mobilization. Appointed to 5th Battalion on formation. *See* Services with that Battalion.

LIEUT. J. L. PORTAL. At outbreak of war, Company Commander (local Captain) 1st (Central Africa) Battalion King's African Rifles; continued to serve with it; promoted Captain, 17th May 1915.

Digitized by Google

LIEUT. C. R. C. BOYLE. At outbreak of war, A.D.C. to Gov. and C.-in.-C. Trinidad and Tobago (since 1912); resigned; appointed Adjutant 6th (Service) Battalion, 12th September 1914 (temp. Captain). *See* Services with that Battalion.

LIEUT. W. E. C. TERRY. Staff Captain, 5th Infantry Brigade, 5th August 1914; proceeded with it to France; wounded in the retreat from Mons, and invalided to England; G.S.O. 3rd Grade, 2nd May 1915; Captain, 10th June 1915.

LIEUT. W. G. TOLSON. At home on leave from 1st Battalion in India; posted to 2nd Battalion, and proceeded with it to France. *See* Services with that Battalion.

LIEUT. B. C. T. PAGET. At home on leave from 1st Battalion in India; posted to 5th (Service) Battalion, 1st October 1914. *See* Services with that Battalion.

LIEUT. G. F. PLOWDEN. At home on leave from 1st Battalion in India; posted to 5th (Service) Battalion, 1st October 1914. *See* Services with that Battalion.

LIEUT. A. C. M. PARIS. At home on leave from 1st Battalion in India; appointed temp. Captain, Royal Marines; seconded for service under the Admiralty, 28th February 1915.

2ND LIEUT. C. F. R. HANBURY-WILLIAMS. At outbreak of war, on temporary half-pay on account of ill-health; restored to establishment and promoted Lieutenant, 6th August 1914; posted to 5th Battalion, 26th August 1914; transferred to 9th (Reserve) Battalion, May 1915.

2ND LIEUT. CHARLES WILLIAM HUGH BAILIE. Gazetted to the Regiment as 2nd Lieut, (from the R.M.C., Sandhurst), 15th August 1914; attached to 3rd (Reserve) Battalion; promoted Lieut. temporarily, 8th January 1915; attached to Rifle Brigade.

Digitized by Google

FORMER OFFICERS OF THE 1ST AND 2ND BATTALIONS EMPLOYED OR RE-EMPLOYED, AUGUST 1914 TO 31ST JULY 1915.

I.

ACTIVE LIST.

MAJOR-GENERAL SIR J. HANBURY-WILLIAMS, K.C.V.O., C.M.G. Half-pay; Special Appointment (attached to Headquarters of the Russian Army), 5th August 1914.

COLONEL R. FANSHAWE, D.S.O., *p.s.c.* General Staff Officer 1st Grade, 5th August 1914; accompanied Expeditionary Force, with 1st Division; Brigade Commander (temp. Brigadier-General), 20th September 1914; awarded Legion of Honour, Croix d'Officier, 3rd November 1914; C.B., 18th February 1915; Major-General for Service in the Field, 23rd June 1915.

LT.-COLONEL E. D. WHITE. Half-pay; appointed to command 6th (Service) Battalion of the Regiment, 6th September 1914.

II.

RETIRED LIST.

LIEUT. A. D. R. ALDRED. Appointed temp. Captain Royal Engineers, 15th May 1915.

CAPTAIN THE HON. C. A. J. ANNESLEY. Lieut. ret. pay; Captain Spec. Res. of the Regiment; appointed Captain 1st Dragoons (Spec. Res.), 1st September 1914; to 5th Res. Regiment of Cavalry, 13th October 1914.

CAPTAIN C. B. BENSON, D.S.O. Res. of Off.; Captain 9th (Service) Battalion, 12th October 1914; temp. Major 9th (Reserve) Battalion, 28th December 1914.

CAPTAIN E. T. C. BOWER. Ret. pay; Censor (graded as Staff Lieut.), 18th September 1914.

MAJOR C. J. BOYLE. Ret. pay; Major T.F. Reserve, 1st February 1915; employed with Royal Defence Corps.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN C. A. CARDWELL. Ret. pay; Captain, 3rd Battalion; Superintendent Remount Depôt (temp. Major), 28th September 1914.

MAJOR C. O. CHICHESTER. Ret. pay. Captain, 2nd Battalion, 5th August 1914; joined with 5th Reinforcement, 13th November 1914; transferred to the Base, for duty, 29th March 1915.

MAJOR E. M. CHILDERS. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Major and 2nd in command, 6th (Service) Battalion, 5th September 1914.

COLONEL P. T. CLARK. Ret. pay; Spec. Appointment (graded as Staff Captain), School of Instruction, 25th March 1915.

MAJOR G. N. COLVILE, D.S.O. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Major 7th (T.F.) Battalion Sherwood Foresters, 1st October 1914; joined 2nd Battalion Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry, 5th February 1915; 2nd in command; to command of 7th D.C.L.I. (Lt.-Colonel), 27th July 1915.

CAPTAIN A. S. CRUM. Hon. Captain in the Army; late Lieut. 2nd Battalion; Captain, 5th Battalion, 17th September 1914; Major, 1st October 1914; transferred to 9th (Reserve) Battalion, 7th May 1915.

CAPTAIN H. R. S. COTTON. Ret. pay; employed on Recruiting Duties.

MAJOR SIR C. CUYLER, Bart. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Lt.-Colonel, commanding Depôt, 6th August 1914

COLONEL THE HON. A. E. DALZELL, C.B. Ret. pay; commanding 12th (Service) Battalion Cheshire Regiment, 1st October 1914; Brigade Commander (graded as A.A.G.), 18th January 1915.

MAJOR J. D. W. DAVY. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Major, 6th (Service) Battalion, 22nd October 1914.

CAPTAIN G. DRAGE. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Captain, 7th R. Munster Fusiliers, 4th September 1914; temp. Major, 18th November 1914.

COLONEL R. ECCLES. Ret. pay; commanding 14th (Service) Battalion Durham Light Infantry, 1st October 1914.

MAJOR R. M. FEILDEN. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; at outbreak of war employed under the Sudan Administration, as Governor of Bahr-el-Ghazal; continued in that appointment.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN C. FITZGERALD. Ret. pay; 3rd Battalion, late Lieut. 2nd Battalion; mobilized with 3rd Battalion; joined 2nd Battalion in France, 29th December 1914. *See* Services with that Battalion.

CAPTAIN THE HON. G. W. F. S. FOLJAMBE. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; temp. Major, 5th (Service) Battalion, 29th August 1914; transferred, as temp. Major, to 6th (Service) Battalion, 22nd October 1914. *See* Services with that Battalion.

CAPTAIN S. F. HAMMICK. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; attached to 3rd Battalion on mobilization; joined the 2nd Battalion in France, 30th November 1914. *See* Services with that Battalion.

LIEUT. R. E. U. HERMON-HODGE. Late Lieut. 1st Battalion; Lieut. Q.O. Oxfordshire Hussars, 19th August 1914; Captain, 29th November 1914; temp. Major, 1st December 1914.

LT.-COLONEL R. G. H. HUGHES. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; commanding 7th (Service) Battalion, 1st October 1914; resigned on account of ill-health, 22nd January 1915.

CAPTAIN W. C. HUNTER. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Special appointment (graded for pay as G.S.O. 3rd Grade), 3rd August 1914; graded as D.A.A.G., 22nd October 1914.

COLONEL F. G. L. LAMOTTE. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Brigade-Commander (temp. Brigadier-General), 5th August 1914.

CAPTAIN R. M. LOGAN. Late Lieut, 1st Battalion; temp. Captain, 7th (Service) Battalion, 25th September 1914; temp. Major, 3rd November 1914; resigned on account of ill-health, 21st July 1915.

MAJOR R. C. LUARD. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Embarkation Staff Officer (graded for pay as Staff Captain), 5th August 1914.

CAPTAIN C. J. MITCHELL. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Major, Bucks Battalion, 1st September 1914; Staff Captain, 20th February 1915.

MAJOR G. F. MOCKLER. Ret. pay; Special appointment (Cable Censor, graded for pay as Staff Lieut. 1st Class), 17th April 1915.

LT.-COLONEL A. F. MOCKLER-FERRYMAN. Ret. pay; A.A. and Q.M.G., 5th August 1914 to 14th April 1915; G.S.O. 1st Grade, 15th April 1915.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN G. S. F. NAPIER, *p.s.c.* Ret. pay; G.S.O. 3rd Grade, 1st February 1915; G.S.O. 2nd Grade, 27th June 1915.

MAJOR F. J. NEWTON-KING. Late Captain 1st Battalion; Major and 2nd in command, 7th (Service) Battalion, 28th September 1914; Lt.-Colonel commanding 7th (Service) Battalion, 22nd January 1915. *See* Services with that Battalion.

CAPTAIN H. C. NISBET. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; D.A.Q.M.G., 5th August 1914.

LIEUT. J. E. OSBORNE. Late Lt. 2nd Battalion; Captain, 6th (Service) Battalion, 22nd October 1914.

MAJOR R. L. OVEY. Late Captain 2nd Battalion; Major, 4th (T.F.) Battalion at outbreak of war; mobilized with it. *See* Services with that Battalion.

MAJOR R. C. R. OWEN, C.M.G. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; at outbreak of war employed under Sudan Administration as Governor of Mongalla; continued in that appointment.

CAPTAIN W. OWEN. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Chief Recruiting Officer, 43rd Recruiting Area, Oxford, 7th August 1914.

MAJOR C. PARR. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; at outbreak of war in Record Office, Shrewsbury, as Assistant to Colonel in Charge of Records; continued in the appointment.

MAJOR C. C. PEARSON. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; 2nd in command and Adjutant, Depôt, Oxford, 6th August 1914.

CAPTAIN R. E. SALKELD. Ret. pay; Captain, 3rd Battalion; at outbreak of war District Commissioner East African Protectorate; D.A.A. and Q.M.G., 20th February 1915.

CAPTAIN L. F. SCOTT. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Railway Transport Officer (graded as Staff Captain), 5th August 1914; joined 2nd Battalion in France, 13th December 1914. *See* Services with that Battalion.

MAJOR E. A. STANTON. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; at outbreak of war Secretary Royal Patriotic Fund; Military Secretary to the Governor-General and Commander-in-Chief, Dominion of Canada, 28th November 1914.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN L. E. S. WARD. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; at outbreak of war Commandant 4th (Uganda) Battalion, King's African Rifles (temp. Lt.-Colonel); temp. Lt.-Colonel, Royal Artillery, 5th May 1915.

MAJOR R. E. WATT. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; Major, 5th (Service) Battalion, 27th August 1914; 2nd in Command, 1st October; to 9th (Reserve) Battalion, 25th March 1915; G.S.O. at G H.Q., France, May 1915.

CAPTAIN C. J. WILKIE. Ret. pay; Res. of Off.; at outbreak of war, Secretary of Glamorgan T.F. Association; commanding 17th (Service) Battalion Welsh Regiment, 26th November 1914.

LIEUT. M. ff. R. WINGFIELD. Late 2nd Lieut. 2nd Battalion; Lieut. 3rd Battalion, 27th August 1914; posted to 2nd Battalion, and joined it in France, 8th October 1914. *See* Services with that Battalion.

Digitized by Google

ARMY LIST.—AUGUST, 1914.

THE OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

Regimental Dist. No. 43. [No. 7 District.]

The United Red and White Rose.

"Quebec, 1759," "Martinique, 1762, 1794," "Havannah," "Mysore," "Hindoostan," "Vimiera," "Corunna," "Busaco," "Fuentes d'Onor," "Ciudad Rodrigo," "Badajoz," "Salamanca," "Vittoria," "Pyrenees," "Nivelle," "Nive," "Orthes," "Toulouse," "Peninsula," "Waterloo," "South Africa, 1851–2–3," "Delhi, 1857," "New Zealand," "South Africa, 1900-02," "Relief of Kimberley," "Paardeberg."

Regular and Special Reserve Battalions.

Uniform—*Scarlet.* *Facings*—White. *Agents*—Messrs. Cox & Co.

1st Bn. (43rd Foot) .. .. *Ahmednagar* | **3rd Bn.** (Oxford Mil.) .. .. .. *Oxford.*
2nd ,, (52nd ,,) .. .. *Aldershot* |
Depôt .. .. *Oxford* | **Record Office** .. .. *Warwick*

Territorial Force Battalions.

4th Bn. .. .. *Oxford* | **Buckinghamshire Bn.** .. *Aylesbury.*

Allied Regiment of Canadian Militia.
52nd Regiment "Prince Albert Volunteers." *Prince Albert, Saskatchewan.*

Allied Regiment of Dominion of New Zealand.
6th (Hauraki) Regiment.

Colonel .. . Colvile, Hon. Lt.-Gen. *Sir* F. M., *K.C.B.*, ret. pay [R] .. 14 Sept. 13

1st and 2nd Battalions.

Lt.-Colonels. (2)
2Davies, H. R. 18Sept.11
1Lethbridge, E. A. E., *D.S.O.* 25Oct.13

Majors. (8)
2Ruck-Keene, H. L., *D.S.O.* 14Sept.07
2Darell-Brown, H. F., *(Comdg. Depôt)* 18Sept.07
Cobb, C. H. 18Sept.07 29Nov.00
1Hyde, A. C. 16Dec.08
2Eden, A. J. F. 18Sept.11 29Nov.00
s. Marriott-Dodington, W., *p.s.c.* 23Oct.11
1Carter, L. J. 23June13
s. †Pope-Hennessy L. H. R., *D.S.O., p.s.c. [I]* 25Oct.13 26Mar.00

Captains. (14)
1Stapleton, F. H., *p.s.c.* 11Sept.02
s. Clayton, E.R., p.s.c. 11Sept.02
r. Frith, C. H. 22Nov.02
1Forrest, C. E., *D.S.O.* 22Feb.03
t. Ballard, J. A. 23June03
1Henley, C. F. 3Oct.04
s.c. Bayley, A.G. 3Oct.04
f.c. Brooke-Popham, H. R. M., p.s.c. 9Nov.04 *bt. maj.* 3June13
2Wood, H. L. 14Apr.05
s.c. Fuller, J. F. C. 21June05
w.a. Keyworth, R. D. 9Oct.05
s. Weatherby, J. T., p.s.c. 30Dec.05
2Sullivan, G. A. 28Dec.08
1Brooke, R.R.M. 28Dec.08
1Simpson, R. V. 28Dec.08
2Kirkpatrick E. H. 13Feb.09
(3) 1Higgins, C.G. [I] 13Feb.09
e.a. *Tunnard, L.* 22Jan.10
2Harden, A. H. 22Jan.10
e.a. *Pollock, J. A.* 22Jan.10
2Ponsonby, A. W. N. 22Jan.10
2Dillon, H. M. 17May10
(3) 1Logan, R. O. 19Nov.10
1Morland, W. E. T. 22Jan.14

Captains—contd.
c.o. Parr, B. C. 14Mar.14
s. Stephens, R. 14Mar.14
1*Foljambe*, Hon. *J. C. W. S., Adjt.* 14Mar.14
2Evelegh, R.C. [I] 22Mar.14
t. Bartlett, A. J. N. 22Mar.14
f.c. Bourke, U. J. D. 18Apr.14
s. Blewitt, G. 18Apr.14
2Beaufort, F. H. 18Apr.14

Lieutenants. (19)
f.c. Holt, F. V. 11Jan.08
(3) 1Sanderson, A.E. 20Jan.08
(3) 2Carfrae, C. F. K. 4Nov.08
1Whittall, G. E. 11Dec.08
c.o. Portal, J. L. 7Apr.09
2*Crosse, R. B., Adjt.* 22Apr.09
s. Boyle, C. R. C. 19May09
2Terry, W. E. C. 4May10
1Tolson, W. G. 17May10
1Paget, B. C. T. 19Nov.10
2Worthington, R. G. 1Apr.11
1Powell, J. J. 24July11
1Plowden, G. F. 18Oct.12
1Davenport, F. M. 20Nov.12
1Courtis, J. H. 27Nov.12
2Southey, J. A. 25Feb.13
1Mundey, S. C. B. 17Apr.13
1Paris, A. C. M. 14Aug.13
2Baines, C. S. 8Oct.13
2Brett, R. J. 25Oct.13
1Wynter, F. C. W. 22Mar.14
2Owen, R. M. 18Apr.14
2Mockler-Ferryman, H. 27Apr.14

2nd Lieutenants. (12)
1Birch Reynardson, H. T. 19Jan.12
1Horan, K. 5Feb.13
2Pepys, F. 24May13
2Marshall, J. S. C. 17Sept.13
1Kearsley, J. S. 10Dec.13
2Tylden-Pattenson, A.D. 24Jan.14
2Newton-King, P. F. [L] 25Feb.14
1Girardot, P.C. 25Feb.14

Adjutants.
2Crosse, R. B., *lt.* 1Mar.13
1Foljambe, *Hon.* J. C. W. S., *capt.* 6May13

Quarter-Masters.
r. King, T. 24Nov.07
hon. maj. (2)24Nov.12
1Ivey, T. 22Sept.03
hon. capt. 22Sept.13
2Field, A. S. 12May09
20Feb.02
hon. capt. 20Feb.12

Special Reserve.

Captain.
Annesley, *Hon.* C. A. J., Lt. ret. pay 25Oct.13

2nd Lieutenant.
Barrington-Kennett, A. H. (*on prob.*) 5Apr.13
Button, G. T. (*H.*) 4July14 10Nov.12

3rd Battalion.

(*Officers serving on 3 July 01 in the corresponding Militia unit hold honorary Army rank equivalent to the Militia regimental rank they then held. Other officers entitled to honorary Army rank have it shown against their names.*)

Hon. Colonel.
✕*Marlborough*, Rt. Hon. *C. R. J.*, Du of K.G., T.D. (*Lt.-Col. ret. T.F.*) 14June08

Lt.-Colonel.
Higgins Bernard, F. T. (Q) (*H*) 31Mar.12

Major.
p.s. Blyth, J., *hon. l.c.* (*H*) 5May06
✕Paske, G. F., *hon. l.c.* (*Hon. Capt. in Army 2 Nov. 00*) (*H*) 12Sept.06
r.e. ✕Darell-Brown, H. F. 18Sept.07

Captains. (5)
t. ✕*Fitzwilliam, W. C. de M.*, Earl, K.C.V.O., D.S.O., *hon. m.* (*Bt. Lt.-Col. W. Rid. R.H.A.*) 11Apr.96

Captains—cont.
p.s. Barrington, *Hon.* W. R. S., *hon. m.* (*H*) 6Jan.97
North, A. K., *late* 2nd Lt. A.S.C. 4June02
Godsal, P. (*H*) 7June02
✕Cardwell, C. A., (Capt. ret. pay (*H*) ⓢ) (*Remount Service*) 7Apr.06
Salkeld, R. E. (*Dist. Commr., E. Africa Prote.* 12 *July* 06) 12July06
p.s. Dashwood, R. H. S., Capt. ret. pay (*H*) ⓢ 1Dec.07
r.e. ✕Kirkpatrick, E. H. 13Feb.09
r.e. ✕Higgins, C. G. [*I*] 13Feb.09
r.e. ✕Logan, R. O. 19Nov.10
Fitzgerald, C., Lt. ret. pay 8May11
Jackson, N., Lt. ret. pay 14Aug.13

Lieutenants. (11)
Maul, H.C. (*H*) 12Sept.06
p.s. Tatton, R. H. G. (*H*) 12Sept.06
r.e. Sanderson, A. E. 20Jan08
r.e. Carfrae, C. F. K. 4Nov.08
Turbutt, G. M. R. 5Mar.10
Spencer, A. V. (*H*) 5Mar.10

2nd Lieutenants. (8)
Smith, J. N. (*Asst. Dist. Offr., N. Provs. Nigeria,* 1 *Jan.* 14 to 19 *Sept.* 10) 12July09
Humfrey, D. H. W. 2Dec.11
Fowke, C. A. F. 1Mar.12
Pendavis, H. V. 26Apr.13
Riddle, F. E. L. 1Oct.13
Hardcastle, J. B. (*on prob.*) 17June14

Adjutant.
✕Frith, C. H., Capt. Oxf. & Bucks. L.I. 17Sept.12 (*Capt. in Army 22 Nov. 02*)

Quarter-Master.
King, T., *hon. maj.*

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Stanford's Geog.l Estab.t

Digitized by Google

THE 1ST BATTALION
OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

IN

MESOPOTAMIA

1914–1915

[With the 17th (Ahmednagar) Brigade, 6th (Poona) Division]

Lieut.-Col. E. A. E. Lethbridge, D.S.O.

Digitized by Google

1st BATTALION, 1914—THE MESOPOTAMIAN CAMPAIGN.

For several decades British interests in the Persian Gulf and in Mesopotamia had far outweighed those of any other nation. Trade was practically monopolized by British merchants; a British line of river steamers plied regularly between Basra and Baghdad; and the Turkish authorities not only welcomed British trade, with the export and import duties which resulted from it, but were also on the best of terms with the British Political Agents. The question of a Baghdad railway route to India had been considered by the British and Indian Governments throughout a great number of years, but in the end the Germans stepped in and secured the rights for the construction of the line. This may be said to have been the beginning of German influence in Turkey, and of the dream of an all-German route from Berlin to the Persian Gulf.

With the entry of Turkey into the war on the side of Germany in the opening days of November 1914 came the necessity of safeguarding British interests in Mesopotamia and the Persian Gulf by dispatching a force from India. And there were other reasons for the dispatch of this force, the principal of which were the maintenance of British prestige in the East, the protection of the new British oilfields on the Karun River, and the attempt to keep the Arab population out of the war.

The force detailed to proceed to the Persian Gulf for the above purposes was known as the Indian Expeditionary Force "D," commanded by Lieut.-General

Digitized by Google

Sir A. Barrett, and consisted of the 6th Division of the Indian Army as follows :—

16th (POONA) BRIGADE.

(Brigadier-General Delamain.)

2nd Dorsetshire Regiment, 20th Punjabis, 104th Wellesley's Rifles, 117th Mahrattas.

17th (AHMEDNAGAR) BRIGADE.

(Brigadier-General Dobbie.)

1st Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry, 22nd Punjabis,[1] 103rd Mahrattas, 119th Infantry (Mooltan).

18th (BELGAUM) BRIGADE.

(Major-General C. Fry.)

2nd Norfolk Regiment, 110th Mahratta L.I., 120th Rajputana Infantry, 7th Rajputs.

On the 3rd November the 16th (Poona) Brigade, which had been sent in the previous month to Bahrein Island (Persian Gulf) to await events, reached the mouth of the Shatt-el-Arab, and on the 6th, after a bombardment by the gunboats, captured the fort at Fao, the whole brigade landing on the Turkish bank on the following day, and occupying the oil refining works at Abadan Island, the terminus of the Anglo-Persian Oil Company's pipe-line from Ahwaz (Persia). On the 8th a reconnaissance was pushed up the Shatt-el-Arab, and on the 10th the 16th Brigade landed at Saniyeh, with a view to encamping. The Turks attacked, but were driven off.

On November 14th General Barrett and the 18th Brigade arrived, when it was decided to attack the Turks at Sahil and Zain. This was carried out on the 17th, the two Brigades, assisted by the "Odin" and

[1] Joined the Brigade at Magil, in place of the 130th Baluchis, taken out of the Brigade at Bombay.

Digitized by Google

"Espiègle," driving out the enemy, and occupying Sahil. On the night of the 21st a party was sent by land and another party by river to Basra, which was now known to have been evacuated by the Turks and in danger of being looted by Arabs. Both parties arrived at Basra on the following morning, and secured the town, which was occupied by the remainder of the two Brigades on the 23rd November, when the Union Jack was hoisted.

On the 27th the 17th (Ahmednagar) Brigade arrived in the Shatt-el-Arab, and went into camp at Magil (above Basra) on the 5th December. In the meanwhile information had been received that Kurna (Qurnah), at the junction of the Tigris and Euphrates, supposed to be the site of the Garden of Eden, was occupied by 3,500 Turks and 1,000 Arabs, with 12 guns, and General Barrett decided to attack as soon as possible. Two Indian regiments, with 2 field guns, were dispatched on the 3rd December, to reconnoitre Kurna, and to clear the enemy from the left bank of the Tigris. This was accomplished, and the force established itself in camp, where Major-General Fry joined it, with a column, on the 6th. A further reconnaissance of the enemy's position was carried out, when it was found that he had some 1,200 men and 6 guns entrenched at Muzaira'ah (Mazera), and 800 men and 4 guns at Kurna.

On the 7th December Muzaira'ah was attacked and captured, the enemy losing some 200 killed and 300 wounded, and being driven from the field.

On the 8th Kurna was attacked by the 18th Brigade, a battalion of the 16th Brigade, and some field guns, assisted by a bridging-party of sappers, and by the Royal Naval flotilla from the river. All went well, and on the following day the enemy surrendered, when Kurna was occupied by our troops.

Digitized by Google

From this date until the end of the year there were occasional rumours of Turks assembling to the north of Kurna, but no further operations took place.

The following extracts from private diaries kept by officers of the 43rd are of considerable interest, as showing the life led by the Regiment during the opening phases of the Campaign.

OFFICERS TAKING THE FIELD.

(November 1914.)

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. LETHBRIDGE, D.S.O., Commanding.
Major A. C. HYDE, 2nd in command.
Captain the Hon, J. C. W. S. FOLJAMBE, Adjutant.
Captain T. E. IVEY, Quartermaster.
Major L. J. CARTER, Q Company.[1]
Captain F. H. STAPLETON, R Company.
Captain C. E. FORREST, D.S.O., S Company.
Captain C. F. HENLEY, P Company.
Captain R. R. M. BROOKE, P Company.
Captain R. V. SIMPSON, S Company.
Captain W. E. T. MORLAND, Q Company.
Captain R. STEPHENS, R Company.
Lieut. G. E. WHITTALL (R Company), Regimental Transport Officer.
Lieut. J. J. POWELL (S Company), Regimental Signalling Officer.
Lieut. F. M. DAVENPORT, Q Company.
Lieut. J. H. COURTIS (Q Company), Machine Gun Officer.
Lieut. F. C. W. WYNTER, S Company.
Lieut. H. T. BIRCH-REYNARDSON, R Company
Lieut. K. HORAN, P Company.
Lieut. J. H. KEARSLEY, R Company.
2nd Lieut. A. E. MASON, P Company.
2nd Lieut. R. C. LOVEROCK, Q Company.
2nd Lieut. G. NAYLOR, S Company.
2nd Lieut. D. MURPHY, P Company.
2nd Lieut. F. BROWN, S Company.
Captain J. STARTIN, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.

[1] On the introduction of the Four-Company system, the Companies of the 1st Battalion were lettered P, Q, R, S, in order to obviate confusion.

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS OF THE BATTALION NOT PROCEEDING WITH IT.

Lieut. S. C. B. MUNDEY, left in command of the Depôt in India.

Major C. H. COBB, on leave in England; posted to command 5th (Service) Battalion (temp. Lieut.-Colonel).

Captain R. O. LOGAN, with 3rd Battalion; posted to 5th (Service) Battalion.

Lieut. B. C. T. PAGET, on leave in England; posted to 5th (Service) Battalion.

Lieut. G. F. PLOWDEN, on leave in England; posted to 5th (Service) Battalion.

Lieut. A. C. M. PARIS, on leave in England; employed under Admiralty.

Lieut. W. G. TOLSON, on sick leave in England; posted to 2nd Battalion.

Lieut. A. E. SANDERSON, with 3rd Battalion; posted to 8th (Service) Battalion.

Captain C. G. HIGGINS, with 3rd Battalion; posted to 2nd Battalion.

EXTRACTS FROM THE DIARY OF LIEUT. H. BIRCH-REYNARDSON:—

August 1st.—Rumours of Mobilization.

August 3rd.—Heard that the German Consul has left Bombay. We are supposed to be going to Egypt if we go anywhere.

August 5th.—Bombay Political wired that all officers are to be recalled from leave, as England has declared war on Germany.

August 17th.—Hear that the 3rd (Lahore) Division has sailed. The Poona Brigade of the 6th Division has mobilized, without horses, and with British servants provided by the 14th Hussars. We have a party of interned Germans here (Ahmednagar) now. They are treated very well, and the bazaars are not closed to them; in fact, we seem to be almost apologetic to them.

September 2nd.—News that the 6th (Poona) Division has been changed from "B" Force to "A" Force, which means East Africa. The Germans interned here are very uppish, and we very gentle.

September 8th.—About 6 p.m. wire received that our Brigade is to mobilize.

September 9th.—Medical Inspections. Boots nailed.

September 11th.—Packing of kits, etc.

Digitized by Google

September 14th.—Inspection of new great-coat carrier on C.O.'s Parade.

September 15th.—Bayonets sharpened.

September 26th.—Heard from Morland, who is attached to the H.-Q. Staff of 6th (Poona) Division, that we are for Egypt after all.

October 14th.—Our first battalion drill by night.

October 15th.—A rumour that all British troops, except those of the 1st Division, are to leave India.

October 31st.—Orders by wire to hold ourselves in readiness to embark at short notice.

November 2nd.—We are to be ready to move on Thursday (5th instant). Hear that Turkey has come in, so our chances of going to Europe look poor.

November 3rd.—Hard at work packing up.

November 4th.—No further news of our departure to-morrow

November 6th.—Settling down again and carrying on. The latest rumour is that we shall probably go to Akaba or Basra.

November 14th.—After different daily rumours as to the date of our departure, we now have definite orders to entrain for Bombay on Tuesday next, 17th instant, sleeping at the station on Monday night. The 1/4th Dorsets (T.F.), our relief, are to arrive here from England at 1 a.m. to-morrow.

November 15th.—Fresh orders that we will not leave till Wednesday.

November 17th.—Went for a route march in the morning. At 11 a.m. received a feverish order that we were to march out this very afternoon at 4 o'clock; hence a fearful rush. Having reached the station at 5.30 p.m., we were told to lie down in a field and wait. The field turned out to be the cantonment refuse ground! Something happened to our train (possibly another regiment took it), so we did not get off until 4 a.m. next day.

November 18th.—Train left at 5 a.m.; arrived at Poona at 11.10 a.m., had a poor breakfast, and on again. Lunched at Kalyan at 4 p.m., but the men got very little. We arrived at Bombay at 7 p.m., four hours behind time. Spent the night at the station.

November 19th.—Marched from Victoria Sidings to Alexandra Dock, and embarked on B.I.M.S. "Tongwa" at about 9 a.m.

November 20th.—Sailed at 6.35 a.m. Ship rather crowded.

November 21st.—At sea. Cooler.

November 23rd.—Off Bunder Abbas in the evening.

November 25th.—Passed Bushire at 1 p.m.

Digitized by Google

November 26th.—Woke up to find ships all round us. The ships that brought the 33rd Light Cavalry and 119th Infantry arrived at about 7.30 a.m. Hear that we are to go on to Mohammerah, and thence march to Basra. The Turks have gone to Baghdad, and the Arabs are friendly, which means no fighting for some time, and everyone wants to know why we have come here.

November 27th.—Steamed off at 5.30 a.m., and reached Fao at about 9. Country perfectly flat, with a dense belt of date palms on either bank of the river, which is winding and has many creeks. After Fao, we passed the end of the Anglo-Persian pipe line—Abadan, the depôt. The river full of transports. At 12.30 p.m. we stopped about 10 miles below Mohammerah. Many ships directly above and below us. No news at all, and nobody knows anything. The ship with the 33rd Light Cavalry on board had a collision, is badly holed, and has been beached. Sixteen men are said to have been drowned in landing from a lighter. Very cold.

November 28th.—Heavy gale all the morning. Heard a few details of the fight here (Zain). The Turks lost some 2,000 and 6 guns, while our casualties were 400 odd, of which 140 belonged to the Dorsets. Our people fought from 7 a.m. to 4 p.m., and then pursued by night, capturing Basra next day. News this evening that our gunboats have reached the junction of the Tigris and Euphrates (Kurna). No orders, but the idea is that we shall stay here for 4 or 5 days, as the Turks have blocked the Shatt-el-Arab by sinking a Hamburg-Amerika liner and other vessels in the stream.

December 1st.—Still no orders. General Dobbie arrived in the afternoon, and we hope that this means a move.

December 3rd.—The Colonel and three others went ashore to look at the battlefield. Ordered to be ready to start at 3 p.m. to-morrow. Heard that we are to go into camp 5 miles above Basra.

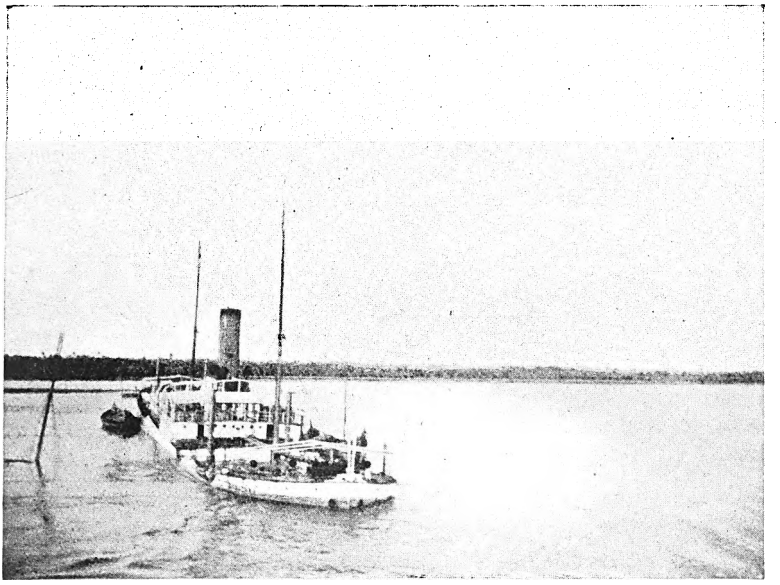
December 4th.—Started at 3 p.m., and anchored just below Basra at 6 p.m. River scenery quite pretty, and houses very picturesque. It is cold, but there is no wind, and there seems to be less current.

December 5th.—Arrived at Camp Magil at about 10 a.m., and began disembarking about 12. The Regiment was sent ashore by companies in a launch and lighter, and went into camp in a clearing among the palms. This was the proposed terminus of the Baghdad Railway, and a rail depôt. We hear that, near Mohammerah, the Arabs turned against the Turks, and later were just starting to sack Basra when our gunboats turned up. Report that the Turks got a doing yesterday. Reinforcements leave to-morrow.

Digitized by Google

December 6th.—Busy unloading ship and clearing ground. Pitched tents in the morning, and now we have quite a good camp. In the evening there arrived a river boat which had been in action the day before yesterday at Kurna. It mounted two field guns on the top deck, and a gunner told me that they had done good work against the Turks, smashing their guns and clearing their trenches. The Turks have retired to a fort, which is to be attacked to-morrow, and the boat is now taking a battery of mountain guns on board.

December 7th.—Most of the day spent in unloading stores, wood,



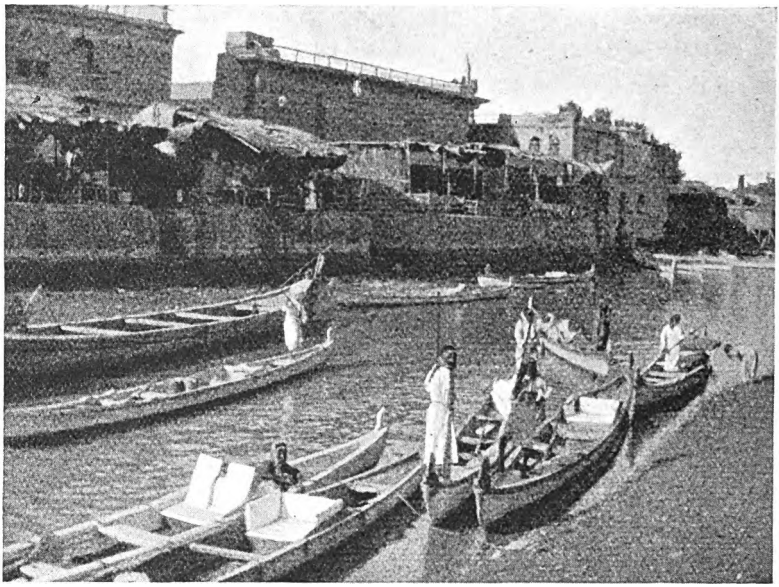
S.S. "EKBATANA," SUNK OFF MOHAMMERAH BY THE TURKS.
November 1914.

mules, etc. General Barrett (commanding the 6th Division) came round the camp in the morning.

December 8th.—Morning spent on fatigues and road-making. In the afternoon we buried the Naval officers and sailors who had been killed at Kurna on the 4th. We are told that the Turks are pretty well boxed up at Kurna, so no one can see much of a job left for us.

December 9th.—Alterations made in our outpost positions, the line being taken farther forward. At lunch-time we saw a wire

Digitized by Google



ASHAR CREEK, BASRA.

saying that the Turks under Subhi Bey, late Vali of Basra, surrendered unconditionally at Kurna to General Fry this morning. This looks like the end of the show for us, as a big fight had been expected here.

December 10th.—Outpost duty, improving communications, etc. The "Tongwa" is to take 2,000 Turkish prisoners to Rangoon.

December 12th.—Some of us went to Basra by river in a *bellum*. The native town is fascinating, and the whole place most interesting. The bazaars are all roofed in, the effect being a mass of subdued colours.

December 13th.—Parade Service at 11 a.m. In the afternoon had a ride into the desert; much mud as well as sand.

December 14th.—Company drill in the desert in the morning. In the afternoon tried fishing from a boat (spinning with a very home-made spoon), but without success. No news of any kind.

December 16th.—Trench digging in the morning. In afternoon, Startin (our doctor) and I rode across the desert to Basra, and had a look round the bazaars, where we jostled Arabs, Jews, Syrians,

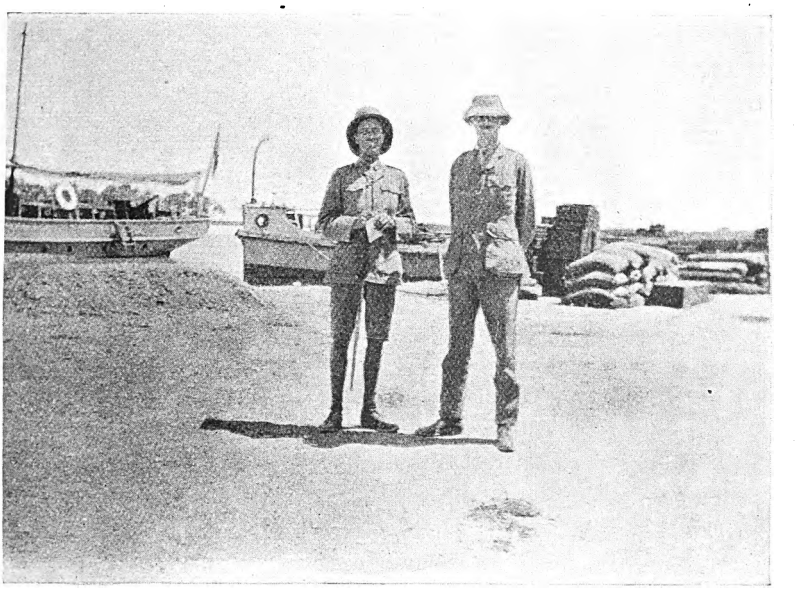
Digitized by Google

Persians, Negroes, and Chaldeans. These last are often quite fair and good-looking, especially the children. A good gallop back to camp; a cold wind and wonderful sunset. 2nd Lieut. A. Price, 2nd Royal Sussex Regiment, and 2nd Lieut. A. J. Hazell, 2nd West Riding Regiment, attached to us, the former to P Company, the latter to Q Company.

December 17th.—Route march over the desert. In the afternoon, Kearsley and I went after snipe to an island about two miles up stream. Any number of birds, but we had nothing but No. 5 shot, and our shooting was very bad. Result 5½ couple. On our return, we found three weeks' mail waiting for us.

December 20th.—A day out with Powell, Davenport, Horan, Kearsley, and Marsh (R.I.M.). Borrowed the Staff steam-launch "Asp," and started at 11 a.m. We did not have much of a day, but it was good fun. Our bag was 1 duck, 1 black partridge, 5 couple of snipe, 4 various. The 33rd Cavalry arrived here from Basra.

December 21st.—A cold drizzling rain nearly all day; very unpleasant, as the ground gets slippery and the soil "balls" a lot. We



Captain Foljambe. Captain R. R. M. Brooke.

AT CAMP KURNA, TIGRIS RIVER.

Digitized by Google

are hoping for a move forward. A quantity of mule transport has gone up to-day.

December 22nd.—Route march in the morning. In the afternoon by river to Basra. Got another mail in the evening.

December 24th.—Battalion drill and route march. Went to Basra to try to get hams for the men's Christmas dinners, but found the S. and T people not very enthusiastic. Had tea with the Dorsets, and heard more about the fight at Zain. There seems to have been very little reconnoitring.

December 25th.—A Christmas Day outing. Stapleton, Courtis, Morland, Foljambe, Davenport, Powell, Horan, Kearsley, Marsh, and I started at 10.30 a.m. in the "Asp," and went about 8 miles up the Euphrates, until the channel seemed to end, or, rather, divide into five arms, forming a great lake beyond. We saw any amount of duck, but found them very hard to get at. Unfortunately the "Asp" stuck in the mud, so we did not get as far as we had intended, and in the end we had to return in *bellums*, leaving the launch to float off on the next tide. The bag was only 7 duck, 1 coot, 1 bittern, but we had a great day, and we arrived back only just in time for Christmas Dinner and Lady Willingdon's plum puddings.

December 28th.—Brooke was sent with a party up the Euphrates, to search a suspected village, and brought back 20 rifles—mostly Martinis.

KURNA.

December 29th.—We were roused at 5.30 this morning, and told that we were to be off by 8 a.m. "Field Service Kit without tents" —an order which surprised us considerably. Embarked on the "Blosse Lynch" at 8.30, and got off at 9.30. Arrived at Kurna about 5 p.m., when we heard all sorts of rumours. Opinions seem to be divided about the enemy—whether Turks or Arabs. At 9 p.m. we were told that a night attack was expected, and we were sent to man the rather sketchy trenches of the perimeter. Very cold night, but nothing happened.

December 30th.—At 11 a.m. we were told that we were to move, at 1 p.m., by land, four miles north, to protect a bridging party of sappers. It appears that the Turks in force (numbers not definitely ascertained) have taken up a position some 8 miles north of us, and

Digitized by Google

have some guns. At 12.15 we were told that we were not going to-day, and were to unload our kit, ammunition, etc., from the boat, which had been got ready. The G.O.C. says that we shall probably now make one job of this, and start from here at 5 a.m. to-morrow.

December 31st.—Roused at 4 a.m. Having got all the men up, and the kit packed, we were suddenly told to lie down again, as the show was postponed. It appears that the counter-order was given out last night, but never reached us. From what we can hear, no one seems to be very clear as to the numbers or whereabouts of the enemy, or how to reach his supposed position.

BAZAAR ARABS.

Digitized by Google

1915.

UP TO THE OCCUPATION OF AMARA AND NASARIYEH.

THERE were mentioned, a few pages back, the principal reasons for dispatching an Expeditionary Force to Mesopotamia. The scope of the expedition was then thought to be limited to the protection of the oil-fields in south-western Persia, and the occupation of the country perhaps as far north as the junction of the Tigris and Euphrates. That these objects would be effected without much difficulty was evidently the opinion of the Indian Government; otherwise they would not have been content with the dispatch of so small a force as one division. By the beginning of 1915, however, the situation in Mesopotamia had developed considerably. Those on the spot soon realized that the Turkish forces were stronger than had been supposed, that the Arab population was not to be easily controlled, and that the British invasion was not going to be a "walk over." As time went on, it was found that the peculiar climatic conditions of the country would be most difficult to cope with; that floods, excessive heat, and bad water must result in much sickness, and hamper military operations; and that a river whose channel shifted almost hourly would prove itself a source of constant trouble, if not even danger, when used as the sole line of communication.

It was discovered, moreover, that the Turkish forces were not only numerically strong, but that they were also well trained, well armed, and possessed of German guns and munitions; that, with the assistance of German officers, they were experts at field defences; that

Digitized by Google

they possessed an armed flotilla on the Tigris, and were well acquainted with the uses of mines, booms, and other methods of barring the passage of the river; and that, although recruited to a certain extent from town Arabs, they could fight with the valour of true Turks.

With regard to the Arab tribes of Mesopotamia, the Turks were not slow to understand the value of proclaiming the war to be a religious one—Islam *versus* Christendom—and preached a Jehad. But the Arab tribesmen are not influenced to any great extent by their religion; love of fighting is inherent in them, and the prospect of loot ever uppermost; consequently, since anything like loyalty is absent from the Arab mind, these wild horsemen throw in their lot, for the time being, with the one side or with the other as it suits them. Generally operating with the Turks, yet often betraying them, they have been, and always will be, an absolutely unreliable ally either for their co-religionists or for ourselves; and if opportunity offers they will rob the dead, and murder the wounded of friend or foe. Such a factor in warfare is as peculiar as it is disagreeable and difficult to deal with.

When the year opened Sir Arthur Barrett's force was holding three points, the end of the Oil Pipe Line on the east, Basra and Kurna on the north, with Headquarters at Basra. A small Turkish force was known to be occupying a position astride the Tigris a few miles north of Kurna, while other Turkish forces, with Arab allies, were moving about the Euphrates and country to the west of Basra, as well as across the Persian border towards Ahwaz. For the first three months of the year little of interest happened. The British camps at Kurna and at Mazera (on the opposite bank of the Tigris) were subjected to constant "sniping" at the hands of Arabs, employed by the Turks, and shelling

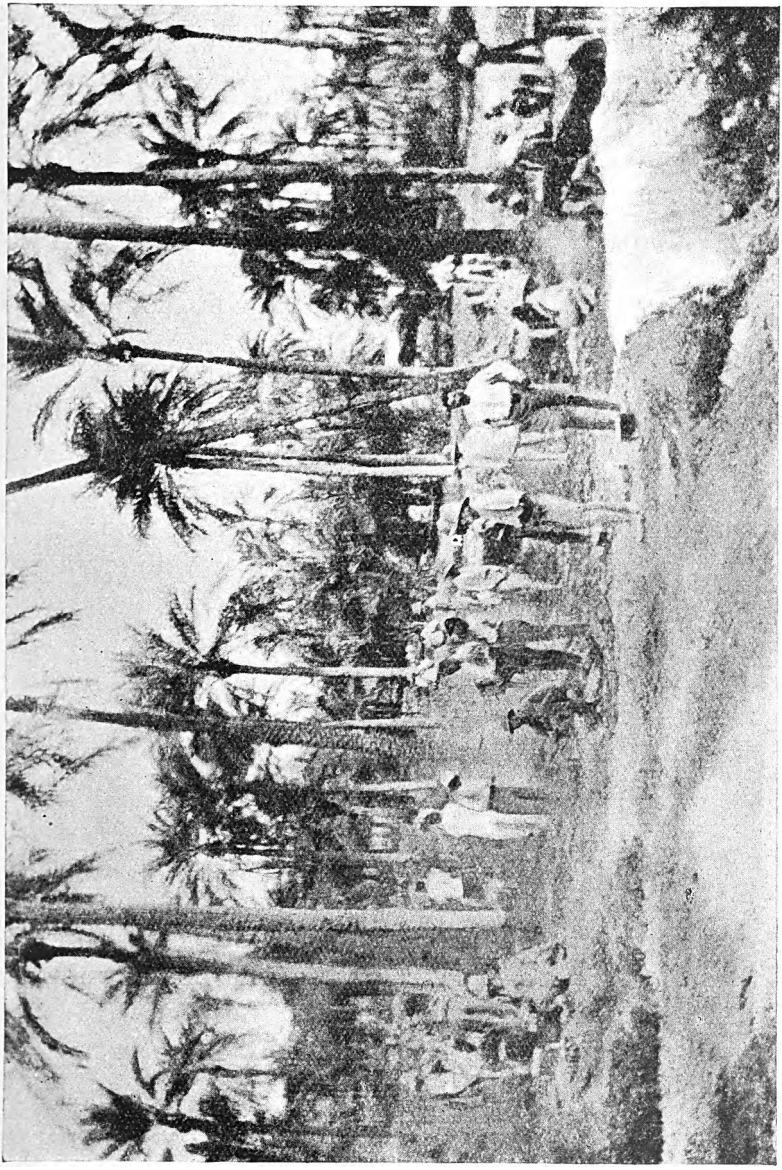
Digitized by Google

by the Turkish guns. .To these attentions our troops replied with a certain amount of artillery activity, and the dispatch of small punitive expeditions against neighbouring Arab villages. But, except for a reconnaissance to the north on the 21st January, no forward movement of our troops was made, and there is nothing to lead one to suppose that at this time any advance up the Tigris was intended. In February the Viceroy visited the country in order to acquaint himself with the situation, and returned to India with sufficient knowledge of the general condition of things to be aware that the force at the disposal of Sir A. Barrett was wholly inadequate for an advance for any great distance from the sea.

During the next few weeks the enemy became more active, and planned simultaneous attacks on the three British centres. Early in March heavy fighting took place at Ahwaz (now occupied by British troops), when a Turkish force, estimated at 12,000 strong, was defeated. At the same time a cavalry reconnaissance discovered a strong enemy force in the neighbourhood of Nakhaila (about 20 miles west of Basra) moving towards Shaiba Fort (some five or six miles south-west of Basra), which was held by a British garrison. Here again the enemy was defeated and driven away. The Kurna position was not seriously attacked, as the country between it and the Turks on the north was in such a flooded condition as to make any movement practically impossible. The Turks, therefore, contented themselves with making their presence known by artillery fire, by sending floating mines down the river, and by keeping the sniping Arabs busy.

Matters continued thus until the beginning of April, but in the meanwhile the enemy was still active. He had not abandoned his idea of attacking Ahwaz, and

Digitized by Google



"DRUMMING UP": MEN OF 1ST BATTALION COOKING SUPPERS
Kurna, May 1915.

Digitized by Google

he was massing troops on the Euphrates for an attack on Basra from the west. By this time certain alterations had taken place in the composition of the Expeditionary Force. Lieut.-General Sir A. Barrett was succeeded in command of the Force by General Sir John Nixon, while Major-General Townshend was appointed to the command of the 6th Division *vice* Barrett. The strength of the Expeditionary Force had been increased by two incomplete infantry brigades (12th and 30th) belonging to the 12th Division, commanded by Major-General Gorringe.

Shaiba.

On April 11th Major-General Fry, in command of two brigades (16th and 18th) at Shaiba, discovered that the enemy, in considerable strength, was working round to the south, with a view to attacking Shaiba Fort and threatening Basra. Next day 12,000 Turks and 10,000 Arabs attacked the British position, but were repulsed, though not driven away. On the 13th Major-General Melliss, V.C., arrived at Shaiba, with a reinforcement of one Indian battalion, and being senior to Major-General Fry, assumed command of the garrison. He immediately set to work to drive back the Turks, who withdrew, and during the night entrenched themselves in a strong position at Barjisiyah (20 miles south-west of Basra). This was attacked on the following morning, and, after a day of heavy fighting, the enemy was driven out and put to flight with losses estimated at between 4,000 and 5,000, while the British casualties amounted to about 1,100. Seeing their friends thoroughly beaten, the Arabs turned on the fleeing Turks, and harassed them all the way back to Nakhaila, on the Euphrates, whence the enemy continued his retreat to Nasiriyeh.

Digitized by Google

Flank March from Ahwaz.

Sir John Nixon was now able to turn his attention to his other flank. The small British force at Ahwaz had been able to hold its own against the enemy in that neighbourhood, and as soon as the latter learned of the defeat at Barjisiyah, he deemed it advisable to beat a retreat to Amara, whence he had come. General Gorringe, with the 12th Division, was immediately dispatched up the Karun River, to take up the pursuit, and he pushed forward a column under Colonel Dunlop, who, by the 7th May, reached the Kharkeh river, which the Turks, in their retreat, had passed some time before. The weather was intensely hot, natural obstacles barred their way, and hostile Arabs constantly annoyed the pursuing column; but, in spite of everything, the force dealt with the Arabs, and kept on the heels of the Turks, thus delaying them until Amara was in British occupation. In this way General Gorringe's successful operations not only assured the future safety of the Persian oil-fields, but prevented the Turks from reinforcing their troops on the Tigris, up which river General Townshend began to advance with the 6th Division on the 31st May.

Capture of Amara by the 6th Division.

In the meanwhile, in order to hold in check the Turkish force at Nasiriyeh, on his western flank, Sir J. Nixon established a blockade of the Euphrates with all available river craft; and then, having secured both of his flanks, he gave the order for the central advance to commence. The story of this advance up the Tigris is so well told in the diaries which follow that it is

Digitized by Google

needless to describe it here. Suffice it to say that after two days' sharp fighting a few miles beyond Kurna, when the 17th Brigade had the novel experience of delivering the attack across the marshes in boats, General Townshend captured the important town of Amara on the 3rd June. Here it was decided that the 6th Division should halt while the Turks at Nasiriyeh were being disposed of.

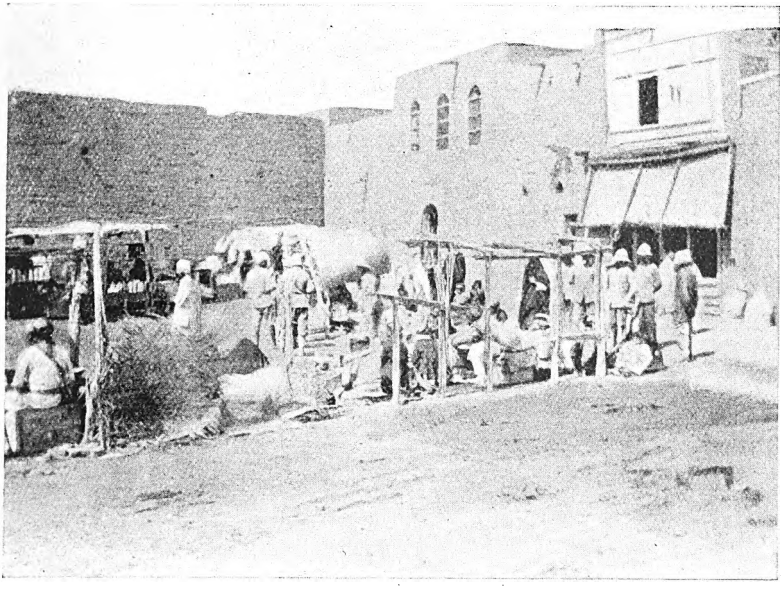
Nasiriyeh.

From Kut-el-Amara, the Turkish advanced headquarters on the Tigris, to Nasiriyeh, on the Euphrates, there is a direct waterway navigable for six months of the year. This is the Shatt-el-Hai, and its importance at this time lay in the fact that it afforded the sole means of communication between Nur-ed-Din's headquarters and his southern outpost. The task of clearing the enemy out of Nasiriyeh, in the hope of forcing him back to his headquarters at Kut, was entrusted to General Gorringe; Dunlop's column, after its successful march from Ahwaz to Amara, being sent down by the Tigris to Kurna, and there refitted for the new enterprise.

Operations commenced on the 27th June, when the force, preceded by gunboats, went up the old channel of the Euphrates and crossed the Hamar Lake, whence to the Euphrates again, by way of the Hokeika (Haqiqah) canal, the Navy had great difficulty in transporting their craft, while the 30th Brigade had some brisk fighting on the 5th July. On the following morning, Suk-esh-Sheyukh, near the junction of the Hokeika and Euphrates, was captured by two gunboats, when the flotilla and troops moved up the river towards Nasiriyeh. It was soon found that the enemy was in

Digitized by Google

force, and had taken up strong positions astride the Euphrates, about five miles below Nasiriyeh. General Gorringe disembarked his troops on both banks, and, entrenching some two miles from the enemy, halted to reconnoitre. Making frequent reconnaissances, and gradually advancing his trenches, he made an attempt on July 13th–14th, with a small force, to capture a position on the enemy's right flank. This attempt,



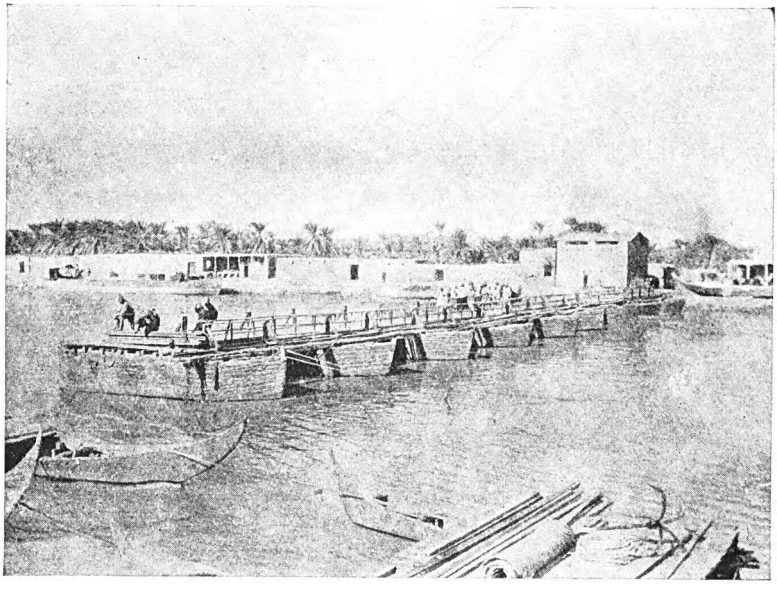
"TEMPTATION SQUARE," KURNA.

however, although carried out with great dash by the 24th Punjabis and some mountain guns, failed, and the troops suffered considerably from friendly (?) Arab tribesmen, who fired on them from the rear.

The next ten days were spent in pushing forward and improving gun positions and infantry trenches, and at 5 a.m. on July 24th the attack was launched on both banks of the river, with the co-operation of the Royal

Digitized by Google

Naval flotilla. Resisting stubbornly, the Turks were driven from their successive positions during the day, and by 6.30 p.m. were in full retreat across the marshes, having lost a great number of killed and wounded, 1,000 prisoners, many guns, machine guns, and rifles, and quantities of ammunition and stores; while our casualties in the final assault amounted to about 600. On the 25th July Nasiriyeh was occupied, and as there was no intention of following the enemy up the now unnavigable Shatt-el-Hai, a garrison was left, and the bulk of General Gorringe's force was withdrawn to the Tigris, for the purpose of safeguarding the line of communication to Amara.



BRIDGE OF BOATS AT AMARA.
Open for the passage of a steamer.

Digitized by Google

EXTRACTS
FROM LIEUT. BIRCH-REYNARDSON'S DIARY.

Camp Tigris (Kurna).

January 1st, 1915.—Late last night it was settled to send only the Regiment, the 103rd, the 7th Rajputs, and some guns and sappers on the reconnaissance, under General Dobbie. My company, having been on outposts last night, was left in as camp guard with the 18th Brigade, who, however, were to move out if wanted. The force marched out at 6.30 a.m. At about 9 we heard a few rifle shots. At noon the news came through that they had found the Turkish force in position, and the "Espiègle" and "Blosse Lynch," with one 18-pr., went up the river. Later, the Norfolks and 7th Rajputs marched out. No more news until 6 p.m., when we heard that the force was returning They were back in camp by 7 p.m., having done nothing and never fired a shot. So we only missed a very dull day

January 2nd.—Digging most of the day. From yesterday's reconnaissance it appears that the Turks, about 1,500 to 2,000 strong, with 6 to 10 guns, are in a good position on both banks of the river 7 miles up From this bank their position cannot be dealt with without pontoons, owing to a broad and deep creek. Unfortunately we have no pontoons.

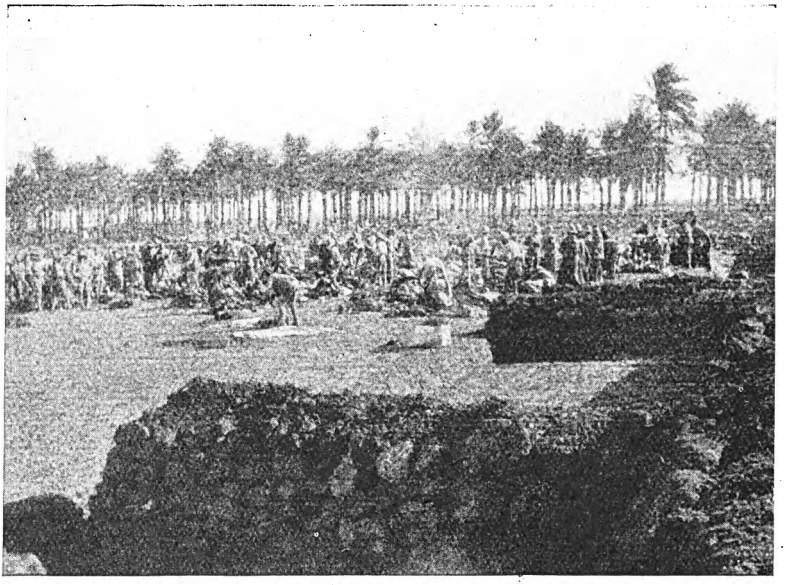
It rained hard last night, and the weather this morning was wet and cold and beastly, but the tents have arrived from Magil, and are being pitched. Up to to-day we have been in bivouac.

January 3rd.—Nothing doing at all, except improving our position. Our people are making extensive field-works below us at Kurna, to hold, rumour says, a Brigade. I hope that this is not true. On outpost last night, when it rained continuously, but the sun came out this morning and we got things dry.

January 4th.—More digging to-day. We have now got quite a good fortified camp. There is talk of another reconnaissance in the near future. At present we are constantly subjected to sniping at night by Arabs in the pay of the Turks, but no harm is being done.

January 5th.—We played the Norfolks (officers) at football to-day, and beat them by 3 to 1, after a very good game. General

Digitized by Google



TRENCH DIGGING AT CAMP TIGRIS.

Dobbie and Staff (including Stapleton) left for Magil. I think that something is really up, as the river is full of boats, mostly with steel plate protections on.

January 6th.—Last night we had to turn out at about 2 a.m., as the sniping became rather too much of a good thing. A party of Arabs came down the river bank just opposite our tents, and let fly like fun; luckily, they shot very high.

The day has been full of mild excitement. About 5 p.m. a large number of Arabs, with flags, were seen about 2 miles north-west of the camp. A section of guns was run out at once, and about 20 rounds were fired at them, when they appeared to disperse. However, at about 8 p.m., just as we were finishing dinner, there was a burst of fire from the other end of the camp, and someone shouted, "Put those lights out, Oxford." Accordingly we "doused the glim," and left our dinner unfinished. The Regiment stood to arms at once, but all was quiet for about an hour, except for distant shots in the marshes west of the camp. At about 9 the enemy came on again from the north, this time nearer, and they were chanting what sounded like "Allah Illahi" over and over again and quite regularly —rather an uncanny proceeding! They were firing pretty heavily,

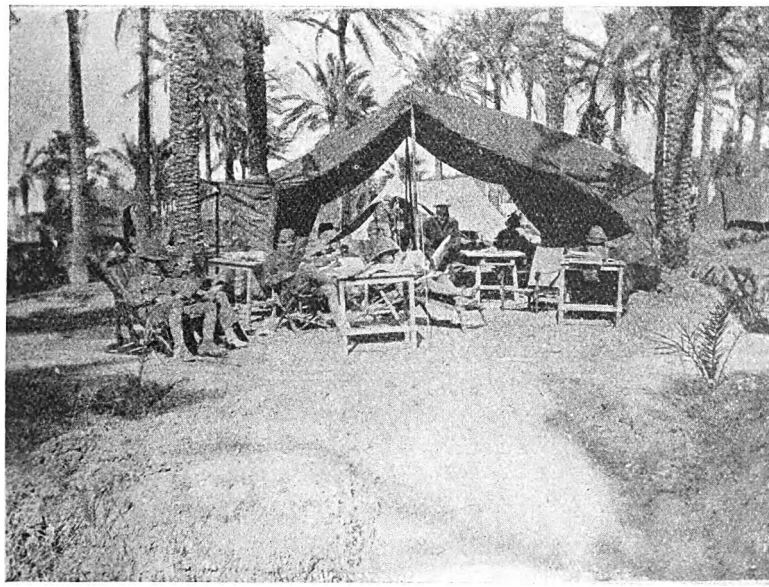
Digitized by Google

and we could hear the bullets against the palm trees, and sometimes against the tents. It was pitch dark, but presently the guns opened with star shell, which threw a little light on the scene. The Norfolks and 7th Rajputs opened rapid fire. We ourselves did not get a look-in, as we were on the south face of the perimeter. Firing continued until 10.30 p.m., when the moon rose, and the Arabs went home to bed. So did we.

January 7th.—Afraid of our ponies being hit by snipers, so spent the morning digging cover for them. At 5 p.m. a section of guns at the north end of the camp, and the "Medjidieh" (with one gun), started shelling the Arabs. At 8 p.m. we heard that the Arabs were collected in force, about to attack. We all turned out, but nothing happened.

January 8th.—The "Medjidieh" again went up the river, and spent the morning shelling an Arab camp. It appears that yesterday a patrol of the 120th nearly got caught, and lost 15 rifles in swimming a creek.

January 9th.—Only a very few shots last night. To-day very cold, with awful wind and rain. The camp almost under water.



1ST BATTALION OFFICERS' MESS.
Camp Tigris, north of Kurna, January 1915.

Digitized by Google

The Arabs collected again at the same place, to get another shelling. At 9 p.m. received orders to move camp across the river at 8 a.m. to-morrow. Searchlights were working at Kurna to-night for the first time.

CAMP MAZERA.

January 10th.—Roused at 5 a.m. The Regiment packed up, was on parade at 8, and on board the "Blosse Lynch" by 9; reached the other side (left bank) of the river at 10 a.m., and then had a hard day's work moving kits, tents, stores, etc., two miles east across the desert to a camping ground just north of the trees outside Mazera village. On the way we passed several Turkish trenches, used by the enemy when we attacked Kurna. The pariah dogs had dug up most of the corpses.

January 11th.—Luckily there was no sniping last night. Spent all the morning unloading more stores on the river bank. General Barrett visited us. This is a dreadful camp, full of flies off the corpses; and now, just as we have got things ship-shape, they say that we may have to move again, as we are visible to the Turks at Halla.

January 12th.—Yes, we have moved, about half a mile south, into a filthy garden, formerly occupied by the Turks. A dead horse, several skulls, and some live shells were among the "curios" found on the ground on which we had to bivouac. Spent the day in clearing up all the rubbish and in digging trenches.

January 13th.—Working parties on redoubts 4 and 5, being constructed to the north of the camp. These are all part of the Kurna position, which is to be astride the river, as the Aleppo Army Corps is supposed to be coming here to oust us.

January 14th.—No sniping last night, and I got my first sleep in bed for four nights—very pleasant. This morning all marksmen and first-class shots in the Regiment were paraded, under Foljambe, to go out and shoot pariah dogs. I went out with a shotgun and "destructor" bullets. It is a beastly job, but very necessary. We got about 35.

January 15th.—Sniped rather heavily last night, and we had to turn out. I do not think that this will be a bad camp when we have got it cleaned up, as it is in a belt of palm trees, and there are the remains of a vegetable garden, with peas, beans, lettuces, and tomatoes, also figs and a few apricots.

Digitized by Google

January 16*th*.—Sniped again last night. Very cold and unpleasant. No. 3 Redoubt turned on its new searchlight.

January 17*th*.—More sniping last night, but we are getting used to it now. In the morning my company was digging at No. 4 redoubt. We now have five self-contained redoubts in a semi-circle some way in advance of the general perimeter of the camp. The left flank of the position is on the Tigris, and the right runs down towards the Shatt-el-Arab, but there is still rather a wide gap between the right redoubt and the river bank. Wire entanglements

INSIDE No. 3 REDOUBT, MAZERA.

have been completed in most parts, and searchlights and land-mines established in front of one redoubt.

January 18*th*.—While we were at Magil several of us clubbed together and bought two Evinrude engines and a boat, to make a motor-boat for sporting purposes. To-day they arrived, and we went down to Gunner Pier to try one of the engines, but failed to make it go. During dinner this evening we were warned by the Intelligence that 1,000 Turks were moving by boat down the Suwaib River, to the east of the camp, but they never materialized.

January 19*th*.—While working this morning, news began to

Digitized by Google

trickle round that we are going to have a show to-morrow. General Barrett arrived. The Colonel saw all officers before lunch, and explained what is going to happen. P and Q Companies advanced guard, with the 33rd L.C. (less two squadrons). The remainder of us in first line, with the 103rd on our left, and the 22nd and 119th in second line; Norfolks, general reserve; two companies 7th Rajputs rear-guard; two batteries of artillery (less one section); and 1 battery of mountain guns. The Navy will co-operate.

January 20th.—Breakfast at 4 a.m., and paraded north-east of camp at 4.45. After some waiting, moved off at 5.15. The advanced guard came under rifle fire at 6.45 a.m., and we deployed from platoons into file. We soon reached the sand-hills, from which we were intended to drive the enemy; but he had already retired before the advanced guard, and was firing from a position which he had taken up in a marsh lying between the sand-hills and his main position. At 7.30 a.m. our guns (about 150 yards to the left of us) came into action, and the 22nd moved into the gap between us and the 103rd, who had been directed farther to the left—towards the river. At 7.55 a.m. the Turkish guns began to reply, at first with common shell, and then with shrapnel. They appeared to have almost the exact range of our guns, but, luckily, all their shells burst high and a bit beyond, so very little damage was done. They then switched on to us, but we also were lucky, especially as we were lying in the open desert. At 9 a.m. we advanced over the sand-hills and into the marsh beyond, and as we crossed the latter, which was in places knee-deep and very hard going, we came under enfilade fire from the opposite bank of the Tigris. We then formed a firing-line about a thousand yards from their camp, which was on the far side of the Rotah canal; but they were difficult to see, and I do not think that our fire was very effective. At 11.30 a.m., when all seemed to be going quite well, and we could see a lot of Arabs streaming away from their position, we were ordered to retire. At this time only one of the enemy's guns was still firing, and that very intermittently; the sloop "Espiègle" and the "Medjidieh," supporting us from the river with gun fire, had set on fire the village of Rotah, and Halla, another village, had been blown up. Every one was much disappointed at not being allowed to go on and finish the job. We marched back to camp, arriving at 2.15 p.m. The Regiment was complimented by the G.O.C. The total casualties in the force were 9 killed and 55 wounded, of which the Regiment had 14 wounded.

Digitized by Google

Company Sergeant-Major Shilcock (R Company) describes this day's fight as follows:—

We went out on a reconnaissance towards the Turks' encampment, about 6 miles above Mazera, the gunboats coming with us and shelling them with their 4-inch guns, whilst we were working up close to them. Our scouts caught their outposts napping on some sand-dunes, and soon accounted for them, when the 43rd was ordered to go forward to the camp. For a distance of about half a mile the water was some two feet deep, all the country being flooded. The enemy could now be seen flying in all directions, pursued by our artillery fire. After the General Staff had got all the information which they required, we had to retire on our camp again, having sustained 12 casualties in the Battalion.

The following account by an Artillery Officer appeared in the *Morning Post*:—

Last Wednesday the General thought he would have a reconnaissance in force, so off we started about 5 a.m., and the fight started about 7 a.m. The Turks have a large camp, and a very strong position on the Ratta Canal, about 8 miles up the Tigris. The battery came into action first at 4,800, then at 3,800, and then at 3,200 yards. In the first position we fired merrily at their guns, but in the second position we had quite a warm time. Their shells were bursting just over us, and it looked as if we were being plastered; fortunately, the bullets fell 50 yards beyond us, but we had four men wounded. From this position we riddled their camp, and I had quite a nice little show on my own at some dhows, and got two direct hits. Moving up to the third position, a shell burst between me and the lead horse of one of my guns. I had just spoken to the driver, and was moving away. My horse leapt sideways, nearly leaving me behind, as the shell hit the ground just beside him, while the gun-team got into an awful mix-up. Very, very fortunately, nobody was hit. We got back to camp about 2.15 p.m. Four men and two horses of this battery were wounded. Our total casualties were under 50. We have since heard that the enemy suffered very severely. I expect the Turkish papers will call it a victory, but before we started, the C.O.'s had orders to commence their retirement at 10.35. I have no idea when we shall visit the Turks again.

Digitized by Google

LIEUT. BIRCH-REYNARDSON'S DIARY—*continued*

January 21st.—Went round and saw the wounded. All doing well. In the evening, Kearsley and Powell took out the motor-boat (now christened "Evinrude"), which went splendidly.

January 22nd.—We hear from two prisoners that the enemy lost about 400, and that their force (Turks and Arabs) was between 3,000 and 4,000. Askari Bey, the Commander, is supposed to have been wounded by shrapnel. The local Arabs appear to regard the withdrawal of our reconnaissance as equivalent to a defeat, and their attitude towards us has undergone a noticeable change. The Jehad is growing more popular.

January 23rd–25th.—Nothing of interest. A good deal of rain and the whole place a sea of mud.

January 26th.—This morning we took a short trip in our motor-boat up the Tigris, to look for some duck which had been reported there. We could not get near them, and only shot one. In the afternoon, Foljambe, Morland, Whittall, and I walked over to the Suwaib River, about 6 miles. We plunged about all the afternoon in the marshes, and only picked up 3 couple of snipe, 1 brace of duck, and 1 plover, though we shot a good deal more. A huge pig was shot by the escort.

January 27th.—In the afternoon Whittall, Courtis, and I went down to the new pier on the Shatt-el-Arab to shoot snipe, and got 14 couple and 1 teal. We hear to-day that the Viceroy is coming here on the 7th of next month, so perhaps things will look up. In the meanwhile fortification goes on steadily.

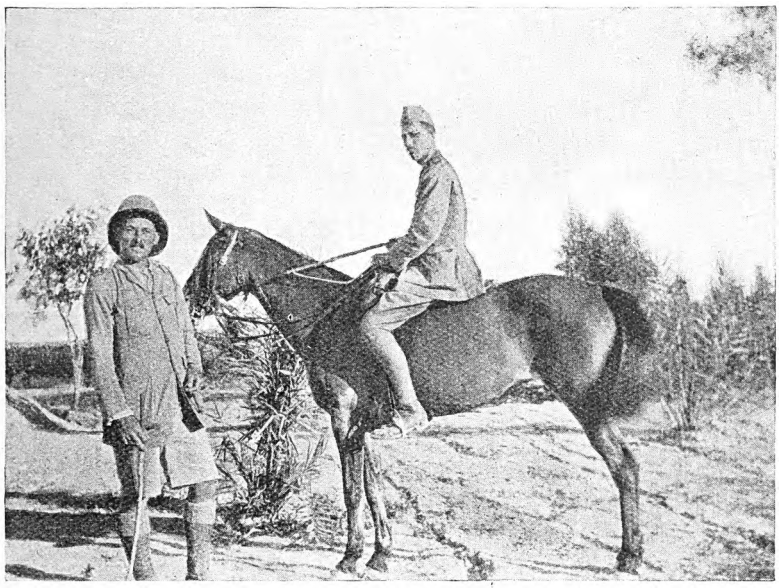
January 28th.—The heavy guns (24-lb "cow-guns") were brought in to-day. They look very fine with their teams of 16 grey and white oxen, but the guns themselves are very old

January 29th.—Finished our fatigue at 12, so Powell, Courtis, Kearsley, and I went by motor-boat to the Suwaib River. We got three couple of snipe and one teal, but the day was a failure, as the snipe are already beginning to leave. We decided to come back by a short cut through the marshes, but had great difficulty in finding the channel, and ran aground constantly, so the party had to take turns in swimming or wading ahead to find the way. We got back in the course of time, very wet and covered with mud. Just after we had gone to bed, the Colonel sent for all officers and told us that the Turks were expected to attack to-morrow morning at 10 o'clock,

Digitized by Google

but that doubtless this was a mistake on the part of the Intelligence, who probably meant 10 o'clock this very night. Whittall and I, with No. 10 Platoon, were sent forthwith to reinforce the 3A trenches, and, as we had no time to see about taking bedding, we spent a very cold night.

January 30th.—At 1.20 a.m. we were awakened by the sounds of heavy firing from our rear, and as we had no parados to our trenches, this was distinctly a nuisance. We stood to arms, but it was all over by 2 a.m. At daylight we picked up 5 killed and 8 wounded Turks (including an officer) between No. 1 Redoubt and the eastern



Lieut. F. M. Davenport. Captain Hon. J. C. W. S. Foljambe.

AT CAMP MAZERA, TIGRIS RIVER.

face of the perimeter The casualties on our side were 8 wounded, and 3 horses and 1 camel killed. Among the wounded was Major Farmer, commanding the heavy guns, who had only arrived a few hours before. The cavalry went out to see what they could find, but started a bit late. They succeeded, however, in killing 6 and wounding several, with a loss to themselves of 1 Jemadar killed and 3 men wounded. The wounded Turkish officer says that he arrived at Rotah (Ratta) from Mosul three days ago, that his force numbered 200, and that they were only engaged on a regular

Digitized by Google

reconnaissance which they made every ten days. This is probably all untrue. Most of the wounded Turks were armed with hand-grenades.

January 31*st.*—In the evening there were more "alarums and excursions." Another night attack supposed to be coming off Two companies of the Norfolks and the 20th were brought over from Kurna to reinforce us, so we went out to the trenches with loins girded. However, we only got the ordinary Arab snipers at about 3 a.m., whereat we all turned out and stood to arms, got very cold, and then went to bed again.

February 1*st.*—It is getting quite hot now in the middle of the day, though still cold at night. About every sixth night one's turn comes to sleep out with one's platoon in either No. 3 Redoubt, held by a whole company, or in the 3A trenches, which are garrisoned by one platoon. Then once or often twice a week one has to sleep in the trenches of the perimeter. So really there are two sets of outposts, and as a rule only one company spends the night in tents.

February 2*nd.*—Heard to-night that 1,000 Turks are expected to attack, so the whole force was on outpost.

February 3*rd.*—Last night's alarm was false. My platoon's first night in tents for six nights.

February 5*th.*—About 4.30 p.m. large numbers of Arabs with flags appeared on the other side of the river, beyond Camp Tigris. The "Espiègle" and the Kurna guns shelled them, and the "Miner" went up river and got into them with 3-prs. and machine-guns. They say that they laid a lot of them out.

February 6*th.*—We went into No. 3 Redoubt at 1 p.m., paraded at 3, and the Viceroy inspected us at 4 p.m. Stephens, Powell, and Mason on the guard of honour at the Pier.

February 8*th.*—Some sniping last night. The 119th bagged one Arab and wounded another. Whenever there is sniping, we hear shots from a very large-bore rifle (I should think about .500). No one has seen the Arab who uses it, but the men have christened him "Blunderbuss Bill."

February 9*th.*—The West Kent Regiment has arrived. Our men are being trained to use the native boats (*bellums*). Morland is to command the Bellum Brigade and I the Regimental boats. This is a new departure and should be interesting, but what the boats are to be used for we do not know yet—possibly for "strafing" marsh Arabs.

Digitized by Google

February 11th.—Very wet and cold. On fatigue in the morning, filling in old Turkish trenches, which they think are used at night by snipers. Unearthed a lot of very dead Arabs—a beastly job. We had an alarm to-night, an attack thought to be imminent, so we all slept in the trenches. This morning Courtis stuck a pig measuring 35½ inches and scaling 280 lb. when dressed.

February 12th.—Not even a sniper put in an appearance last night. The Tigris is rising rapidly.

February 14th.—Hard at work with the *bellums* morning and afternoon. We had to use shovels, as there were no paddles. Each company has one boat, with a crew of eight men. Some of the men from the neighbourhood of the Thames are all right, but it will take a lot of patience and practice to make anything of the others.

February 15th.—No excitements. I think every one is getting very slack and stale. This inaction is very bad for us all. It rained hard all night.

FROM THE DIARY OF LIEUT. J. J. POWELL (REGIMENTAL SIGNALLING OFFICER).

February 16th.—"S" Battery R.H.A. and 16th Cavalry are reported to have arrived at Basra, and are to remain there for the present. All shipping on the river is being collected at Basra ready for an advance up the Karun River, as some days ago the Turks cut the oil-pipe line between Ahwaz and Abadan. The water everywhere is rising very quickly; Fort Snipe, on the opposite bank, above Kurna, will soon be under water, so it is to be rebuilt about 300 yards inland.

February 17th.—Half the Norfolks left Kurna at 10 a.m., after 12 hours' notice, for Ahwaz, with orders to trans-ship at Basra, as all vessels are wanted here for moving troops, owing to the sudden rise of water. During last night the river bank was broken through at twenty-two places hereabouts, and the water among the trees rose nine inches, completely isolating No. 4 Redoubt, which has, consequently, to be abandoned. The road to Gunner Pier was also broken. This afternoon we had all available men on fatigue, building a bund in hopes of stopping the water, but it seems impossible to build it fast enough.

The Sheikh of Mohammerah (at the mouth of the Karun) is experiencing great difficulty in calling up his men, on account of the Jehad which the Turks have preached against us, and which it is thought may spread to Persia and Afghanistan. The force at

Digitized by Google

Ahwaz now consists of 1 platoon of the Dorsets, the 7th Rajputs, half the 44th Merwaras, 1 double-company 4th Rajputs, 1 section R.F.A., and 1 squadron cavalry, the whole under General Robinson.

The 16th Cavalry has been ordered from Basra to Shaiba, but as the floods between the two places are three feet deep, they cannot go at present.

February 18th.—The water last night rose half an inch, but even that means a considerable spread over the country; there is now, in front of the sand-dunes, a strip of dry ground only 700 yards wide, and the water is still flowing in from the Tigris and the Suwaib. The Regiment continues to build bunds to check the water. The 76th Battery ordered to proceed to Basra, and the Ammunition Column is to follow. In the afternoon eleven of us went out after sandgrouse in front of No. 3 Redoubt, Sergeant Grace bringing about 20 men to drive them, but the bag was small.

February 19th.—A small reconnoitring party of Turks came down in the night. One of their officers was wounded and captured. The West Kents and 90th Punjabis ordered to cross over to Kurna, to take the place of the Norfolks and another battalion, ordered to proceed to Basra.

February 20th.—The water is spreading fast. The 76th Battery left here to-day. A column moving from Shaiba to Basra was attacked by Muntafik Arabs, under Ajaimi. A Proclamation, declaring the British policy, has been issued to the whole of the Basra Villayet. Rumours that we have been attacked at Ahwaz.

February 21st.—104th Heavy Battery ordered to proceed to Gumat Ali (6 miles above Basra); 90th Punjabis to garrison Fort Snipe; 18th Brigade remain at Basra; 16th Brigade have gone to attack Ajaimi; 119th are moving camp to the trees in front of our perimeter, as the water is coming into their old camp.

February 22nd.—The Hospitals and Mule Corps are moving their camps, owing to the floods. The pontoons for a bridge across the Tigris between Kurna and Mazera have arrived. There is to be a cut in the middle (135 feet) to allow shipping to pass. Bunds are being built along all the redoubts and round the camp to check the water.

February 23rd.—Two Persians surrendered to our cavalry patrol; they say that the Turkish camp at Rotah is nearly flooded out. Apparently the Jehad is not proving a success; nearly all the tribes, including the Bakhtiaris near Shuster, have come in and joined the Sheikh of Mohammerah

Digitized by Google

February 24th.—Whittall left for Basra to do temporary Military Landing Officer. The Turks are believed to be collecting near Nasariyeh (Euphrates) for an advance on Basra. They have brought some steamers down the Shatt-el-Hai from Kut-el-Amara, but it is reported that they are short of coal. Another rumour says that Army Corps from Konia and Mosul are collecting at Kut. The 33rd Cavalry, less 1 troop, leave to-morrow for Basra.

February 25th.—The water has come into East trenches and right up to the face of No. 3 Redoubt, and was only kept out of the redoubt by a bund being built across the front.

February 26th.—The floods are coming into the camp. The 63rd Battery leaves for Basra to-morrow, the 12th Brigade to go there also; while the 17th Brigade looks after Kurna and Mazera. P and Q Companies, under Hyde, go over to Kurna to-morrow.

February 27th.—Went over to Kurna with Hyde to look at the site of the camp; there is not much room, as the ground is intersected by irrigation ditches worse than at Magil, there being only just room for a tent between each two ditches. We walked over by the bridge, which is at last finished. I laid out wire to the forts which we hold, viz., Forts Peebles and Fraser. The two companies came over in the morning, having to man-handle all the carts across the bridge. Half the West Kents went down to Basra.

February 28th.—The remainder of the Regiment crossed to Kurna. We hold half the perimeter at night with a company and a half, and the 103rd will hold the remainder when they come over. The 22nd Punjabis are to remain at Mazera, building themselves an enclosed work on the site of their camp. The remainder of the West Kents went down to Basra.

March 1st.—Mason left for India to relieve Mundey of the command of the Depôt. He is to remain there for three months. General Davison and Staff, with the 90th Punjabis, went down to Basra. The 119th relieved the 90th at Fort Snipe with half a battalion.

March 3rd.—Rumours that there has been some heavy fighting at Shaiba. H.M.S. "Miner," with an armed pinnace, went up the Euphrates to take soundings in Lake Hamar.

March 4th.— The Observation Tower which the sappers are erecting is very nearly finished. It will be 100 feet high.

March 5th.—Heard to-day that the fighting at Ahwaz and Shaiba had been very severe. I received orders to embark with my platoon

Digitized by Google

on H.M.S. "Miner," to go up the Suwaib and punish the inhabitants of a village who had been stealing tools from Mazera.

March 6th.—H.M.S. "Miner" left Kurna at 9.30 a.m., proceeded about two miles up the Suwaib Creek, and anchored about a mile below the village which was to be punished. My platoon, and Crosthwaite (Political), then went off in the ship's lifeboat towards the bank, wading ashore, and forming up on dry ground. We advanced to the village, passed through it, and surrounded it, when we found that not only was the whole place deserted, but that everything in it had been removed. The only inhabitants to be found were three old women sitting in a *mashoof*. There were no signs of the stolen tools, and Crosthwaite gave the order for the village to be burned. This having been done, we re-embarked at 1.30 p.m., and were back at Kurna soon after 3 p.m. Here we heard that the Sheikh of the village had been in Kurna, having got wind that we were going out.

March 7th.—The 119th received sudden orders to embark on the "Blosse Lynch" and proceed to Basra. Fort Snipe was taken over by a double company of the 103rd. We had letters to-day giving particulars of the fighting at Ahwaz. It appears that our people had gone out 800 strong to make a reconnaissance, when suddenly some 5,000 Arabs appeared from behind some hills and surrounded the force, who had to cut their way through In the process we lost one 18-pr. gun and limber, and half a mountain gun. Our casualties were heavy — 10 British officers killed and wounded. Three of the Rajputs were cut off, and afterwards their bodies were found terribly mutilated. We can get no details of the fight at Shaiba, but only the cavalry seem to have been engaged

March 8th.—Went up the Observation Tower in the afternoon; from the top I could see the Turkish gunboat "Marmaris" near Mazeeblah village, a large camp close by, and another camp east of the clump of trees at Rotah. The official report of the fighting at Ahwaz and at Shaiba has been received. At the former place the enemy's casualties are supposed to have amounted to 1,400 killed and wounded, while at Shaiba the cavalry retired in front of 1,500 Arabs and drew them on to the Dorsets, who were entrenched ready for them.

March 9th.—Fort Snipe was evacuated by the 103rd. In the afternoon three of us rode over to Mazera, and found that No. 3 Redoubt had been completely washed away.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. Birch-Reynardson's Diary

March 10th.—Last night our private motor-boat (the "Evinrude") and Morland's *mashoof* were stolen from the creek bang under the sentry's nose. I am glad that I did not post the sentry! We hear that the Arabs on the right bank of the Euphrates are going over to the Turks, and that the Jehad is spreading.

March 11th.—About 10.30 last night there were two tremendous explosions, which sounded as if our cow-guns had opened fire.

AFTER A PUNITIVE EXPEDITION UP SUWAIB CREEK.
No. 16 Platoon, 1st Battalion, returning to H.M.S. "Miner."

No one knew what had happened, but this morning it was discovered that the Turks had floated down two mines, hoping to bag the "Odin" or smash the pontoon bridge. They hit the bank instead. This is a new departure. We hear definitely that our stolen motor-boat is in the Turkish camp at Rotah. However, the shooting season is over, so it does not matter. Murphy returned from the Base Depôt, Basra.

Digitized by Google

So far the 6th Division, with its Divisional Troops, and the 12th Brigade, have been running the Mesopotamian Campaign practically alone. I will repeat the composition of the Division :—

INDIAN EXPEDITIONARY FORCE, "D."

6th Division.
(Lieut.-General Sir A. Barrett)

16th Brigade.
(Brigadier-General Delamain.)

2nd Dorsetshire Regiment.
104th Rifles.
20th Punjabis.
117th Mahrattas.

17th Brigade.
(Brigadier-General Dobbie.)

1st Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry
22nd Punjabis.
119th Infantry.
103rd Mahratta Light Infantry.

18th Brigade.
(Major-General Fry.)

2nd Norfolk Regiment.
7th Rajputs.
120th Infantry.
110th Mahrattas.

Divisional Troops.

10th Brigade R.F.A.
23rd and 30th Mountain Batteries.
33rd Cavalry.
34th Divisional Signal Company.
17th and 22nd Field Companies R.E.
48th Pioneers.
6th Divisional Ammunition Column.
Three Field Ambulances.

Other Forces in the Country.

86th and 104th Heavy Batteries, R.G.A.
12th Brigade.
Royal Naval Flotilla, consisting of various gunboats and other armed vessels.

Digitized by Google

The following shows the distribution of the Division:

At Shaiba.—16th Brigade, less 20th Punjabis, plus 119th Infantry
18th Brigade, less 7th Rajputs.
10th Brigade, R.F.A. (63rd, 76th, and 82nd Batteries).
30th Mountain Battery.
17th and 22nd Field Companies R.E.
Two Field Ambulances.

At Basra.—20th Punjabis.
1 Section 104th Heavy Battery, R.G.A.
86th Heavy Battery, R.G.A.

At Kurna.—17th Brigade, less 119th Infantry.
1 Section 104th Heavy Battery, R.G.A.
No. 1 Field Ambulance.

At Ahwaz.—7th Rajputs.
23rd Mountain Battery.
1 Section 82nd Battery, R.F.A.
1 Platoon, Dorsetshire Regiment.

The 34th Divisional Signalling Company at Shaiba, Basra, and Kurna, at which places also are distributed the units of the 12th Brigade, which arrived at Basra on 31st January, under the command of Brigadier-General Davison, viz. :—

2nd Royal West Kent Regiment
90th Punjabis.
4th Rajputs.
44th Mewaras.

March 12th.—We hear that another brigade—the 33rd (under General Gorringe), consisting of the 1/4th Hants (T.F.), 11th Rajputs, 66th and 67th Punjabis, as well as a Hants howitzer battery (T F.), river boats mounting 4 or 5 guns, and hydroplanes, are coming immediately, so things are looking up.

March 13th.—Sniping began again last night, mainly at the "Odin," but about four whistlers came over my tent. Only the 22nd are now holding Mazera, which is almost completely flooded. All our beautiful redoubts deep under water, and our work wasted. Davenport is in charge of the Regimental hut-building arrangements. Kearsley has gone down to Basra to bring up trench-mortars.

Digitized by Google

March 14*th*.—More sniping and two mines last night; windy, cloudy, and very dark night, with some rain in the early morning. We hear that yet another brigade (the 30th) is coming, which will nearly make us up to two divisions. It is commanded by General Melliss, V.C., and consists of the 24th Punjabis, 76th Punjabis, 126th Baluchis, and 2/7th Gurkhas.

March 15*th*.—To-day, much to the delight of the men, the boats' crews were given a job of tree felling. All the palms growing in the water on one side of the creek are to go, and each one will be paid for by the Government so as not to offend the dear Arabs. Not much luck fishing this evening, though Startin got into, but lost, a big one—an old friend for whom we have tried many evenings.

March 16*th*.—I got him this evening (1¾ lb.) on a big home-made fly. The Arabs call these fish *shillig ;* in shape like trout.

March 17*th*.—Poured all last night, and we were all wet through by 3 a.m. Two mines sent down, but no damage. One fish (¾ lb.) this evening.

March 18*th*.—Report says that further activities on the part of the Turks are expected both at Shaiba and Ahwaz. General Davison has taken over command at Ahwaz from General Robinson (sick).

March 19*th*.—The Turks started gun-fire on the camp at 3 a.m., but 700 yards short was the best they could do. The "Odin" went up this morning and fired on them for some time with her 4-inch guns, but with unknown results.

March 20*th*.—Morland got a 1½ lb. fish.

March 24*th*.—The latest news is that General Sir J. Nixon is coming out to command the force, which will shortly amount to an Army Corps. General Gorringe is to have the other Division (the 12th). The Turks are supposed to be assembling in great force at Baghdad, and are sending down some 9.2-inch guns for our amusement. They are also said to have 80 German officers. A soaking wet night. Two large pumps have been erected in Kurna to pump the water out of camp and so attempt to keep the place dry.

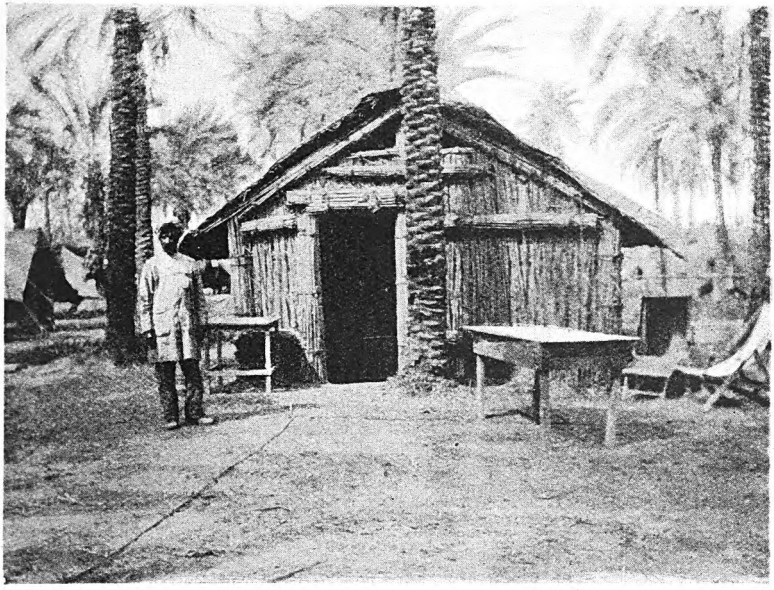
March 27*th*.—This afternoon our 4-inch guns were busy shelling the Turkish position.

March 28*th*.—Bathed in Kiln Creek before breakfast. H.M.S. "Odin" shelled Gun Hill, and managed to locate the enemy's guns.

Digitized by Google

March 29th.—To-day we had an awful sandstorm and strong south wind with an atmosphere like a London fog. The Arabs say that rain is coming.

March 30th.—The Arabs were right. The storm broke with a vengeance at 10 last night. I never saw such heavy rain or such lightning. We were on outpost, but luckily most of the men were under shelter. The camp was much flooded this morning. They say that Sheikh Ajaimi is chucking the Turks and coming over to us—for as long as it suits him, I expect.



OFFICERS' MESS, KURNA.

March 31st.—General Barrett arrived last night and looked round the defences this morning—I suppose a sort of refresher before he hands over to Sir John Nixon. Kearsley got back with his trench mortars, in which he has been taking a course at Basra. They are replacing the pontoons in the bridge by *mahelas* and *bellums*, as the pontoons may be required elsewhere.

April 1st.—The floods are now deep enough to take the boats. I spent yesterday and to-day in punting over them; splendid exercise, and a good place to practise the men, as they cannot get drowned.

Digitized by Google

April 3rd.—At about 9 a.m. the enemy opened fire on the "Espiègle," as she lay below Fort Snipe, and scored two hits, but fortunately not doing much damage. Our 4-inch guns replied, but as far as we know did not knock out any of their guns.

April 4th.—The Intelligence report that we killed 1 German and 14 Turks yesterday. General Gorringe has taken over command at Ahwaz, and General Davison is I.G. Communications.

April 5th.—We got the 5-inch guns into position at noon to-day, and started being frightful at 2 p.m., continuing all the afternoon. We all went out to watch the show, but were rather disappointed with the shooting. Perhaps we expected too much.

April 6th.—A few rounds from our 5-inch guns this morning persuaded the Turks to open fire on Fort Snipe. They shot very straight, but too high, and no damage was done. We replied, and the duel continued until dark. General Lean relieves General Davison as Brigade Commander, 12th Brigade.

April 7th.—An awful day of wind, rain, and hail as big as shrapnel. The Sappers report that the Turks are putting a 6-in. gun into position at Bahran. This is supposed to be official. Also that they have an aeroplane—which I do not believe. However, 10 per cent. of all working parties have now to be armed, and the Staff has issued full instructions in the art of shooting aeroplanes.

April 11th (Sunday).—We had a parade service to-day at 10, but it was hardly finished when their guns and ours opened fire. As I write our guns are crashing away, and I am afraid that if it goes on much longer my hut will be shaken down. They are shooting from Gun Hill and Tower Hill, and I can hear the whistle of their shells fairly close.

April 12th.—They kept on firing last night until 9.30, and for the last half-hour were plastering Fort Winsloe and the north face of the camp. They were bursting about 200 yards behind us while we were at dinner. I asked Yelloo, my bearer, if he was afraid; he said that he was, but that he would give Sahib his dinner and then go and hide, which I thought rather noble of him! This morning they and we were hard at it at daylight, and kept it up until 7.30 a.m. Two thousand Arabs have come down by the marshes opposite the west face, and are now among the trees across the creek. As I write (7.45 a.m.) we can hear the usual sing-song performance going on, but Courtis has just got on to them with his machine-gun as they cross the Euphrates, which ought to damp

Digitized by Google

their ardour a bit. There is a rumour that the bridge has been blown up by a mine; there certainly was a big explosion.

9 *a.m.*—Guns started again. It is true about the bridge; the middle has been blown clean out. Desultory rifle fire from the Arabs among the trees across the creek; one gentleman with a Mauser is very persistent. There is a great prayer-meeting and sing-song now being performed by the Arabs on the south side of the Euphrates. We can see them all marching round and round a green flag. Then they all jump together and let off a scream—most entertaining!

10.30 *a.m.*—The "Odin" has just gone up the Euphrates, and is shooting up the creek at Tower Hill; later she turned all her guns on to the Arabs in the marshes beyond the west face.

At about 2 p.m. the Arabs cleared out of the villages here, and came punting across the open marsh past the west face at about 1,200 yards range. Our machine-guns and 4-inch guns (with shrapnel) got right into them. There was a lull most of the afternoon, until about 4 p.m., when more Arabs came out, and caught it in the same way—rather beastly. This time the Turkish guns were distinctly seen to shell the Arabs after we had ceased firing. We are all out again to-night, as we expect an attack.

April 13th.—They never came. In the last day and a half the Turks are supposed to have fired about a thousand shells at us, and up to the present they have wounded two men. Yesterday, from 3 a.m. until dark, we heard the sound of guns, evidently from Shaiba, and to-day they are still firing. This must be a big all-round show, and ought to have some definite effect. At 5.30 p.m. the Turks opened fire on us, and began putting shells right into camp. Three fell very near the mess, and the cow had a lucky escape. They stopped at 6.30 p.m., having wasted over 60 shells. A quiet night.

April 14th.—Good news from Shaiba. They say that we and Mazera are to be attacked by the Beni-Lam. At 5 p.m. the Turks opened an accurate fire into camp, directed, as usual, at the Observation Tower, which was hit, but no damage done. Alexander (R.G.A.) had an extraordinary escape, a shell passing between his legs and through the flooring of the platform.

April 15th.—A very hot day. We hear that the enemy has mounted a gun of some kind on One Tree Hill, though why we ever let him get there no one knows. A wire has come to say that we have had a great success at Shaiba, but no details. The Beni-Lam are a ain billed to appear to-night.

Digitized by Google

CAPTAIN STARTIN, R.A.M.C.

April 16*th*.—A quiet night after all. No news from below, as the wire, as usual, is cut. Duke was sent in a hurry to Shaiba last night, so Powell is doing Brigade Signal Officer. Another Beni-Lam scare to-night, and reports of activity all along the line We wish they would come and get it over, and not keep us hanging about. Raining hard.

April 17*th*.—This evening Q Company got orders to leave early to-morrow morning, on the "Malamir," for some unknown destination.

April 18*th*.—Q Company left at 3.30 a.m.; Startin has gone with them; also a double company of the 103rd. They have gone to Gumat Ali to take part in the blockade of the Euphrates, and pursuit of the enemy from Shaiba. Orders came from Divisional Headquarters to-day for 200 men per regiment to be trained to pole and paddle. I have four boats, so it looks a likely job. I have some horrible poisoned bites on my legs. The Assistant Surgeon calls them "Baghdad boils." General Townshend has been appointed to command the 6th Division.

April 19*th*.—Started the new boating scheme, and had 35 men of P Company out in the afternoon. Sergeant Arlett has been told off to assist, and will be a great help.

Digitized by Google

FROM LIEUT. J. J. POWELL'S DIARY.

April 20th.—Heard the first official news about the Shaiba fight. The Turks numbered about 15,000, including 3,000 Khurdish cavalry, who did nothing all day except sit on the flank, which was a lucky thing for us, as we only had the one cavalry brigade to use against them. No sign of the Turkish first line trenches could be seen until we were within almost a hundred yards of them. They were on the reverse slope of a rise, and this accounted for our heavy casualties. The battle was an absolute toss up, for all our men were in the firing line, and we could make no impression. Orders for a retirement were actually issued, when the day was saved by the 16th Brigade getting up and charging. This was too much for the Turks, and they began to give ground at once. The Arabs, realizing what was happening, turned on their former friends, and pursued and harassed them all the way back to Nakhaila, and beyond. Our casualties were 1,276 of all ranks, being particularly heavy in officers. Both the Dorsets and Norfolks suffered very severely. Kendall, our late Band-Sergeant, was amongst those killed in the Dorsets. The enemy's casualties amounted to about 2,500, including 750 prisoners,

PUNTING ON THE EUPHRATES.

Digitized by Google

and we captured two mountain guns, and much gun and small-arm ammunition. The blockade on the Euphrates is to be pushed on as far as possible, and get to Nasiriyeh, if they can. Major-General Kemball (General Staff), who is up here with Colonel Douglas (A.Q.M.G.) on a tour of inspection, visited Fort Snipe and Mazera. Our guns opened fire, to try to draw the enemy's fire, but without success. We hear that two motor-cars have been found burnt at Nakhaila; also that a reward has been offered for information about the enemy's guns.

April 21st.—H.M.S. "Clio" arrived last evening to take part in the Euphrates blockade, having come from the Suez Canal, where she was during the attack on the Canal. This morning she proceeded to Chubaish, just above which a creek from the new cut of the Euphrates joins the old. The remainder of the blockade are now in the new Euphrates, close to the Hamar Lake. The Sheikh of Medina (on the Euphrates) reports that all the neighbouring Arabs have gone off to collect what rifles and loot they can from the battlefield of Barjisiyah Wood, close to Shaiba.

A message was received this evening that three Hotchkiss guns are supposed to be posted near the east end of Hamar Lake, so that H.M.S. "Lewis Pelly," with 25 men of the 43rd, under Naylor, leaves to-morrow morning to investigate.

Stapleton appointed D.A.Q.M.G. 6th Division.

April 22nd.—H.M.S. "Lewis Pelly" arrived back from the Hamar Lake, having found no signs of any guns. Fort Snipe is in daily peril of being washed away by the floods.

From Lieut. Birch-Reynardson's Diary.

April 23rd.—We hear that our blockading troops are on the big lake up the Euphrates. We do not know how they could have got there, if the map is correct. A fearful downpour again this afternoon, and everything soaked for the third day running. I do not believe that we could get the big guns out of this place, if we had to go. The floods and the river are nearly two feet higher than the camp, and are only kept out by *bunds*, which may burst at any moment.

April 24th.—The whole camp a swamp, but a fine day. In the afternoon General Townshend arrived, to take command of the 6th Division, as General Barrett has gone away sick. General Nixon is now commanding the whole force.

Digitized by Google

April 25th.—Baghdad boils still going strong, and I am not to be allowed to do duty until they heal up.

April 27th.—Q Company returned last night from the blockade. They seem to have had a most amusing time, though they say that they accomplished nothing. The Arabs report that the Turks were almost wiped out at Barjisiyah—casualties at least 6,000, and they worried them all the way back. They did not stop at Suk-es-Sheyukh, or at Nakhaila. S Company went off in the "Malamir" to Hamar Lake.

April 28th.—Last night at 10.30 the howitzers (1/5th Hants) arrived, and were disembarked with great secrecy at Port Lanyon, on the south face, thence being taken to Fort Fraser, on the north-west corner, so that the Arabs in Kurna should not see them. I am allowed back to duty, on condition that I do not stand or walk too much. The wire to Basra is again cut by the Arabs, so we get no news. This evening I got a $3\frac{3}{4}$ lb. fish, which is top weight so far.

April 29th.—At 6.20 this morning we heard that General Townshend would inspect us at 7.30. Awful rush.

April 30th.—The howitzers have been taken up to Nahairat, a ruined village between the north face and Fort Snipe. We saw the mines which the "Lewis Pelly" had picked up; they measured 2 feet long, 18 inches high, and 6 inches broad, and weighed 75 lb., of which 45 lb. was dynamite.

May 2nd.—Spent a loathsome night, with 20 men of my platoon, on the top of an Arab house in Nahairat, full of fleas and mosquitoes. We were doing escort to the howitzers. S Company returned last night from the Euphrates blockade, and reported nothing doing up there. We hear that a cavalry reconnaissance at Braikeh (Karun River) was suddenly attacked by Arabs while watering horses. Three British officers were killed.

May 4th.—At 3 p.m. orders arrived that Brooke, Kearsley, and I were to embark on the "Odin" and "Espiègle" at 7.30 p.m. Kearsley and I each with 25 rifles, 300 rounds per man, and rations for two days. On arriving at the quay at 7 p.m., we found that the orders had been changed, and that Kearsley and I were to go on the "Salimi" to-night, while Brooke goes on the "Espiègle" to-morrow morning, as Military Adviser. Found on board Ackerman (R.F.A.), in command of one 18-pr.; Aitkin (R.E.) with a demolition party; and Forbes (4th Hants) with 25 men and machine-guns

Digitized by Google

May 5th.—Started coaling at 4.30 a.m., and got away at 7.30. Operation Orders told us that the idea was that we were to co-operate with the Sheikh of Medina (Euphrates) in punishing the Sheikh of Haffa, who looted the Shaiba convoys. We started off in the following order: H.M.S. "Odin," H.M.S. "Espiègle"; the "Salimi," with 50 of the 43rd, details, and one 18-pr.; the "Sumana," with 25 of the 22nd Punjabis, two 3-prs., and the Intelligence; and the "Massoudieh," with 25 men of the 22nd Punjabis. We steamed up the Euphrates for about two hours, until, on rounding a bend, we came in sight of Medina, where we found the Sheikh and his army of about 1,500 cut-throats waiting for us. They were in *mashoofs* (boats), and many of them carried banners of green and red, with the Star and Crescent on most of them. We came to anchor, and the Sheikh went on board the "Espiègle" for a pow-wow, which took some time. At length he gave the order for a move, and with much yelling and waving of banners, they started off up Haffa Creek, to surround the village. We stayed where we were until about 10 a.m., when I got order to transfer my men to the "Sumana." Brooke also came on board, and we started off up the Haffa Creek. The channel is about 25 yards wide, and 5½ feet deep, and much overgrown with weeds. Two miles up we came to the village and found that our Sheikh, instead of surrounding it as directed, was sitting in front of it, holding the usual sort of prayer-meeting.

A messenger was at once sent to the Sheikh of Haffa, ordering him to come in on pain of his village being destroyed. A wait of an hour and a half ensued, during which time we had a good opportunity of inspecting our allies. They were for the most part armed with Martinis, some of which were highly decorated with silver and turquoise; others had swords and daggers with beautiful hilts of ivory and turquoise. They wore few clothes, but what they had were of rather brighter colour than usual, and this, together with the many silk banners on their silver-topped poles, combined to make a very picturesque scene.

In the course of time our messenger returned with the information that the enemy was "in the air," i.e., had gone.

Crosthwaite (Political) told the Sheikh to go on and burn the village. They started off with a great sing-song, but returned almost immediately, reporting that the enemy was in a village a little farther on. This they were ordered to attack, while we went some 300 yards further up the creek, to support them if necessary.

Digitized by Google

They went off at a great pace in their *mashoofs*, looking, with their bright colours and flags, like a flight of butterflies among the palms. Almost immediately they opened fire, standing up in their boats, and shooting as they dodged about among the trees. Most of the fire seemed to be directed at the sky. A running fight continued for about half an hour, and then the two villages began to burn, and dense columns of smoke rose into the air.

After some time the Sheikh and his army returned, reporting the enemy in full flight, and much loot taken. His own casualties were only 3 wounded, as far as he knew, and these he brought on board to be looked after. He was a fine-looking old man, very plainly dressed, and very much the Sahib; he struck me as being much less talkative than most of the Arabs about here. He shook hands all round, and was presented by Crosthwaite with a present of tinned fish, a jar of pickles, and a jar of chutnee, with which he seemed very pleased.

We soon left the creek, passing many of the Sheikh's army on their way down, their boats laden with loot, mostly grain and cattle.

We had orders to transfer to the "Odin," but after we had got the men into boats and half-way across, we were told to return to the "Sumana," whence we were transferred to the "Salimi," and we were back in camp at 6 p.m.

May 6th.—We hear that Wynter is returning from Basra, where he has been doing Censor.

May 7th.—At 6 p.m. I got orders to have 8 crews ready by 6.30 to-morrow morning. Scout's dress; 100 rounds per man. We are to have a show against the Arabs of another Beni Manspur village who have been misbehaving themselves.

May 8th.—Paraded at 6.30 a.m., and assembled at Fort Peebles (S.W. angle), 8 crews of ours, 8 of the 22nd Punjabis, and 8 of the 103rd L.I. At about 7.30 the "Salimi" appeared with the Colonel, Headquarters, and S Company on board. We made our 24 boats fast to three tow ropes astern, each regiment to a rope, and at 8 a.m. we started up the Euphrates. Half an hour later we arrived off a village on the south bank, and cast off the boats, in two of which Courtis mounted his machine-guns.

My orders were to go straight into the village, and, if not held up, right through to the other side. If fired on, I was to halt and return the fire, letting the "Espiègle" and "Odin" know the enemy's position, when they would open fire. I had definite orders not to fire until we were fired on by the enemy.

Digitized by Google

I moved ahead in my *mashoof*, with Turner poling, and Jackson down in the bows with his rifle ready. At about 30 yards behind came four boats, followed at 200 yards by the remaining boats. Almost at once I had the good luck to strike a channel leading to the village, which, as usual, was situated in a flooded palm-grove, with open marshes behind.

On suddenly coming round a bend in the channel, I found the village full of people in a state of great excitement. Several of the men were armed, and got as far as putting up their rifles and covering us; so I shouted back to the boats behind to cover all the armed Arabs. As soon as the latter saw that we meant business, and that I was not alone, many threw down their guns, and others made off, wading or swimming. I could not stop them, as I had strict orders not to fire first.

We got through the village as quickly as possible, and coming out on the marshes on the far side, found a whole line of *mahelas* (dhows)—14 or 15 I should say—drawn up by the edge of the village. I posted four boats over these, to prevent their escape; but we could not guard all the smaller *mashoofs*, many of which got away into the marshes, and were too fast to be caught. One *mahela* tried to get away, but was stopped at once by a "group" from the machine-guns. I now learned that, after I had started for the village, the order against opening fire had been cancelled, but could not be passed up to us in front. It appears that before we started the Sheikh of the village had promised to come in and hand over his rifles; but as he did not do so, the order about firing was changed.

At 11.30 we were ordered to burn and loot the village, and to collect any Arabs that we could. It was quite extraordinary how difficult it was to make the good, orderly, civilized British soldier play the Hun, and burn and smash things. I found that generally I had to give the lead.

Rather an unpleasant job was the burning of three *mahelas* which could not be got away. All the lady members of the resident families came and grovelled and wept and besought my mercy.

Our loot consisted of two cows (one of which died in transit), three sheep, some chickens, carpets, Arab clothes, brass ornaments and pots, and three rather nice chests. These last off the captured *mahelas*. We paddled and poled back, and got in at about 5.15 p.m. —an amusing but very hard day.

Digitized by Google

FROM LIEUT. J. J. POWELL'S DIARY.

May 9th.—Davenport, with 30 men, went off on H.M.S. "Shushan" on a reconnaissance, to find out how far boats could be taken up the El Huir Creek. When they had gone about 6 miles up, they were attacked by Arabs in the reeds. Lieut.-Commander Cookson was severely wounded while trying to turn the ship round. He had his wound dressed, and then returned to his post. Davenport took command of all the guns, and kept up a heavy fire until they were

OFFICERS' MESS AT KURNA, MAY 1915.

out of range. He kept shifting his guns from side to side, and from one deck to another.

General Townshend and Brigadier-General Smith (R.A.) arrived up in the evening, to watch the howitzers registering ranges to-morrow.

May 10th.—The howitzers commenced firing at 8 a.m., registering ranges to Norfolk Hill, Tower Hill, and One Tree Hill, and made very good shooting. General Townshend went up the Observation Tower, to look at the ground to the north, with a view to attack.

Digitized by Google

He proposes to make a frontal attack straight across the marsh to Bahran, which appears to be the main position.

May 11th.—The Euphrates blockading ships have orders to return to Chubaish, under Lilly, R.N. We hear that our advance from Ahwaz has been postponed, because the Turks are now beginning to retire, as they are unable to do much damage to the pipe-line.

May 12th.—Paddler No. 3 (commonly known as "P. 3") arrived in the afternoon, with the 119th and Brigade Signal Section from Shaiba. There are seven of these paddle-boats which have just arrived from Burma, where they were used as coolie boats on the Irrawaddy and Salwein Rivers. They have been taken over and manned by the Royal Indian Marine. All the Captains came up to-day on the "P. 3" to see the river, and find the way to Kurna They looked splendid, walking up and down in the bows, with their telescopes under their arms, as though they were on the bridge of a warship.

Wynter returned from his post as Censor at Basra. Generals Nixon, Kemball, Townshend, and Delamain arrived in the evening on a tour of inspection. Sir Percy Cox (Chief Political Officer) came up at night in his own launch.

May 13th.—General Nixon inspected us and the 103rd in the morning, and told the officers that he intends to have the majority of the 6th Division up here for the advance to Amara, but that our Brigade will be given the post of honour. He said that if he could not do it with us, he could not do it at all! He was confident of success.

May 14th.—Very hot now; thermometer always over 100°, which is very trying in such a damp place as this. Vaccinated this morning with half the Regiment. Since the arrival of the 119th, our outposts on the perimeter have been reduced, but we have to find a piquet in Nahairat village for the protection of the howitzers.

May 15th.—Getting hotter every day, and now we have no breeze. The ships on the Euphrates blockade are finding very little to do, and their numbers are being reduced. They saw a Thornycroft boat on Hamar Lake yesterday, but it fled as soon as H.M.S. "Shaitan" opened fire on her. Great preparations are being made for our advance; the men are all being trained in paddling and poling *bellums*.

May 17th.—All parades have now to be over by 9 a.m., so as to keep the men out of the sun during the middle of the day. There

Digitized by Google

was heavy firing last night against Fort Snipe; all the bullets fell in Nahairat, and one of our men on outpost there was seriously wounded. This evening Morland gave a *bellum* demonstration for the benefit of the G.O.C. and commanding officers, and showed the best way of advancing at close range when under fire. He turned all the men out of the boat, and made them push it through the reeds broadside on. At 6.30 p.m. our heavy guns opened fire on Tower Hill, and the howitzers took it up later. This so enraged the Turks that they opened fire too, and kept it going until 8 p.m., giving us a few rounds also during the night.

May 18th.—H.M.S. "Clio," at daybreak, shelled Gun Hill from Kiln Creek, and then Tower Hill from Fort Fry, but without getting any reply from the Turks.

May 19th.—Our spies report that the enemy has put two guns on the El Huir Creek to stop our getting up that way. Took the signallers out in the marsh to try a new helio-stand. It is 6 feet long, but only just allows the helio to clear the reeds.

From Lieut. Birch-Reynardson's Diary.

May 20th.—Rumour has it that the Turks mean to evacuate Rotah, which, it is said, will become uninhabitable in another fortnight, so our *bellum* expedition may not come off.

The hot weather has come, and it *is* hot, and will, I suppose, get much worse. Many cases of fever; if we sit down and do nothing it will be awful. Private Josey, my servant, is sick with fever, and I am glad to say not bad. I went over to see him this evening.

May 21st.—This was to have been the day of our show, but about a week ago it was postponed, which was quite right, as we certainly are not ready. Lloyd (our Brigade-Major) is going home sick, and our Brigadier (Dobbie) has gone down to Basra, probably also to go home, as there is no chance of his leg, which he broke coming out in the "Salsette," ever getting right. He has been a cripple all this time.

May 22nd.—I went to see poor Josey at 9.30 this morning, as he had not come out of hospital, and found him terribly ill. At 11 a.m. they came and told me that he was dead.

May 23rd.—Colonel Climo, 24th Punjabis, took over temporary command of the 17th Brigade. General Townshend and Staff have arrived.

Digitized by Google

May 24th.—I took over 12 boats which arrived last night, also two machine-gun rafts. The latter consist each of two *bellums*, some three feet apart, and kept side by side by having spars fixed across. On the top is a platform, protected by ¼-inch steel plates in the form of a V, the angle of the V pointing forward for the machine-gun to fire over, while the wings of the V provide cover for the gun numbers. These rafts are, of course, somewhat conspicuous; but, though heavy and consequently slow, are considered a success, so much so that a mountain-battery is to be similarly mounted.

I took out R Company for a practice this evening. Matters were somewhat confused at first but once out on the open marsh things went better.

Thirty-two more boats were taken over this evening. Very busy.

May 25th.—Another 32 boats arrived. We have been trying a method of armouring them with steel shields, but it makes them too heavy for moving through the reeds.

Q, S, and P Companies out at practice in the morning, and did not do badly. Handed over 3 boats to Duke (Cheshire Regiment) for the Signal Section, and the armoured boat to the 119th.

The 30th Mountain Battery, Wireless Section, and Army Signal Company arrived to-day.

May 26th.—The boat practice is getting on well; the show is fixed for the 30th; 32 more boats arrived, and have been sent straight to be armoured, which is being done by the Sappers and Miners, north of Fort Fraser. The armoured boats are now to be joined together by pairs, and each regiment is to have 12 of these armoured horrors. Personally, I think they are no good.

The 22nd Company Sappers and Miners and the 117th Mahrattas arrived.

I spent the evening in my *mashoof* trying to find channels for boats and armoured boats. The former draw 10 inches, the latter at least 18 inches (allowing for the guns). Any move in the dark will be very difficult.

Mundey arrived from India after dinner. The heat is getting terrific.

May 27th.—All the armoured boats completed and handed over by 1 p.m. Q Company and half P are to deal with these.

We hear that the aeroplanes arrived a fortnight ago, but are still at Abadan, being repaired after the journey from India—concealed, rumour says, under 4,000 tons of bhoosa (forage)! Mundey reports

Digitized by Google

that more aeroplanes were brought by the ship in which he travelled. Sherish is to be used as a landing-ground and refilling point.

According to local intelligence reports the enemy's force now consists of 3 battalions of Infantry, 1 of Gendarmerie, and an unknown quantity of Arabs, as well as 10 guns (with 1,600 rounds per gun), and 7 to 10 Germans employed in making and laying mines. Their commander, described as a drunken and unpopular officer, is said to have arrived at Rotah from Basra viâ the Suwaib River, i.e., through our lines! A Turk was captured to-day dressed as a woman. After he was shut up, he tried to escape by pulling down the wall round the door of his prison. Morland is working all day, and doing everyone's job, and is never out of temper.

May 28th.—Morland and I (and two pair of wire-nippers) are to look for mine leads and cut them. To-night there is to be a rehearsal, and Morland and I are to go out first and be responsible for the Brigade's direction. There is some talk about another brigade moving up the Suwaib River on *der Tay*.

The rehearsal this evening (in full view of the Turks!) went off well, except for the armoured boats, which are far too unwieldy. We concentrated at 2,600 yards from Norfolk Hill, on to which the enemy flocked to watch us, but, happily, to do nothing else. Probably this is the first occasion on which a dress rehearsal for an attack has taken place in view of the enemy.

The boats formed up in two lines: 43rd and 103rd in the front line, and half the 119th in the second line. The remainder of the 119th were posted on the left flank, and a half-company 43rd was detailed as escort to the Mountain Battery, echeloned on the right flank. The front line of each unit consisted of its armoured *bellums*, with the M.G. rafts on the outer flank, the remainder of the unit forming its own support. The whole of this performance took some considerable time, as the armoured *bellums* and M.G. rafts found great difficulty in getting through the reeds.

We hear that the 16th Brigade, on their ships, will follow us up the river, and go through us as soon as we reach Sakricha, and as soon as the obstruction in the river at Rotah has been cleared away. General Townshend hopes to arrive at Amara at the same time as the Turks. The Brigade Staff and the Regiment are to have the "P. 2" for baggage, rations, and stores.

May 29th.—Busy all day with final arrangements for the "Regatta," as the Basra people call our coming show. Served out with all equipment, caulking materials, red lead, canvas, nails, and

Digitized by Google

wooden pegs, to plug bullet holes in the boats. Also shovels, picks, sandbags, baling tins, and tins to hold drinking water. Each man will have his waterproof sheet, rifle, and equipment ammunition in his boat.

Various ships arrived this morning, bringing the Norfolks, Dorsets, 48th Pioneers, and 104th Rifles, with the Staff of the 16th Brigade. The "Blosse Lynch" is fitted with wireless, ready for the advance to Amara. The whole front was lined with barges and boats of every description, loading up with baggage, and the stream was full of R.N. ships. To add to the gaiety, the day was hotter than ever; on some of the ships the thermometer registered 114° in the shade, and the humidity bulb 98. In the evening the two 4.7 guns, moored alongside H.M.S. "Miner," opened fire, from the end of Kiln Creek, on Gun Hill, and drew the enemy's fire, but without damage. At night there was a little firing at Fort Snipe, where one man was hit.

May 30th.—H.M.S. "Lawrence" registered ranges in the morning on Gun Hill from the bottom of Kiln Creek. Later, orders were given out. We start from here at 5 a.m., so as to be at the rendezvous at 5.30; the advance to commence at 5.45. The 43rd attack Norfolk Hill and then Tower Hill, while the 103rd attack Gun Hill. The 22nd Punjabis remain on the other side of the river; attack One Tree Hill; and then help our advance by fire directed on Norfolk and Tower Hills. All positions to be bombarded from 5.30 a.m. onwards. H.M.S "Comet" to go up the Suwaib River and bombard the sand-dunes, while H.M.S. "Shushan" goes up the El Huir Creek, with some of the Sheikh of Medina's men, to engage the gun near the village of Adar. As soon as we have captured Tower Hill the fleet, preceded by H.M.S. "Shaitan" and H.M.S. "Sumana" sweeping for mines, will come up, to be ready for the bombardment of Bahran.

I had hoped that all preparations would have been finished, and that we should have an easy day; but no such luck. What with orders, a pow-wow, and a thousand and one last fixings, I did not get through until 7.15 p.m. All equipment and kits were packed up and on board "P. 2" by 5 p.m. Ivey goes in charge, and sends out rations to us from the ship. Each regiment has 72 *bellums*, not to mention 8 with the ship.

Most of the men are sleeping down by the creek—all amongst the mosquitoes. I, with Jackson and Turner, in the *mashoof*, start off to-morrow at 4.30 a.m. to flag the course, with red and white

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

flags. Then I am to report to Colonel Climo (in command of the 17th Brigade), as Orderly Officer, the wire-cutting job being off. An awful lot of men are down with fever, which means continually chopping and changing the crews.

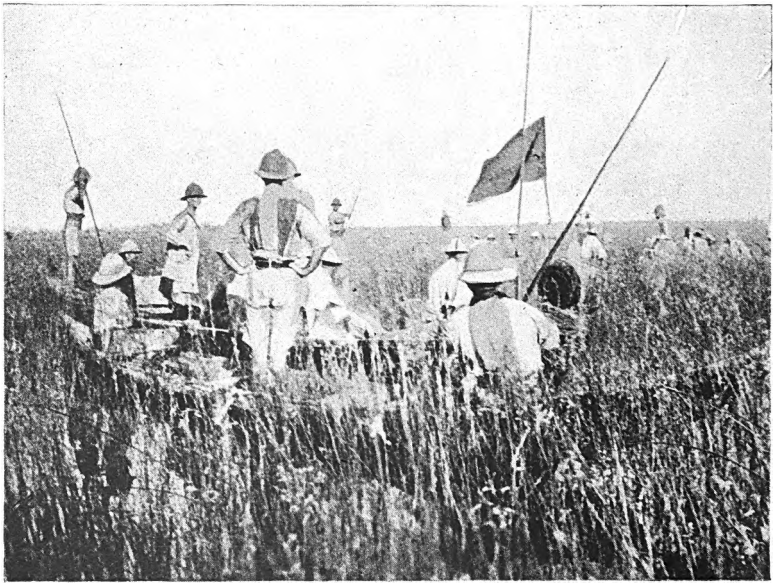
THE ADVANCE ON AMARA.

Boat Attacks by the 17th Brigade.

(*See* Sketch Map.)

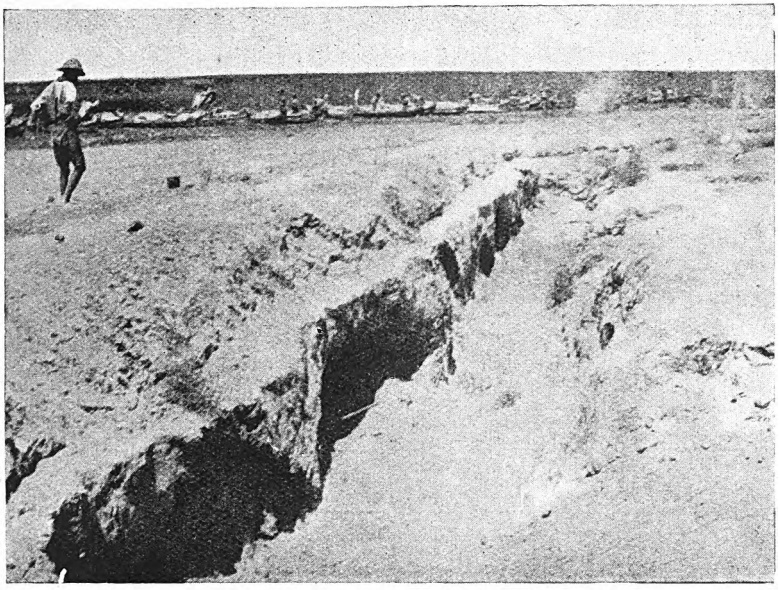
May 31*st*.—Had the flags out at 4.45 a.m. Just as it was growing light, at 5 a.m., the bombardment started. The Brigade rendezvoused west of Nahairat village at 5.30 a.m., and at 5.45 we moved off, heading straight for Norfolk Hill. Rifle fire from the other bank—evidently the 22nd Punjabis attacking One Tree Hill—was heard at 6 a.m.

At 6.15 an aeroplane appeared over Sherish, and at 6.30 the Regiment came under fire from Norfolk Hill, but the enemy's guns made bad shooting. At 7 a.m. the enemy, still on Norfolk Hill, opened a heavy rifle fire. Our machine-gun section (now having three guns) was well up on the Regimental left flank, and going strong. The mountain guns were also in action.



THE 17th BRIGADE STARTING THE ATTACK.

Digitized by Google



CAPTURED TRENCHES ON NORFOLK HILL.

At 7.10 R Company was ordered to pass through the armoured *bellums*, and assault the hill, as the armour plating was impeding progress by catching in the reeds. When within 200 yards of the hill poor Brooke was hit just above the heart, and died within five minutes. R Company immediately dashed forward and carried the hill, taking only a few unwounded prisoners, the majority of the defenders (about 100) being either killed or wounded. A German, who tried to escape from the hill as soon as we got on to it, was shot as he swam away. Colonel Climo and I landed at about this time. Kearsley, with his platoon, was left on Norfolk Hill, to hold it and clear it up. The remainder of the Regiment formed up and pushed on. The guns were turned on to Tower Hill, with the result that the enemy offered little resistance, and soon hoisted the white flag. At 8 a.m. the hill was in our hands; Henley and a few men wounded. We captured here a gun complete, and much gun and rifle ammunition, as well as about 80 prisoners. The gun-team had been wiped out by a lucky shot from the "Odin." [1]

[1] "Odin" and "Lawrence" were armed with four guns each; "Espiègle" and "Clio" with six guns; on the horse-boats there were three 4.7-inch guns. Other guns assisting in the advance were R.G.A. eight, R.F.A. ten, Mountain Battery (on *bellum*) six.—ED.

Digitized by Google

At this time I was away, opposite Gun Hill, taking messages. The 103rd and 119th captured Gun Hill at 11 a.m. The enemy put up a poor show, and hoisted up the white flag as soon as we got really close. One hundred and thirty prisoners, including two officers (*mulazim* and *yusbashi*, i.e., subaltern and captain), two guns, minus their breech-blocks (one afterwards recovered), a considerable quantity of shells, cordite charges, rifles, and ammunition, a large telescope, and several hundred yards of ¾-inch insulated cable.

After this, as the heat was so bad, and the next position (Bahran) some way off, we knocked off for the day at 12.30 p.m. Had an excellent lunch with Colonel Climo, and was then sent across the river with a message to the 22nd Punjabis, who had captured One Tree Hill at 6.30 a.m. I was nearly had twice by shells from Bahran, but luckily the ground was marshy, and they only kicked up mud. Got back to the Regiment on Tower Hill at a little after 4 p.m., had some tea and bread, and then a bathe, with Morland, in water as hot as a hot bath. Just as I was changing and thinking about dinner, Headquarters sent for me, and I was ordered to take a message to the 119th, but was not told exactly where I should find them. We pushed off in the dark about 7.30 p.m., and had a bad trip, constantly running aground, and having to get out and push the *mashoof*. We landed on islands three times, but at last the fourth island proved to be the right one, and I found Major Darley. I also found that the signal message saying that they were to expect us had never arrived, so that if his sentries had been alert, we ought to have been shot. The return journey was not so bad, as there was something of a moon, and we could see the Headquarter signal lamps going; but it was 11 p m. before we got in, and I was almost dead beat. The troops are bivouacking for the night: on Tower Hill, 43rd and 22nd Punjabis (who have come across the river); on Gun Hill, 103rd; at Alloa, 119th; and Brigade H.Q. on Mine Hill.

Boat Attack on the Bahran Position.

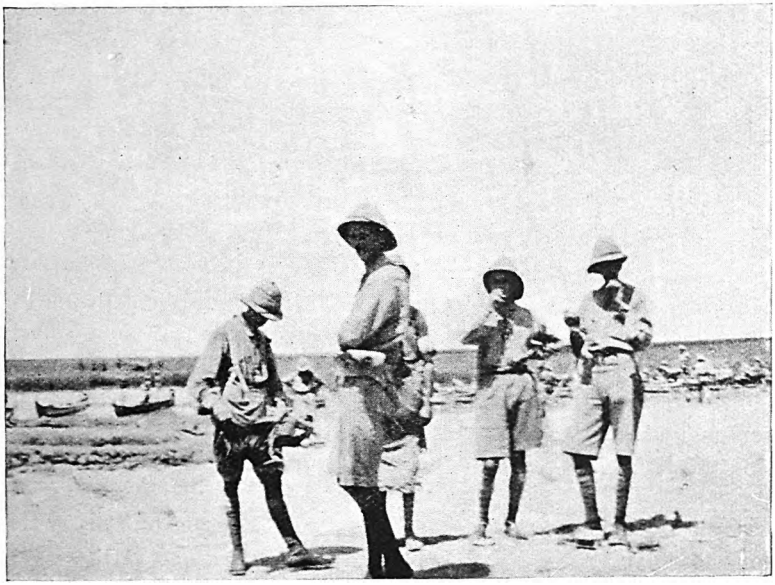
June 1st.—Reported to Headquarters at 4.30 a.m., and was dispatched at once to discover if the 119th were going round the north of Gun Hill to the position of assembly north-west of the hill. I found them in considerable difficulties, as the channel was not deep enough for those cumbrous M.G. rafts. The Brigade Commander now turned up, and sent me off to bring our Regiment

Digitized by Google

that way also. Eventually I brought the Regiment along, but in the meanwhile Morland had found a better channel more to the west, through which all the boats were passed.

In yesterday's operations the armoured boats were absolutely nowhere, so we were ordered to remove all armour (except that on the M.G. rafts), and leave it on Tower and Gun Hills.

The bombardment of Bahran commenced at 5 a.m. The 5-inch, 4.7-inch, and 4-inch guns seemed to be doing good work, and frequently the whole position was hidden in clouds of smoke and dust But there was no response either from Bahran or from Mazeeblah.



OFFICERS ON BAHRAN ISLAND.

The attack was to be made on the west of the enemy's position. As we gradually approached through very dense and tall reeds, we saw no signs of the enemy until 7 a.m., when one of our aeroplanes appeared, flying north-east, and then circled back south-west. As it passed north-east of Bahran we heard very heavy rifle fire, which we afterwards discovered was directed by the Turks on the aeroplane, though at the time we thought that the Arabs had turned on the Turks and were firing into them. It appears that before 7 a.m. the aeroplane reported the enemy's position evacuated, but

Digitized by Google

PRISONERS TAKEN ON TOWER HILL.

for some reason the message did not reach the guns until 8.15, so for upwards of an hour they had been firing at nothing!

At 8.45 a.m. we landed on the west side of Bahran, and Davenport, with a platoon of Q Company, pushed straight on to the north end of the island, in the hopes of catching some of the enemy; but, unfortunately, they all got away. We found four empty emplacements, and wheel tracks down to the marsh; the limbers had not been removed.

At 9.15 a message came from Divisional Headquarters to say that our aeroplane reported that the whole Turkish position (including Mazeeblah, Rotah, and Sakricha) was evacuated, and at 10 a.m. the gunboats, followed by transports conveying the 16th Brigade, came up.

At 2 p.m., after mine-sweeping had been carried out, the gunboats pushed on; and by 3 p.m., the river obstruction having been removed, the gunboats passed it, and were going hard up river.

During that afternoon the 16th Brigade disembarked on Bahran, and the 17th Brigade embarked (the Regiment on "P. 2"). The heat and glare on this island, without a suspicion of shade, was almost incredible. The enemy's trenches formed two distinct positions, and were very well sited. A letter was found written by a German (named Muller), in charge of the mine arrangements at Bahran, to another German (named Gottlieb) at Tower Hill. The

Digitized by Google

writer ordered Gottlieb to get plenty of stores from Kurnah(?), and also wrote: "I do not know when they will retire, but probably next week." "They" must have referred to the Turks. Gottlieb was probably the white man shot by Corporal Purseglove running or swimming in the marsh from Norfolk Hill.

The system of mines was most complete and extensive, mines being laid in the river and the marshes, and arranged to be electrically fired by means of hundreds of yards of ¾-inch cable leading from observation posts at Bahran, Gun Hill, and Tower Hill. A switch-board and cells were discovered and put out of action by Powell. None of these mines were fired by the enemy, but we exploded five near Tower Hill by rifle fire, and it is said that about 20 more have been recovered from the river.

The gun captured on Tower Hill was used in the bombardment of Bahran, by Gilpin (R.F.A.), and some of his battery, who had been trained previously with captured Turkish guns at Basra.

C.S.M. Shilcock (R Company) gives the following account of the operations:—

On May 31st we left Kurna for the advance on Amara, about 80 miles farther up the river. Our brigade had been trained to

ADVANCING ON NORFOLK HILL.

Digitized by Google 414152

paddle *bellums*, and we were told off to make the attack, the other brigades of the 6th Division being on the river in boats. The enemy were entrenched on some hills, and had been shelling us whilst we were in Kurna.

We started at 5 a.m. R Company was ordered to take Norfolk Hill, and under cover of a bombardment by our ships and artillery we approached the position in our *bellums*. We then landed, waist-deep in mud and water, and captured the hill, having 4 casualties (Captain R. R. M. Brooke killed, and 3 men wounded). The enemy's casualties were 63 killed, 27 wounded, and 16 unwounded prisoners.[1] After taking this hill, Tower Hill was the next objective of the Battalion, and another small hill close by. These were soon captured (Captain Henley and Sergeant Armitt wounded), and a 15-pr. Krupp gun fell into our hands undamaged (used the next day against the enemy). In the meanwhile the 103rd had taken two more 15-pr. guns and ammunition, and 150 prisoners.

We halted on the captured ground, and at 4 next morning moved off to where the Turks' camp was. It was hard work, as the boats had to be pushed along when the water was not deep enough for paddling. When we arrived at Bahran, we found that the Turks had gone, but had left their tents, etc. They had taken away their guns, so the "Espiègle," "Odin," and "Clio," took up the chase.

Lieut Birch-Reynardson's Diary.

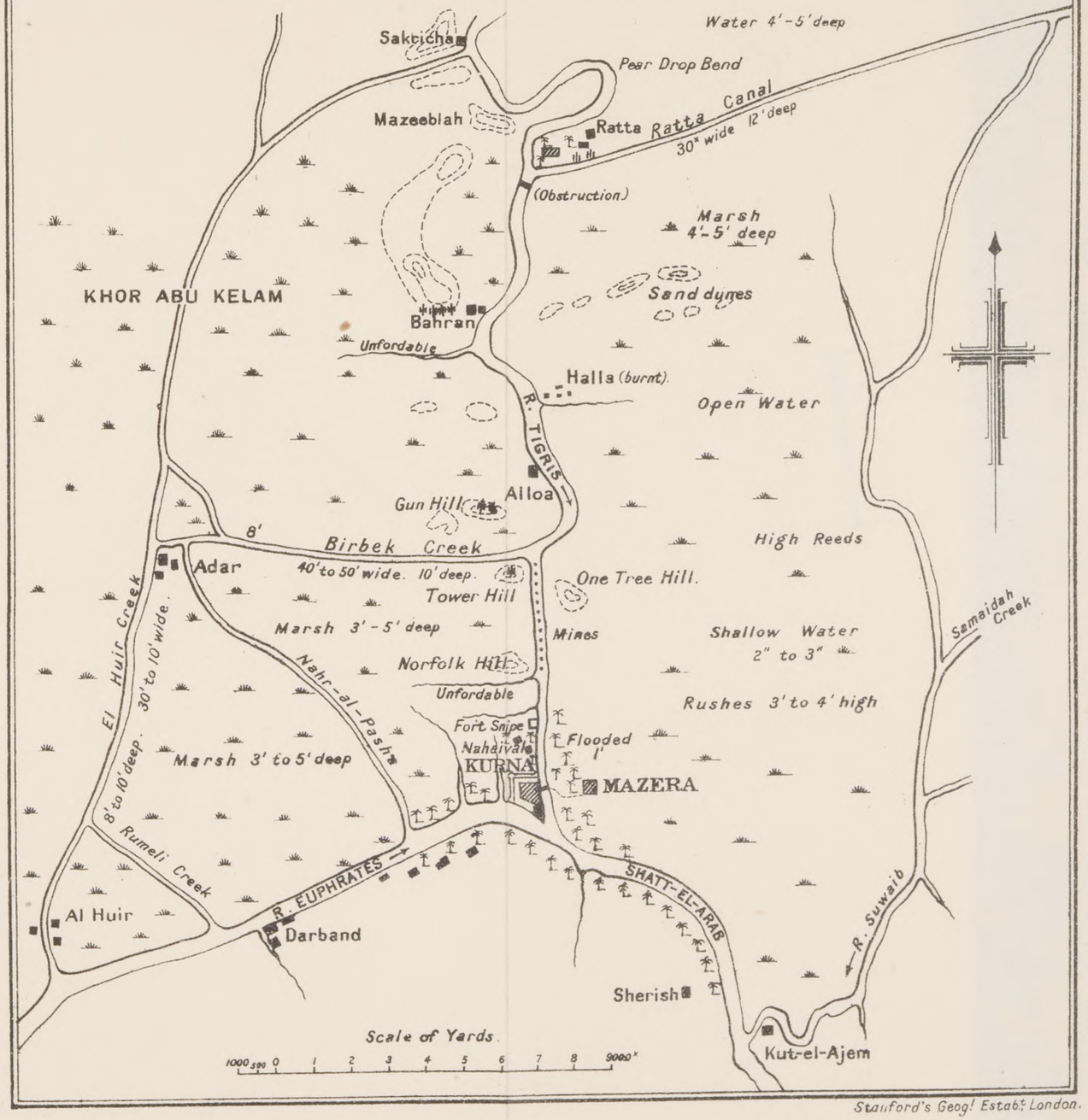
June 2nd.—Started at 5 a.m. on "P. 2" for Ezra's Tomb. Passed Mazeeblah at 1.30 p.m.; the Turkish camp abandoned—also four limbers. In sight of Ezra's Tomb at 1.45. The river so far has been very winding. "Pear Drop Bend" is very nearly a complete circle. At 2.30 arrived at Ezra's Tomb, and 2.45 we were ordered to tranship everything from "P. 2" to the barges alongside. These were then slipped, and at 3.30 p.m. R and S Companies went ashore. Powell discovered that the Turks had left this place in such a hurry that they forgot to destroy the telegraph line, and he got into communication with Basra almost at once.

We have heard what the gunboats did after leaving Bahran yesterday afternoon. They pushed on hard, and just below Ezra's Tomb came up with the retreating Turks, who cast off the *mahelas* which they had in tow, after being shelled. Besides casualties

[1] During the day the Turks lost 74 killed, 216 prisoners, and 3 field-guns.—Ed.

Digitized by Google

SKETCH TO ILLUSTRATE THE ADVANCE FROM KURNA.
31ST MAY 1915.



Stanford's Geog! Estab!t London.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

inflicted by shellfire and through drowning, 500 prisoners, 4 guns, 7 iron barges, several *mahelas*, many mines and bombs, much material, and a quantity of stores were captured. The gunboats then pursued vigorously in the moonlight, in spite of considerable danger from mines; the enemy's large gunboat "Marmaris," after being shelled, was set on fire and abandoned by the Turks, while the armed launch "Bulbul" was sunk. The "Mosul," a large passenger boat, hoisted the white flag after being struck by one shell, and, with its stores, was captured intact and in working order. The only

PRISONERS CAPTURED ON GUN HILL.

boats to get away were the Commander's motor launch, and the "Evinrude" (our stolen motor-boat), with some Germans on board, for whom a reward of a thousand rupees has been offered.

At present our Headquarters and R and S Companies are billeted in the caravanserai built round the Tomb, and the 17th Brigade Headquarters are just outside. The 22nd Punjabis are also on this side of the river (in camp), while the 103rd and 119th are camped on the opposite side. We hear that Kearsley had to go sick with a touch of the sun, after burying poor Brooke at the foot of Norfolk Hill.

Digitized by Google

June 3rd.—A half-ruined, two-storied caravanserai of yellow brick, 200 yards square, encloses the Tomb proper. A forecourt, of the ordinary local flat brick, supported by massive pillars, leads to the shrine, which is in excellent repair.

It is about 20 feet square, and its walls are decorated with white, blue, and yellow arabesques, while the floor is composed of slabs of beautifully coloured marble, with small blocks of black marble inlaid at the angles. In the centre of the room is the actual tomb, but all that can be seen is a wooden ark ($15 \times 15 \times 10$), covered in green velvet, with corner posts, surmounted by large silver knobs. The exterior of the shrine is in poor repair, except the central dome which is still beautiful. For three-fourths of its height it is built of yellow, blue, green, and red tiles, set in a pattern. The remainder—the top—of the dome is composed of perfect glazed tiles, every one slightly different in shade, from lilac, through every shade of blue, green, and deep purple. In the sun the effect is blue; in the shadows deep sea-green; and this evening, in the sunset, it shone like gold.

Stephens and I have quarters in a cage-like room, with bars, but otherwise open on three sides—looking up the Tigris and back at the dome of the Tomb. It is probably the coolest place here, but still the heat is awful, and the men are suffering from it severely now that the excitement of the last few days is absent. This evening a wind suddenly sprang up, and brought with it a heavy shower, which cooled things down considerably. Something had to be done, so Startin and I went out fishing, and got three fish.

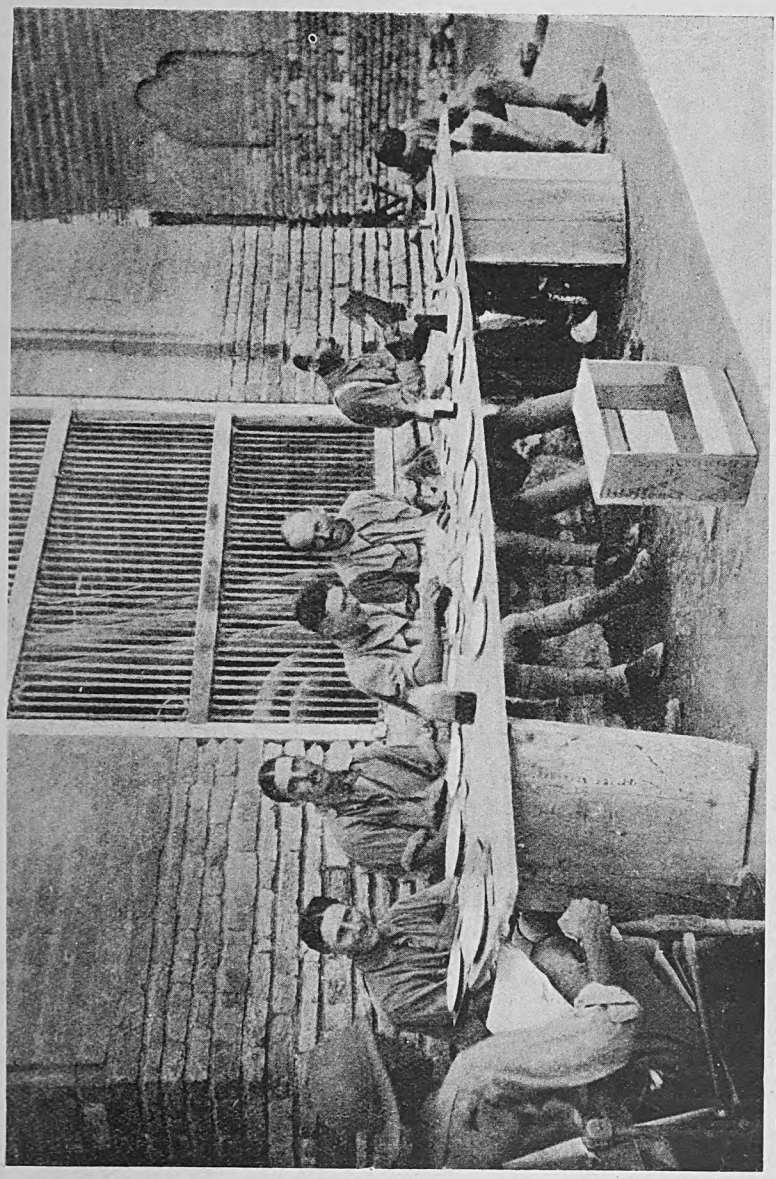
The 16th Brigade, from Bahran, passed up river this afternoon, so we have been left behind again. We are doing nothing much here, which, I think, makes us feel the heat all the more. Still, I suppose that everyone wants a rest.

June 4th.—The captured *mahelas* are being searched; one is full of mines and explosives, and on another they have found £T10,000 This morning I went up to have a look at the proceedings; there were stacks of rifles of every kind, and piles of ammunition, besides huge cooking-pots (some 5 ft. or more in diameter), sacks of coffee, grain, yakdans for mule transport, samovars, etc. The heat is really bad, and the men are going sick one after another—mostly fever and some heat-stroke.

An aeroplane has had to come down on the river bank at Abu Robah, some miles up, but is all right, and under a guard.

Went fishing this evening down stream with Morland, and got a 3 lb. fish.

Digitized by Google



Capt. Morland. Lt. Mundey. Lt. Courtis. Lt. Birch Reynardson. Lt. Davenport. Major Hyde. Capt. Foljambe.

OFFICERS' MESS, 1ST BATTALION.
Ezra's Tomb, 3rd June 1915.

Digitized by Google

June 5th.—Last night was the hottest I have ever experienced; we just lay and dripped, sleep being quite out of the question. One cannot use mosquito nets, as the stuffiness makes the heat quite unbearable, consequently, mosquitoes add to one's torments.

We hear to-day that 30 officers and nearly 2,000 men surrendered to General Townshend at Amara. The General's force consisted of the "Shaitan," "Sumana," and "Comet," with their crews—perhaps 30 in all. But now matters are safe enough, as the 16th Brigade have arrived there. Our total captures now amount to 80 officers and upwards of 2,500 men.

At 3 p.m. the "Blosse Lynch" came in, and we got orders to embark at 5 p.m.; S Company to remain behind and come up with the 22nd Punjabis, while we take up a Company of the latter, to be dropped as a guard over the stranded aeroplane.

Left Ezra's Tomb (Azair) at 7 p.m., and at 11 p.m. dropped the Company of the 22nd at the aeroplane place, and tied up alongside for the night at the Devil's Elbow.

June 6th.—A dreadful night in a crowded ship, with mosquitoes and heat.

Started again at 5 a.m., and reached Kalat Salih (Qalat Salih) at 9 a.m. The place is about the size of Kurna, but much cleaner and smarter in appearance. Thank goodness the 119th are to provide the garrison here, and not ourselves, as we had been told.

Steamed on again all day through flat country, but real land, instead of interminable marshes. Even the Mesopotamian imitation of green grass looked lovely. On the banks were to be seen cattle, sheep, and a good many rather poor-looking ponies. The inhabitants (mostly of the marsh Arab variety) crowded to the banks to watch us, while the men and boys jumped in and swam for the bread and biscuits which the soldiers threw for them. We ran aground several times, as the steering was made difficult by reason of the number of *bellums* which we are towing; and we shed *bellums* as we went.

At 6 p.m. we had our first sight of hills away to the east, and wonderfully beautiful they looked to us who had seen nothing but the dead flat for the past seven months.

We reached Amara at 8.30 p.m., and remained on board for the night.

June 7th.—This morning we had our first view of Amara from the boat Situated on the left (east) bank of the river, there is a front of about half a mile in length of very good brick houses, generally

Digitized by Google

with great wooden projecting windows, and about the centre a yellow and blue minaret, with a considerable lean on it. On the right bank are many walled date-gardens, and a few rather nice-looking houses. The river is crossed at the upper end of the town by a very rickety Turkish bridge of boats.

We took all day disembarking men and stores. Our billets are at the back of the town on a canal, flowing out of the Tigris, and itself a considerable river in appearance. We had to trans-ship, by platoons, on to the "Sumana" (stern-wheeler), go up stream, and then down this canal, until we were opposite our billets, where we were

EZRA'S TOMB.

landed. My platoon, the last to go, did not land until about 4 p.m. The billets are in two granaries, one for the men, and the other for the officers. There are large courtyards, with lean-to roofs, supported on pillars, running round all four sides, with a large unroofed area in the middle. Under the roofed portions tons of barley and millet are stored at present, so there is little room for us, and practically no air. However, there is a considerable amount of flat roof —enough for the whole battalion to sleep out on.

In the evening Morland, Horan, and I had a bathe in the canal, which has a tremendous current, and is really more like a swift

Digitized by Google

river than a canal. We landed on an island, where there is a green garden, with white clover in the grass, willow trees, and hollyhocks. The bazaars are very dirty, but amusing, and full of local Arabs intent on business.

Colonel Gamble took over command of our Brigade from Colonel Climo.

June 8th.—After 5 a.m. the sun gets too hot to allow one to sleep on the roof, so Wynter and I went for a walk round the bazaars. This is really the best time to see the people, as most of the buying and selling goes on early in the morning. There are a tremendous number of the kind of Arabs who go by the name of Madan or Madani; they appear to be a class rather than a tribe, as there are Madan among the Beni-Lam, Muntafik, Albu Mahomet, etc. They are cheerful, noisy folk, dressed in rags, which are of the scantiest. The women wear kilts down to their knees, black shawls, generally of coarse net or gauze, and a black kerchief round the head and throat, but no veil.

June 9th–10th.—Fever.

June 11th.—The heat here in the middle of the day is terrific—to-day 119° in the shade. But I do not think that it is as damp as it was lower down the river. If it is true that we are to remain here until September it is a poor look-out.

The story that General Townshend with Sir Percy Cox (Political) and Captain Nunn (senior Naval Officer) and 30 men took this place is perfectly true. The whole thing seems to have been done by sheer bluff, General Townshend telling the Turks that he had more gunboats and all his force just round the bend of the river. It appears that the Turks were beginning to smell a rat, and that the 16th Brigade turned up only just in time.

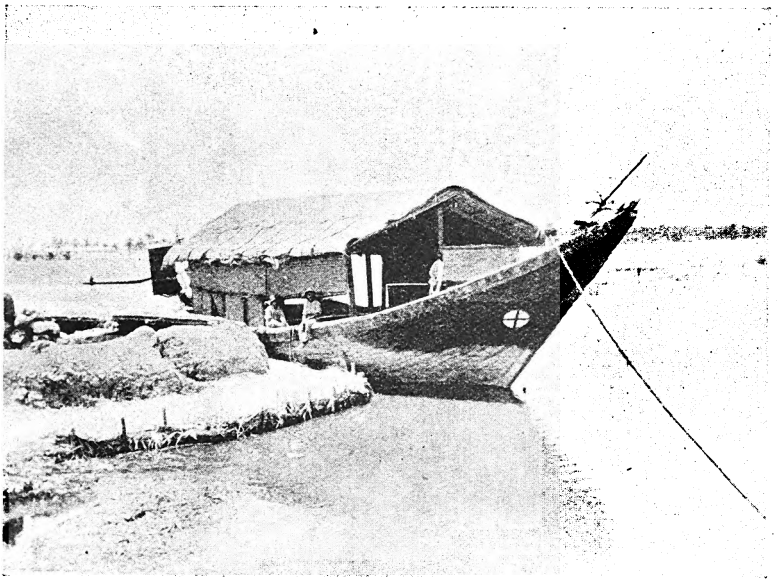
In the evening Wynter and I called on the Chaldean Padré. We found him at home, with an Armenian friend, and they both seemed pleased to see us, talked away in French, and plied us with cigarettes, and a fearful drink which was, I believe, sherbet. The Padré is a small man, with a very white face and jet-black beard and eyes, and was dressed in a long cassock and a kind of shiny top-hat. He showed us over the church, which is a dark, odorous little hole, full of oleographs of saints, and decked with gaudy tinsel.

June 12th.—Wynter and I went calling again this evening. This time on the French Sisters. One of them had quite lately come out from Paris, and though I understood little that she said, it was refreshing to listen to her. She was white, too. Of the other two

Digitized by Google

Sisters, one was a dear old Baghdadi, and the other a very old and frail-looking Frenchwoman, who had been out here for 36 years! What wonderful people! I shall go and see them again, as they can tell one so much about this country. They say that they have not seen a European for 6 years, as the few Germans here never come to see them.

June 13th.—We are doing an hour's parade in the morning and another in the evening; no other work. Stephens is ill with fever and liver. Rumour says that we are going on to Baghdad. At present there are supposed to be only 2 Turkish and 2 Arab



"THE ARK."
Hospital ship used in the advance from Kurna.

battalions, with 12 guns, in front of us; but there may be other forces on the Euphrates.

Some of General Gorringe's Advanced Guard arrived to-day. It is a good deal owing to his march from Ahwaz, which threatened the retreat of the Turks (by their left flank), that the enemy evacuated his positions near Kurna in such a hurry. The Turkish troops opposed to General Gorringe, under Daghastani, have eluded capture by dispersing into the marshes, though the advanced parties walked into Amara, not knowing that we were here, and were captured.

Digitized by Google

FROM LIEUT. J. J. POWELL'S DIARY.

June 14th.—One of the aeroplanes made a reconnaissance to Kut, and found about 3,000 men entrenched there. The 7th Hariana Lancers arrived, being the first part of the column from Ahwaz. General Townshend has gone sick with fever. News from Basra that Carter has been invalided to India. Both Henley and Kearsley are in Basra, doing well. Several of the Staff here have already gone sick.

June 15th.—The 7th Lancers came over to our side of the Jahalah Canal this morning. They are only 250 strong, with three of their own British officers, the others having gone to France at the beginning of the war. The aeroplanes flew down to Basra, as they are wanted for reconnaissance work at Nasiriyeh. They wished to do it from here, but were not allowed to. General Townshend has gone on three weeks' leave to Basra, and probably to India.

June 16th.—Horan has been admitted to hospital with liver and fever. Report says that General Melliss's Brigade is concentrating at Kurna, for a movement against the Marsh Arabs. Four rifles were stolen from the 103rd last night.

June 17th.—The 67th Punjabis have gone down to Basra to join their brigade. The "Salimi" arrived with officers who have been sent out from home for attachment. The Dorsets get 9; Norfolk 3; and we have 3. Ours are Meldon (3rd Durham L.I.), who has been in France; Webber (2nd D.C.L.I.), who has been out at Tsing-Tao as well as in France; and Hinde (3rd Somerset L.I.). Carter and Henley have both been sent to India; the latter has had fever lately, which is worse than his wound. The "Shaitan" and the "Comet" went up to Ali-al-Gharbi (Imam Ali Gharbi).

June 18th.—The West Kents, 90th Punjabis, and 82nd Battery, R.F.A., arrived in the morning, having marched up from Ahwaz. General Gorringe sent them on, under Colonel Dunlop, from Khafajiyeh. All our heavy kits and ponies have come up from Kurna.

June 19th.—The West Kents went down to Basra, and the 90th Punjabis leave to-morrow. Nearly half the 103rd are sick with fever.

June 20th.—Morland has gone as G.S.O. 3 to the 6th Division, in place of Peel, who has taken over G.S.O. 2 from Saunders (sick).

June 21st.—A reconnaissance is to go up to-morrow to Ali-al-Gharbi, to dismantle the telegraph office, and bring in any Turks found there. The party goes up in "T. 2," escorted by H.M.S "Comet."

Digitized by Google

June 22nd.—Heard that all the Marsh Arabs near Kurna have come in, paid their fines, and handed in their rifles, so operations against them have ceased. General Gorringe is reported to have made a successful raid on the tribe who treacherously murdered Anderson, 33rd L.C., at Braikeh. Davenport and Kearsley arrived back from Basra. They tell us that the gun in the marshes at Rumlah has been found.

June 23rd —The D.D.M.S. Force, who arrived here yesterday, inspected the Regiment this morning, and said that we are the fittest battalion in the country. The 1/4th Hants are, we hear, full of sickness, and have had to send a great many men back to India. All subalterns are going through a machine-gun course under Courtis, but it is too hot to do the thing very thoroughly. Meldon took over command of R Company.

June 24th.—The Turks at Nasiriyeh are reported to be falling back to Kut, where they are entrenching hard. They have already blocked the river, by anchoring barges full of bricks in the fairway. The reconnaissance to Ali-al-Gharbi returned, having failed to get there on account of the wind.

June 25th.—About 50 Turkish officials who were taken here are being sent down to Basra, as they will not keep their parole. Some of them have already escaped. News of trouble at Nejef between the Turks and the Mullahs, because the latter will not join the army. The Turks have desecrated some of the shrines and mosques. Nothing fresh from Nasiriyeh, except that Ajaimi is supposed to have removed himself into the desert.

June 26th.—Orders issued to-day for the 22nd Punjabis, 2 guns 82 Battery R.F.A., half company Sappers and Miners, and 1 troop 7th Lancers, to go up the river to Kumait, where they are to encamp, with a view to the forward move to Kut-el-Amara, as soon as the Turks from Shaiba, Nasiriyeh, and elsewhere have collected there.

June 27th.—Rode out in the morning with Duke, of the Signal Company, to look at the telegraph line between this place and the Bithaira Canal, as this will have to be put into a good state of repair for the detachment at Kumait. We found about two miles of it completely wrecked, and the poles removed, no doubt used as firewood. A good stretch of the desert is still under water, but it is drying up fast. We had to take a cavalry escort with us, as the attitude of the local tribes is still uncertain. General Delamain, who is commanding here now, went up with Colonel B. Johnson (22nd

Digitized by Google

Punjabis) to reconnoitre the place. "P. 5," which took them up, stuck on a sandbank, so they returned in the "Lewis Pelly," now used as the Political Officer's launch.

FROM LIEUT. BIRCH-REYNARDSON'S DIARY.

June 28th.—Wynter and I, by way of getting through the day, have started learning the language, with the assistance of a Jew boy who can speak French and Arabic.

The heat is telling on everyone. I went across to the hospital on the other bank to see little Wells of my Company, who is dangerously ill with dysentery. I have never seen anything so dreadful; he looked like a very old man.

He died about 10 minutes after I had left him, and we paraded for the funeral at 5.30 p.m. During the march to the cemetery, three men dropped with heat-stroke—one of them (Joynes) very bad, I am afraid. To-day has been intensely hot, and the men are on the brink of going under; the slightest extra exertion knocks them out. The Colonel, Stephens, Horan, Kearsley, Ivey, and 120 men have been recommended for sick leave to India, but nothing definite has been settled about their going. A ride from 6 p.m. to 7.30 breaks the monotony of the day.

June 29th—Simpson, Price, and 50 men, also Courtis with the machine-gun section, go up to-morrow to Ali-al-Gharbi on a reconnaissance. We know that there are some Turks there. They go in "T. 2," escorted by the "Shaitan."

July 1st.—The 119th arrived here this morning from Kalat Salih, having been relieved by the 20th Punjabis.

July 2nd.—The reconnaissance found Ali-al-Gharbi unoccupied, except for half a dozen officials, who were brought down. They had been previously warned by Leachman (Political) to clear out, but they evidently prefer being prisoners. We are apparently going on to Kut, as they say that the heavy batteries and howitzers are coming up. If it were not for the heat it would be all right. Hinde and Webber are down with dysentery. Colonel Lethbridge and Stephens have gone to India; Kearsley and Ivey are not going, as they are much better.

July 5th.—General Delamain inspected us at 7.30 a.m. Simpson has gone sick, and as Wynter is now Transport Officer, I am to take command of S Company. Horan has gone to India on two months' sick leave.

Digitized by Google

July 6th.—The Flying Column (which includes our Brigade) paraded on the other side of Jahalah Canal at 7 a.m. There was some difficulty with the wheeled transport at the bridge; otherwise all went well.

July 7th.—It seems that operations are a bit sticky at Nasiriyeh, but it is difficult to get any authentic news. The Haquiqua (Hokeika) Channel has been forced after six days' fighting and 80 casualties, but we have taken 80 Turks and two guns. Gilpin (R.F.A.) has died of wounds; he was such a good fellow, and had done very well out here. To-day we hear that we have occupied Suk-es-Sheyukh (Market of the Sheikhs), but are still held off from Nasiriyeh by a strong position and plenty of Turks.

July 9th.—Brigade Parade. We did not get back until after 8 a.m., and the heat was very bad.

July 11th.—The Turks are said to be reinforcing Nasiriyeh from Kut, by way of the Shatt-el-Hai. We are to move up river to make a diversion shortly. The Turks are in position at Fillaifillah, between this place and Ali-al-Gharbi, and to-day 200 Dorsets and two 4.7-inch guns have gone up to deal with them.

July 12th.—We now hear that the Turks at Fillaifillah, instead of numbering only 200 with two guns, are in force, and in a very strong position in a loop of the river. We are all to go up and have a dig at them, but if the map of the position is correct, it may be a difficult job to clear them out. I have been bothered with fever and liver for several days now.

July 15th.—Ordered to be ready to embark at 4.30 p.m.: all kits, stores, etc., put on board, but departure postponed until 4 a.m. to-morrow. Davenport and Q Company slept on board.

July 16th.—At 3 a.m. orders received to stand fast, and shortly afterwards we were told that we were not going. The Norfolks embarked, and, with the guns, went off at 9 a.m. to Nasiriyeh, where apparently more troops are wanted.

July 18th.—Ivey has been ordered to go to India; he would not go when first recommended, as he seemed to be getting better. Davenport is also sick with jaundice, and one way and another we are getting very short-handed. We hear that Sir J. Nixon has ordered that no more are to be sent to India than absolutely necessary, consequently this place is full of crocks.

July 19th.—Davenport is on the sick list, so I have taken over Q Company. I am fit again. Very hot and no wind.

Digitized by Google

July 24th.—News about Nasiriyeh at last. A wire to say that General Gorringe had taken the Turks' advanced positions on both banks of the Euphrates, capturing one gun, 2 machine-guns, and 300 prisoners. Later came the news that the job had been done, all the Turkish guns captured, and Nasiriyeh occupied.

July 27th.—General Gamble (our Brigadier) has gone on two months' sick leave, and St. John (Brigade-Major) has gone to join his regiment. Consequently, the 16th Brigade will probably move up instead of our Brigade, which is now under the temporary command of Colonel Browne (103rd), until the arrival of General Hoghton, who has been appointed to the command. Mundey has been promoted Captain. Davenport, Courtis, and Powell were also in the same Gazette, as Captains. The 16th Brigade and guns embarked for up river.

July 31st.—I had the two machine-guns out, and tested them. One absolutely struck work, and the other continually failed. It appears that they were issued in 1902 and 1903, and are worn out.

OFFICERS PRESENT WITH BATTALION ON THIS DATE.

Major A. C. HYDE, in temporary command.
Captain C. E. FORREST, D.S.O.
Captain R. V. SIMPSON.
Captain Hon. J. C. W. S. FOLJAMBE, Adjutant.
Captain F. M. DAVENPORT.
Captain J. H. COURTIS.
Captain S. C. B. MUNDEY.
Lieut. F. C. W. WYNTER.
Lieut. H. T. BIRCH-REYNARDSON
Lieut. J. S. KEARSLEY.
2nd Lieut. G. NAYLOR.
2nd Lieut. D. MURPHY.
2nd Lieut. F. BROWN.
Captain and Quartermaster T. E. IVEY.

Attached.

Captain J. STARTIN, R.A.M.C.
Captain W. W. MELDON, 3rd Durham Light Infantry
Lieut. H. B. L. HINDE, 3rd Somerset Light Infantry.
Lieut. S. L. WEBBER, 2nd D.C.L.I.
2nd Lieut. A. PRICE, 2nd R. Sussex Regiment.
2nd Lieut. A J. HAZELL, 2nd West Riding Regiment.

Digitized by Google

ON SICK LEAVE IN INDIA.

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. LETHBRIDGE, D.S.O.
Major L. J. CARTER.
Captain C. F. HENLEY (wounded).
Captain R. STEPHENS.
Lieut. K. HORAN.

EXTRA-REGIMENTALLY EMPLOYED IM MESOPOTAMIA.

Captain F. H. STAPLETON, D.A.Q.M.G., 6th Division.
Captain W. E. T. MORLAND, G.S.O. 3, 6th Division.
Captain G. E. WHITTALL, Military Landing Officer, Basra.
Captain J. J. POWELL, Brigade Signalling Officer.
2nd Lieut. R. C. LOVEROCK, Asst. Military Landing Officer, Basra.

AT DEPÔT, INDIA.

Lieut. A. E. MASON.

CASUALTIES, TO 31ST JULY 1915.

Captain R. R. M. BROOKE, *killed*, 31st May 1915.
Captain C. F HENLEY, *wounded*, 31st May 1915.

MENTIONED IN DISPATCHES, TO 31ST JULY, 1915.

No. 9166 Lance-Corporal PARKES.

Operations, Amara, 31st May to 4th June 1915.

Captain R. R. M. BROOKE, *killed;* Lieut. J. H. COURTIS; Captain C. F. HENLEY; Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. LETHBRIDGE, D.S.O.; Captain W. E. T. MORLAND; Lieut. J. J. POWELL; 5766 Sergeant H. ARLETT; 5787 C.S.M. T. J. SHILCOCK; 8041 Sergeant A. H. COWLEY; 6907 Corporal A. E. PURSEGLOVE; 7478 Sergeant E. W. STEVENS.

Captain F. H. STAPLETON (Staff); Captain G. E. WHITTALL (Staff).

Digitized by Google

HONOURS AND REWARDS.

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

(From the *London Gazette*, June 1915.)

No. 9166 Lance-Corporal R. PARKES.[1]

For conspicuous gallantry near Ahwaz (Turkey in Asia), on March 3, when he displayed great devotion to duty in attending on the wounded in the open, under heavy shell and rifle fire, and for protecting them with his own rifle-fire from the assaults of the enemy.

---

[1] Lance-Corporal Parkes was at the time in charge of hospital orderlies, No. 1 Field Ambulance.

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS WHO SERVED WITH THE 1ST BATTALION IN MESOPOTAMIA, NOVEMBER 1914 TO 31ST JULY 1915.

Lieut.-Colonel E. A. E. LETHBRIDGE, D.S.O., in command of the Battalion; to India, on sick leave, 1st July 1915.

Major A. C. HYDE, 2nd in command; in command during the absence of Lieut.-Colonel Lethbridge.

Major L. J. CARTER, in command of Q Company; invalided to India, 30th May 1915.

Captain F. H. STAPLETON, *p.s.c.*, in command of R Company; D.A.Q.M.G., 6th Division, 24th April 1915.

Captain C. E. FORREST, D.S.O., in command of S Company.

Captain C. F. HENLEY, in command of P Company; *wounded* at Tower Hill, 31st May 1915.

Captain R. R. M. BROOKE, P Company; *killed* at Norfolk Hill, 31st May 1915, when in command of R Company. Subsequently mentioned in Dispatches.

Captain R. V. SIMPSON, S Company.

Captain W. E. T. MORLAND, Q Company; G.S.O. 3rd Grade, 6th Division, 16th June 1915.

Captain R. STEPHENS, R Company, invalided to India on account of ill-health, 1st July 1915.

Captain Hon. J. C. W. S. FOLJAMBE, Adjutant of the Battalion.

Lieut. G. E. WHITTALL, R Company; promoted Captain, 8th January 1915; Military Landing Officer, Basra, 9th February 1915.

Lieut. J. J. POWELL, S Company; appointed Brigade Signalling Officer, 31st May 1915; promoted Captain, 10th June 1915.

Lieut. F. M. DAVENPORT, Q Company; promoted Captain, 10th June 1915.

Lieut. J. H. COURTIS, Q Company; promoted Captain, 10th June 1915; Battalion Machine-Gun Officer.

Lieut. S. C. B. MUNDEY, R Company; remained in India, in command of Regimental Depôt, from 17th November 1914 to 17th May 1915, and then joined the Battalion in Mesopotamia; promoted Captain, 10th June 1915

Digitized by Google

Lieut. F. C. W. WYNTER, S Company; Censor at Basra from 7th December 1914 to 12th May 1915, when he rejoined the Battalion.

Lieut. H. T. BIRCH-REYNARDSON, R Company.

Lieut. K. HORAN, P Company; invalided to India on account of ill-health, 13th June 1915.

Lieut. J. S. KEARSLEY, R Company.

2nd Lieut. A. E. MASON, promoted from Regimental Sergeant-Major 7th November 1914; P Company; in Mesopotamia until 1st March 1915, when proceeded to India, to command the Regimental Depôt; promoted Lieutenant, 10th June 1915.

2nd Lieut. R. C. LOVEROCK, promoted, from Colour-Sergeant Durham Light Infantry, 2nd Lieutenant, 7th November 1914; Q Company; appointed Assistant Military Landing Officer, Basra, 20th July 1915.

2nd Lieut. G. NAYLOR, promoted, from Sergeant Somerset Light Infantry, 2nd Lieutenant, 7th November 1914; S Company.

2nd Lieut. D. MURPHY, promoted, from Lance-Corporal Yorkshire Regiment, 2nd Lieutenant, 7th November 1914; P Company.

2nd Lieut. F. BROWN, promoted 2nd Lieutenant from Lance-Corporal 14th Hussars, 7th November 1914; S Company.

Captain and Quartermaster T IVEY, Quartermaster of the Battalion.

Attached.

Captain J. STARTIN (R.A.M.C.), accompanied the Battalion to Mesopotamia, as Medical Officer.

Captain W. W. MELDON (3rd Durham Light Infantry), R Company from 17th June 1915

Lieut. H. B. L. HINDE (3rd Somerset Light Infantry), Q Company from 17th June 1915.

Lieut. S. L. WEBBER (2nd D.C.L.I.), P Company from 17th June 1915.

2nd Lieut. A. PRICE (2nd Royal Sussex Regiment), P Company from 16th December 1914.

2nd Lieut. A. J. HAZELL (2nd West Riding Regiment), Q Company from 16th December 1914.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS, 2ND BATTALION, 1914.

AT ALDERSHOT, BEFORE THE WAR.

[*Standing*:—Lt. and Adjt. R. B. Crosse, Lt. J. A. Southey, 2nd Lt. A. D. Tylden-Pattenson, Lt. C. S. Baines, Lt. R. M. Owen, Capt. and Qr.-Mr. A. S. Field, Lt. H. Mockler-Ferryman, 2nd Lt. P. F. Newton King, Lt. W. E. C. Terry, Lt. R. G. Worthington.
Seated:—Capt. G. A. Sullivan, Capt. H. L. Wood, Major H. L. Ruck-Keene, Lt.-Colonel H. R. Davies, Major A. J. F. Eden, Capt. A. H. Harden, Capt. H. M. Dillon.
On the ground:—Lt. F. Pepys, 2nd Lt. J. S. C. Marshall, Capt. R. C. Evelegh, 2nd Lt. P. C. Girardot.

Digitized by Google

THE 2ND BATTALION
OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

IN

FRANCE AND FLANDERS

1914–1915 (to 31st July)

[With the 5th Infantry Brigade, 2nd Division]

Lieut.-Col. H. R. Davies
Commanding 2nd Battalion.

Digitized by Google

THE 2ND BATTALION IN FRANCE AND BELGIUM, 1914–1915.

MOBILIZATION.

ON the 1st August 1914 the 2nd Battalion of the Regiment was quartered at Albuhera Barracks, Aldershot, and formed part of the 5th Infantry Brigade, 2nd Division, Ist Army Corps.

REGIMENTAL DIARY.

August 4th.—Great Britain declared war on Germany. Order for Mobilization received at 6 p.m.

August 5th.—FIRST DAY OF MOBILIZATION. The Colours were taken to the Depot (Cowley Barracks) by 2nd Lieut. Pepys, with 2nd Lieuts Barrington-Kennett and Chippindale.

Strength of the Battalion, 22 officers, 486 men, 10 horses.
Required to complete, 9 officers, 590 men, 48 horses.
Reservists due to join, 590 men.
To be left behind, 116 men.

August 6th.—SECOND DAY OF MOBILIZATION.

Strength of the Battalion, 25 officers, 620 men, 42 horses.
Required to complete, 6 officers, 456 men, 16 horses.
Reservists joined, 134 men.
Reservists due to join, 456 men.
To be left behind, 111 men.

August 7th.—THIRD DAY OF MOBILIZATION.

Strength of the Battalion, 29 officers, 1,050 men, 42 horses.
Required to complete, 2 officers, 26 men, 16 horses.
Reservists joined, 549 men.
Reservists due to join, 26 men.
1st Reinforcement to be left behind, 99 men
Others to be left behind, 113 men.

August 8th.—FOURTH DAY OF MOBILIZATION.

Strength of the Battalion, 27 officers, 1,198 men, 58 horses
Required to complete, 4 officers.
Reservists joined, 599 men.
1st Reinforcement to be left behind, 99 men
Others to be left behind, 113 men.

Digitized by Google

August 10th.—The Battalion went for a route march, with transport complete.

August 11th.—Companies at work in the field, musketry, etc.

August 12th.—Orders received for the Battalion (as part of the 5th Infantry Brigade, 2nd Division) to entrain to-morrow for port of embarkation, and proceed with the Expeditionary Force to France.

His Majesty the King, accompanied by Her Majesty the Queen, inspected the Regiment informally on parade to say good-bye.

The following are the Officers taking the Field:—

Lieut.-Colonel H. R. DAVIES.
Major A. J. F. EDEN, C Company.
Captain E. F. VILLIERS, D.S.O., 1st R. Sussex Regiment, attached, A Company.
Captain H. L. WOOD, B Company.
Captain G. A. SULLIVAN, Asst. Provost Marshal, 2nd Division.
Captain A. H. HARDEN, D Company.
Captain H. M. DILLON, A Company.
Captain R. C. EVELEGH, C Company.
Captain G. BLEWITT (from Staff), D Company.
Captain P. GODSAL (from 3rd Battalion), B Company.
Lieut. R. B. CROSSE, Adjutant.
Lieut. W. E. C. TERRY, Staff Captain 5th Infantry Brigade.
Lieut. W. G. TOLSON (from 1st Battalion), D Company.
Lieut. R. G. WORTHINGTON, Scout Officer.
Lieut. J. A. SOUTHEY, Machine-Gun Officer.
Lieut. C. S. BAINES, B Company.
Lieut. R. J. BRETT, Transport Officer.
Lieut. R. M. OWEN, A Company.
Lieut. H. MOCKLER-FERRYMAN, C Company.
Lieut. G. M. R. TURBUTT (from 3rd Battalion), in charge of 1st Reinforcement.
Lieut. A. V. SPENCER (from 3rd Battalion), D Company.
2nd Lieut F. PEPYS, A Company.
2nd Lieut. J. S. C. MARSHALL, B Company.
2nd Lieut. A. D. TYLDEN-PATTENSON, C Company.
2nd Lieut. P. F. NEWTON-KING, D Company.
2nd Lieut. P. C. GIRARDOT, C Company.
2nd Lieut. G. T. BUTTON (from Supplementary List), B Company
2nd Lieut. A. H. BARRINGTON-KENNETT (from Supplementary List), C Company.
Captain A. S. FIELD, Quartermaster.
Captain L. V. THURSTON, R.A.M.C, Medical Officer

Digitized by Google

SUMMARY OF THE SITUATION.

THE ADVANCE TO AND WITHDRAWAL FROM MONS.

The British Expeditionary Force, consisting of the Ist Army Corps (1st and 2nd Divisions) and the IInd Army Corps (3rd and 5th Divisions), arrived in France on the twelfth day after Germany had declared war on France. The Germans were overrunning Belgium in great force, with a view to pushing straight on to Paris, and the French had advanced into Belgium to meet them. The task allotted to the British Expeditionary Force was that of prolonging the French line to the north-west, in order to prevent the enemy from making a wide enveloping movement on the Allies' left flank.

On the 22nd August the British reached Mons, the Germans by that time having descended as far south as Charleroi. The British Ist Army Corps (Haig) took up a position along the Mons-Beaumont road, and the IInd Army Corps (Smith-Dorrien) in front of Mons, along the Mons-Condé canal, with cavalry between the two corps and about Binche. The two portions of the position, although the only feasible line of defence, formed an undesirable salient, which it was intended to hold solely for the purpose of delaying the German advance as long as possible. A straight line further back had been selected, and to this the troops were to withdraw when forced back.

At daybreak on the 23rd August the Germans commenced shelling Mons, and the brunt of the fighting which followed fell on the 3rd Division (IInd Army Corps) holding the line of the canal. The Ist Army Corps, thrown back on the right, took no active part in

Digitized by Google

the battle of Mons; but the 5th Brigade (Haking), at the urgent request of the IInd Army Corps Commander, was moved up from Genly to Frameries and Pâturages, in support of the much-harassed 3rd Division (Hubert Hamilton), and at dawn of the 24th August the remainder of the 2nd Division (Monro) endeavoured to relieve the pressure by making a powerful demonstration against Binche, now in the enemy's hands, since the British cavalry had been withdrawn and dispatched westward to protect the left flank. Under cover of this demonstration the IInd Army Corps was enabled to withdraw to the line Quarouble-Dour-Frameries, though suffering heavily in doing so at the hands of the Germans, who by this time had captured Mons.

On the afternoon of the 23rd August the British Commander-in-Chief had been informed that three German Army Corps were advancing against his front, and that a fourth had commenced a turning movement against his left flank, from the direction of Tournai. He was also informed that the French troops on his right were retiring. Consequently, he decided to withdraw forthwith to the previously-selected line extending from Maubeuge on the right to Jenlain (south-east of Valenciennes) on the left. During the day of the 24th August the IInd Army Corps halted on the Dour-Frameries line and threw up such entrenchments as time permitted, while the Ist Army Corps gradually withdrew to the eastern portion of the new line, i.e., from the fortress of Maubeuge on the right to Bavai on the left. Of this Corps the 5th Brigade (Haking) remained behind, its orders being to cover the withdrawal of the 3rd Division, with which object it held positions first at La Bouverie and then at Sars-la-Bruyères, rejoining the 2nd Division at Bavai. On the morning of the 24th the 19th Infantry

Digitized by Google

Brigade,[1] which had been brought up on the previous day from lines of communication to Valenciennes, was pushed up towards Quarouble (to the north-east), to support the left of the IInd Army Corps, while the cavalry, further to the north-west, guarded the British left front and flank from the turning movement which was threatening.

The pressure on the IInd Army Corps throughout the 24th was very severe, two German Army Corps attacking its front, while a third threatened its flank. Still, by putting up a magnificent fight, in which the losses on both sides were heavy, General Smith-Dorrien succeeded in extricating his Corps, and falling back at nightfall to the line west of Bavai. That night, therefore, the general disposition of the British Expeditionary Force was as follows: The Ist Army Corps from Maubeuge to Bavai; the IInd Army Corps from Bavai to Jenlain; the 19th Infantry Brigade between Jenlain and Bry; and the cavalry on the left flank. But Sir John French had no intention of attempting to hold this position now that he knew that the French on his right were still retiring and could give him no support. He realized, moreover, that the enemy's object was to drive the whole British force towards Maubeuge and surround it. The troops were exhausted, the enemy vastly superior in numbers, and the situation dangerous. Sir John French ordered an immediate retirement to a fresh position about Le Cateau, and before daylight of the 25th August the whole British Army was in motion.

The part that the Regiment took in the above operations is described in detail in the following extracts from the private diaries of Lieut.-Colonel H. R. Davies, Major A. J. F. Eden, and others.

[1] Composed of four battalions which had been detailed for L. of C. duty, and commanded by Brigadier-General Drummond.

Digitized by Google

FROM LIEUT.-COLONEL DAVIES'S DIARY.

August 13th, 1914.—(Aldershot to Southampton.) Left Aldershot by train at 12.30 p.m., with A and B Companies and most of headquarters. The remainder of the Regiment followed 1½ hours later. The men had tea in the sheds before embarking, as this was more comfortable for them than having it on board. We embarked on the "Lake Michigan," and left at about 8 p.m. Very crowded indeed. Just lying-down room for officers, who were all together on a small bridge deck, but many of the men only had sitting room. Luckily the weather was fine and calm, or we should have had a bad time, as nearly all the men were on the upper deck, without shelter, and so crowded that it is best not to think of what would have happened if any of them had been seasick. However, as it was, even the worst sailor had no cause to feel ill.

The horses were packed very tight—so tight that they could hardly hurt themselves—in a very stuffy deck, with all their saddlery and harness on The ship was a large one, an emigrant and cattle boat, belonging to the Canadian Pacific Railway Company, and she carried, besides ourselves, the Highland Light Infantry, half the Worcestershire, some of the Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders, and some R.E. and A.S.C., including the chief baker of the Expeditionary Force. I slept on deck clothed in a greatcoat and Burberry, and had a fairly good night.

August 14th.—(Southampton to Boulogne.) Towards morning it got a little cold, and by 5 a.m. most of us were awake. The men had breakfast at 5.30. They were all awake, and as there was plenty of hot water to be had, it was better for them to have their breakfast tea at once. Except for tea twice in the day, the rest of their rations consisted of biscuit and bully beef, brought with them (on the man) from Aldershot. Officers were able to get a wash and shave in the cabins below.

Passed Eastbourne at 9.30 a.m. We were going very slowly, as they did not want us at Boulogne before a certain hour, as other troops were disembarking there. We arrived at Boulogne about 2.30 p.m. We were the first regiment of our ship to disembark, and we marched away to our rest camp, two miles off, near the big Column (Colonne de la Grande Armée), put up as a memorial to the Great Army intended for the invasion of England in 1804, but which eventually marched against Austria.

A very hot march to our camp, amidst a good deal of cheering

Digitized by Google

from the inhabitants, both at the landing place and in the streets. We found that the tents had been already pitched by L. of C. troops, and we were fortunate enough to be in a grass field. Some of the other camps were in stubble, which is nothing like as comfortable. It took a long time to disembark all the wagons, and our transport did not arrive until 11 p.m. By this time the men, tired by the uncomfortable voyage, had been long asleep, so we did not wake them to have tea.

In the evening Sir John French came round the camp. We did not know that he had arrived in France. In fact, we were in complete ignorance of the movements of anyone but ourselves.

August 15th.—(Boulogne.) Had "Rouse" at 7 a.m., so as to give the men a good sleep. We were able to get fresh rations to-day, and I was also able to arrange with a café for two beer issues on payment. Had a parade in the morning, and read out the King's Message, otherwise nothing except the usual Company inspections of rifles, ammunition, iron rations, boots, socks, and feet. The men were thus able to have a good rest. A good many of the inhabitants came up to look at our camp, but were prevented from coming inside by French sentries.

August 16th.—(Boulogne to Wassigny.) Left our camp at 8 a.m., and marched to the station. The French authorities allowed us 4 hours for entrainment, but as it took us only 1½ hours, we had to wait for 2½ hours, and did not get off until 1 p.m.

Our journey was a sort of triumphal progress. At every station, bridge, and level crossing there were cheering crowds, and wherever we stopped the whole population appeared to be there, offering us bouquets, chocolate, bread, fruit, sweets, scent, wine, beer, cigarettes, newspapers, and every sort of thing. I was presented with several bouquets at different stations, with a short speech from someone—usually in English. At Arras there was an enormous crowd. Extraordinary enthusiasm everywhere; shouting, cheering, and hand-shaking. Sentries all along the line waved their caps, some of them doing the bayonet exercise and sticking imaginary Germans.

Such scenes in France between Englishmen and Frenchmen can certainly never have been witnessed before. The whole thing was most exciting and amusing. Our men enjoyed it immensely, and entered into the enthusiasm of the French most thoroughly. Nearly every man was wearing a tricolour ribbon in his jacket, or was waving a tricolour flag.

Digitized by Google

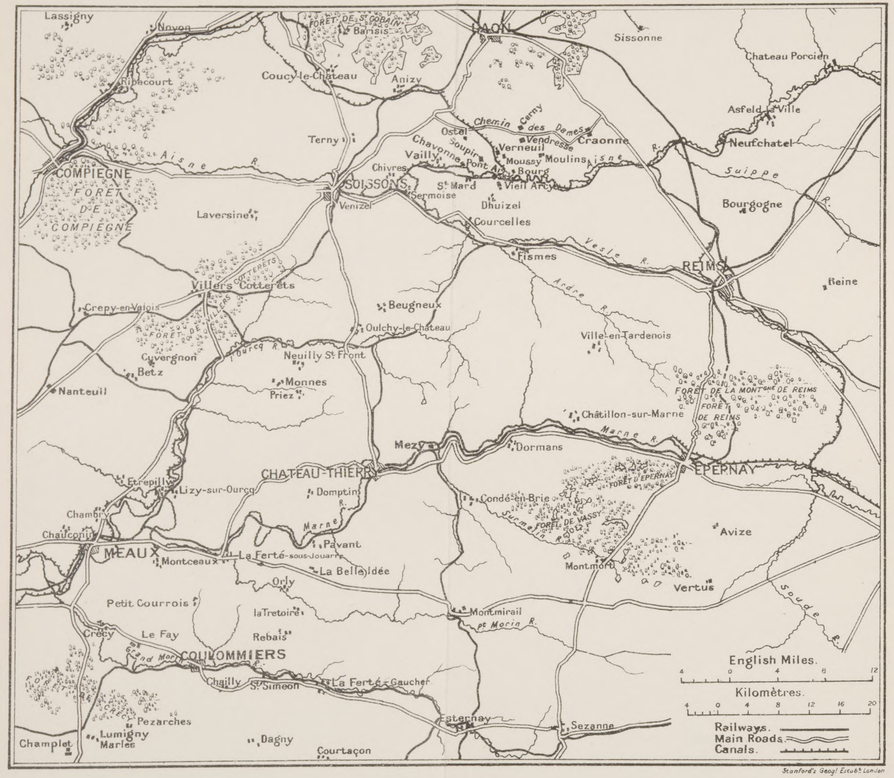
THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

R L

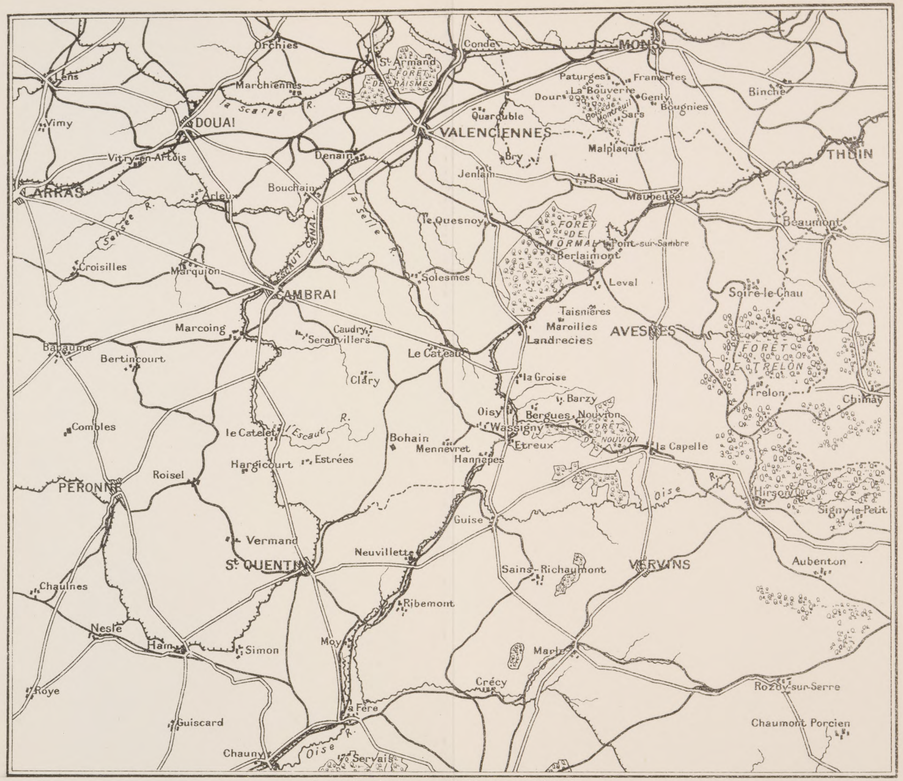
Digitized by Google

MAP 3a



Stanford's Geogl Estabt London

MAP 3.



for continuation South and Reference see Map 3c

Digitized by Google

We had a long journey (viâ Amiens, Albert, Arras, Douai, and Cambrai), and did not reach our destination—a little station named Wassigny—until midnight, after which some time was occupied in unloading the horses and wagons. We were then shown a grass field in which we were to bivouac, and as it was already 2 a.m. we lay down as we were in our greatcoats. I got about 2 hours' sleep, for the cold woke me up at 4 a.m. The grass was very wet with dew, but it did not rain.

August 17th.—Had breakfast at 6, and we were glad of the hot tea, as we had not been able to cook since breakfast the day before. We got on the move soon after 7, and marched 3½ miles to Mennevret, a good-sized village, where we were billeted chiefly in barns, which, on the whole, are better than houses in summer, as the men can be kept together. There was plenty of hay and straw in the barns, and this made comfortable lying, but it was necessary to be very careful not to strike matches or smoke.

Crosse and I were in a little village inn, the large outer room of which was just big enough for us to use as an officers' mess. Besides our rations, we were able to get plenty to eat, as we could buy eggs, vegetables, milk, butter, wine, and beer; and I arranged for a beer issue on payment, twice a day, to the men.

The remainder of the 5th Infantry Brigade were billeted in the neighbouring villages.

We have been particularly struck by the fact that here in France one sees no young men in the towns and villages. We are told that the mobilization of the French troops and their transport by train have worked very well.

August 18th.—(Mennevret.) Went for a ten-mile route march in the morning, through Tupigny and back by Verly. The weather was hot, and the country hilly, so it was rather a test for unfit men. The reservists are certainly marching better than they were doing at Aldershot, but 6 fell out unconscious, owing to the heat and the unaccustomed pack. They all came on again eventually, and they were in not long after the Regiment. On the march we were presented with bouquets at the villages through which we passed. The country round is very well cultivated, with wheat, oats, roots, clover, potatoes, etc., and there are also some pasture fields, fenced with wire. The innkeeper at our mess has become very friendly, and presented me with a laurel wreath, at the same time making a little speech, in which he said that he paid homage to King George and saluted the British Army.

Digitized by Google

August 19*th*.—(Mennevret.) All the companies at drill, extended order drill, indication of targets, judging distance, etc., in fields near their billets. These exercises are what the reservists especially want. We received fresh meat and bread again for rations to-day.

August 20*th*.—(Mennevret.) Route march in a very hot sun, which made it difficult for some of the reservists, many of whom have been a long time in the reserve. Some are 3 years with the colours and 9 years with the reserve men, so that they have been away from soldiering for nearly nine years. In the evening got orders to move to-morrow.

August 21*st*.—(Mennevret to La Groise, 11 miles N.E.) Paraded at 8.30 a.m. Weather cooler, and about midday there was a partial eclipse, which made it still better. Rather a slow march, with many checks and halts. The reservists are settling down in their places now, and to-day they carried the heavy weight well. Passed through Hannappes, Etreux, Oisy, to Mezières, near La Groise. Fair billets. 5½ hours' sleep.

August 22*nd*.—(La Groise to Pont-sur-Sambre, 15 miles N.E.) Quite a short march, as we started at 5 a.m. and got in at 12.30 p.m. Through Landrecies and Maroilles (bad road). Picketed side roads from Landrecies onwards. Cooler day. Fair billets. Our men were able to bathe in the river.

August 23*rd*.—(Pont-sur-Sambre to Pâturages, viâ Genly, 20 miles.) We were not allowed to enjoy our billets very long, for at 1.30 a.m. we were roused up, and at 3.30 we marched. We had a hot march, with a lot of blocks and delays. Artillery fire could be heard all day. We crossed the Belgian frontier near the old battlefield of Malplaquet, and arrived at Genly at 3 p.m. Here we were ordered into billets, but had hardly settled down when we were suddenly ordered off to Bougnies—a little to the east, and started at 5 p.m. On arrival there we found the remainder of the 2nd Division busy entrenching, while the 1st Division was in contact with the enemy a little farther on. We were told off to entrench a back position, intended to cover a retirement. Not a very pleasing job with which to begin a campaign! We had supposed that we were going to advance through Belgium with the French on our right.

We had just begun to dig the trenches for this back position when the order was cancelled, and we were told to follow the rest of the 5th Brigade, who were starting off to make a night attack and turn some Germans out of a village called Frameries. I closed

Digitized by Google

the Regiment as quickly as possible, and, leaving all transport behind (as ordered), started after the remainder of the Brigade at 9 p.m. We soon caught them up, and after a little time came to Frameries, where we found, not Germans, but the headquarters of General Shaw, commanding the 9th Infantry Brigade.

Here we learned something about the fighting that had taken place. The IInd Corps (3rd and 5th Divisions) had at first gone beyond Mons, but the position there was so bad that they had to retire fighting, through the town of Mons, to a position behind it. To-day further fighting had taken place on this position, and some of our regiments had suffered considerably.

The reason that we (5th Brigade) had been brought here was to fill a gap existing between the 3rd and 5th Divisions, through which it was feared the Germans would penetrate. We therefore went along this gap (into which, however, the Germans had not come), filling it up by dropping companies at intervals. The Worcestershire and the Highland Light Infantry, being the two leading regiments, were used up in this way, but before it came to our (52nd) turn the gap had been filled up. So we were kept as a reserve in the square in the little town of Pâturages. The Connaught Rangers, the fourth regiment of the 5th Brigade, had not come on to Pâturages, having been ordered to stay behind and dig themselves in near Bougnies. The country hereabouts consists of large villages, coal mines, and slag heaps—a very cramped locality in which to select a defensive position, and the Worcestershire and the Highland Light Infantry had a hard job to pick out positions for their trenches in the dark, knowing that they would be shelled directly it was light.

Retreat from Mons.

August 24th.—(Pâturages to Bavai, 10 miles.) It was 3 a.m. when we lay down on the pavement of Pâturages square and slept. We were pretty tired, as we had been 24 hours under arms, with the exception of 2 hours' halt at Genly. But we were allowed only an hour's sleep, and I myself got no more than a quarter of an hour. At 4 a.m. we stood to, and were sent to a place south of Pâturages, near La Bouverie, to take up a position to cover the retirement of those in front. It was not a first-rate place, as there was not a sufficiently long field of fire. Here we dug trenches, the men working well, in spite of yesterday's very hard day and lack of sleep.

At about 7.30 a.m. General Haking, commanding the 5th Infantry

Digitized by Google

Brigade, sent for me, and told me that the 1st Division on our right had had their right flank turned (apparently owing to the retirement of the French), and had been obliged to retire. We also were ordered to retire, and take up a position near Sars la Bruyère, to cover the retirement of the 1st Division. The Worcestershire and the Highland Light Infantry, who were still holding the positions in front of us which they had taken up last night, were ordered to retire first, while we held the position we had entrenched as a rearguard. These two regiments had been under shell-fire since dawn, and had lost a few men in the trenches which they had made in the dark. The task of getting away from these trenches under fire would not have been a very easy one, except for the fact that the houses of Pâturages were close up to the trenches, so that the men were able to withdraw under cover pretty quickly. They got away without much loss, and apparently the Germans did not follow very rapidly, as we ourselves were able to get clear without firing a shot, after the two reg ments had passed through us. A few shells were fired in our direction, but they did not come very near us.

Passing through Eugies, we got back to Sars la Bruyère at about 11 a.m., and were placed as a rearguard, with our right near that village, and our left (A and D Companies) on the western edge of the Bois de Montreuil. The Highland Light Infantry continued our line on the right. A small party of the Dorsetshire Regiment who had become detached from their own regiment during the retreat came into our line in the Bois de Montreuil with a German prisoner—the first German we had seen. A party of the East Surrey Regiment also came in and joined us. The 3rd and 5th Divisions, being closely engaged with the enemy, seem to have had more difficulty in getting away than we had.

We remained in this position until 5 p.m., when we started off, still with the Regiment as rearguard. We were not closely followed, though we saw a few German cavalry. We arrived at Bavai in the dark, and found a lot of troops here of both the Ist and IInd Corps. Eventually we reached a stubble field beyond the town, and there, at 10 p.m., dead tired, we bivouacked. We had been on our legs pretty continuously since yesterday morning. During the day our horses and transport rejoined us. The block on the road at times was very troublesome, there being, besides our troops, great numbers of Belgians, fleeing from the Germans—men, women, and children in crowds, some in wagons, some walking. Here, at Bavai, we are back in France again.

Digitized by Google

RETREAT TO LA FÈRE.

While it was still dark on the morning of the 25th August, the whole British Army moved southwards again towards the Le Cateau position, where the 4th Division (Snow) had already arrived from England. The so-called Le Cateau position extended from Cambrai on the west, through Le Cateau, to Landrecies on the east; and to reach this line the IInd Army Corps marched by the roads to the west of the Forêt de Mormal, covered on the rear and west flank by the cavalry, while the Ist Army Corps moved by less direct routes to the east of the forest. The eastern roads, moreover, were used by countless civilian fugitives from Maubeuge and the neighbourhood, and, with the troops and transport, were in a perpetual state of block, so that the average rate of marching was barely two miles per hour. At nightfall the Ist Army Corps was scattered along the line Taisnieres - Maroilles - Landrecies, with the 5th Infantry Brigade holding the bridges and partly entrenched about Leval and Pont-sur-Sambre. Farther west than Landrecies it was found impossible to move any troops of the Ist Army Corps, owing to the exhausted condition of the men; there was, therefore, a gap of some ten miles between the left of the Ist Army Corps and the right of the IInd Army Corps at Le Cateau. From Le Cateau the latter Corps extended to Caudry, where it joined hands with the 4th Division, covering the flank as far west as Seranvillers. Throughout the day the enemy had pursued rapidly and with vigour, pushing on his advanced troops in motor vehicles, and continuously pressing the British rearguards, who, however, played their part with skill and determination. Small bodies of men were

Digitized by Google

from time to time cut off, and stragglers were taken, but the British Army was still intact.

During the night both Landrecies and Maroilles were heavily attacked by Germans, who had pushed through the Forêt de Mormal, but in each case they suffered severely and were repulsed. But the enemy was at this time preparing for his main attack farther to the west, and Sir John French, aware of the weight that was being brought against his exposed left flank, and aware also of the fact that the Ist Army Corps was too far away to succour the IInd, determined to abandon the Le Cateau line and endeavour to effect a further retirement to a line running practically east and west through St. Quentin. The right of the Ist Army Corps was now in touch with the retreating French cavalry, who had halted for the night at Avesnes. As long, therefore, as the British retirement kept pace with that of the French, the eastern flank was fairly secure, and the French assisted in covering the retreat. Not so the western flank, which was completely in the air and in peril of being enveloped.

Some time before dawn of the 26th August the Brigades of the Ist Army Corps marched away south from their various halting-places; the roads were congested with troops and vehicles; and the Germans, probably realizing that they had nothing to fear from the IInd Army Corps eight or ten miles away on the west, pressed on in pursuit through Landrecies, attacked the 1st Brigade near Berques, and succeeded in cutting off and capturing nearly the whole of the Munster Fusiliers. The other Brigades were more fortunate, and by the evening the Ist Army Corps was in bivouac about Hannappes, Etreux, Oisy, and Barzy, the last-named place being reached by the two rearguard battalions of the 5th Brigade (Oxford and Worcester).

Digitized by Google

Meanwhile the IInd Army Corps was in imminent peril of being annihilated, and so certain was the German General Von Kluck of victory, that he sent a telegram to Berlin in which he announced that the whole British Army was encircled. As has been explained above, the enemy early in the morning drove a wedge in between the Ist and IInd Army Corps, and thus completely isolated the latter corps. Seven divisions were launched against Smith-Dorrien's three, and the hostile artillery was in a preponderance of at least four to one. There was no question of an immediate retirement, as the IInd Army Corps was pinned to the ground by the enemy's bombardment, and was forced to seek such shelter as was provided by hastily dug trenches. All the morning this bombardment continued without intermission, the British force suffering constant casualties. Our artillery, although outclassed and outnumbered, took a heavy toll of the German infantry forming for attack, but eventually was almost completely silenced. About midday the enemy's infantry pressed in, and gradually forced back the British line. Some battalions, holding on too long, were cut off and captured. Yet the withdrawal of the IInd Army Corps was effected, and General Smith-Dorrien accomplished one of the most difficult tasks which a commander has ever had to face. Fortunately the enemy had been too severely punished to pursue energetically for the time being, and the British Divisions were able by nightfall to reach without further molestation Vermaud, Hargiecourt, and Estrées. Thus, on the night of the 26th, the two Army Corps were once again level, though still a considerable distance apart. The French had been unable to give assistance to their hard-pressed allies on this day, for although General Sordet at Avesnes had moved his Cavalry Corps westward in the

Digitized by Google

morning, the horses were too tired to be brought into action.

The proposed line through St. Quentin was now adjudged to be too far forward on which to stand and fight an overwhelming enemy; so, on the 27th and 28th August, the two Army Corps continued their retreat, while the British and French cavalry kept the enemy at bay until, on the evening of the 28th, the whole British force became united on a line east and west of La Fère.

The pursuit having slackened, a much-needed rest was given to the jaded troops on the 29th, when Divisions were reorganized, and the British army was ready for further fighting. The French 6th Army came up on the British left, and their 5th Army on the British right.

Lieut.-Colonel H. R. Davies's Diary continued.

August 25th.—(Bavai to Leval, 10 miles.) Up at 4 a.m., and started off southwards again. A very hot day, which made marching very trying for the men, who were already tired out. When we reached Pont-sur-Sambre we were told off for the defence of four bridges across the Sambre. D Company took Aymeries; A Company, Aulnoye; B company, the railway bridge at Berlaimont; and C Company, the railway bridge at Sassegnies. The Worcestershire were on our right, and the H.L.I. on our left, also defending the river. Regimental headquarters were close to the railway station at Aulnoye. All the companies made most excellent defences, and we hoped that the bridges would be attacked. However, at about 4 p.m. I received orders that the bridges at Aymeries and Aulnoye would be taken over by the French, of whom a Reserve Division had now turned up. The other two bridges were still to be held by B and C Companies, while A and D, after being relieved by the French, were to form an outpost line from Monceau to Leval.

There was some delay in the French taking over the two bridges, and we did not reach Leval (where I established my headquarters)

Digitized by Google

until after dark. D Company took up the right portion of the outposts near Monceau, and A Company the left, near Leval. During the early part of the night a constant stream of troops of our army, of all sorts—artillery, transport, etc.—passed through Leval, marching southwards.

At 10 p.m. I had just turned into a bed (with sheets), hoping to get a little sleep, but I had not been there three minutes when an order came that the Brigade was to be ready to continue its march to the south at 1 a.m. A few minutes later, however, these orders were cancelled, and fresh orders[1] told us to re-occupy the four bridges, where we had entrenched during the day.

August 26th.—(Leval to Aymeries and thence to Barzy, 17 miles.) With D Company to be collected from a long outpost line, it took some time to move off. However, well before daylight I arrived with A and D Companies at Aulnoye. Here we found the French, and there was some difficulty in getting through them, as we did not know their password; but, after a little, we succeeded in convincing them that we were not Germans. Curiously enough the officer in command had no orders to hand over the bridges to us. He was guarding the Aulnoye bridge in a very sketchy way, and when I went on to the Aymeries bridge I found that it had been left absolutely undefended, the officer professing ignorance of its existence. It is fair to say that these troops belonged to a Reserve Division. No doubt in the regular army things are not done in such a casual manner.

Having deposited D Company at Aymeries, I returned to Aulnoye, where I learned that fresh orders had arrived. It appears that the Germans had taken the bridge over the Sambre north of Maroilles, a little to the south of us, and the whole of the 5th Brigade was moving away southwards. I was ordered to collect the Regiment, and move south as quickly as possible, in order to rejoin the Brigade at Noyelles. It was evidently a case for rapid movement, as there certainly seemed to be a possibility of the Germans getting in between us and the remainder of the Brigade, though as things turned out the Germans did not, as a matter of fact, move very quickly in this direction. Crosse, who had remained

[1] How or why these fresh orders to re-occupy the bridges were sent to us remains a mystery. General Haking told me afterwards that the Division denied having sent any such orders, so apparently they were not intended to be sent, but General Haking undoubtedly received them from the Division.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

at Aulnoye when I went on to Aymeries, had already sent instructions to B and C Companies to withdraw from their bridges and join us on the road back, so I started off at once from Aulnoye with A and D Companies.

We picked up B and C on the way, and found that Godsal and Button (both doing duty with B Company) had been wounded by fragments from the explosion caused by the blowing up of Berlaimont bridge by the French. The latter had told Wood (commanding B Company) of their intention to blow up the bridge, but with great carelessness had not informed him of the exact time. Button had a contusion in the lung, and Godsal a wound in the leg. One of the Regimental signallers (Giles) had also been hit in the groin with a rifle bullet during the night—the first man of the Regiment to be wounded. These three were put into a French motor ambulance and sent off.[1]

Our 1st Line Transport was at Leval, and by sending a message forward we managed to get some water boiled, so that the men were able to have a very hasty breakfast—just time for a mug of tea and a little biscuit.

It was about 4.30 a.m. when we got back to Leval, and here received orders not to go to Noyelles, but to turn more east, through Taisnieres and Marbaix. Soon after leaving Leval, we caught up the Brigade. The Connaught Rangers were on rearguard, and we went on through them. A lot of French troops were also on the march southwards, some on the same road as ourselves, others on adjacent roads, and near Taisnieres we had a very long wait while some of them passed us. A good deal of firing could be heard in the direction of Landrecies, where the 4th and 6th Brigades were engaged, but in our direction the Germans did not appear to be following very closely.

Farther on we had another very long halt, on the high ground north-east of Le Grand Fayt, while a considerable number of French troops, both infantry and artillery, passed us. Here we got orders to go on to Barzy and bivouac there. The Worcestershire and ourselves arrived at Barzy a little before dark, but could find

[1] We imagined that in a motor ambulance they would have been taken sufficiently far to the rear to be clear of the Germans, and it was not until a month later, when no further news of them had come in, that we realized that they might have been captured. As a matter of fact, they were conveyed by the motor ambulance to the nearest British hospital, and the whole hospital fell into the hands of the Germans that very evening.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

no trace of the other two regiments or of Brigade Headquarters. In drizzling rain we settled down into bivouac in an orchard.[1]

I got to sleep about 10 p.m., but at midnight was woken up by Westmacott (commanding the Worcestershire), who had received information from the French, who ought to have been on our right (east) flank, that they were all retiring, while at the same time news came from a Connaught Ranger officer that his regiment had been attacked on the march in the evening, and had lost a lot of men. In the absence of the Brigadier, whom we could not find, Westmacott, who was the next senior officer, thought that we should not remain at Barzy (which was not a place that lent itself to defence), but should march to Boué, and try to pick up news of Brigade or Divisional Headquarters.

August 27th.—(Barzy, via Boué and Etreux, to Neuvillette, 22 miles.) Accordingly we marched at about 2 a.m., and at dawn arrived at Boué, where we found French troops retiring through the village. We got what information we could from the French General, but this amounted to very little. While Westmacott and I were thus endeavouring to collect information, our two regiments were got into a field, where they were able to make some tea, and so have a sort of breakfast.

General Haking and his Staff now turned up, having apparently been with the Highland Light Infantry, only a little way off us, at Barzy. From General Haking I learned that the Connaught Rangers had had rather a severe rearguard action yesterday, and had lost a good many men. They seem to have lost touch with the remainder of the Brigade—which might easily have happened, owing to the great number of French troops marching on the same road.

On arrival at Boué I had sent Worthington on to Etreux to discover if Divisional Headquarters were there. He found them there, and brought back orders that we were to move on to Etreux as quickly as possible. At Etreux we got our day's rations, and were soon on

[1] Of this day's march Major Eden has the following entry in his Diary:—"Owing to the constant blocking of the road by French troops, there were many halts. At the long mid-day halt, we got our first mail from home sorted out, and some rations issued to the men. During the day our route was continually altered. Altogether it was a most trying march, and the men felt the weight of their equipment. Saw unmistakable signs on the road of the exhausted condition of the troops preceding us. In two places we found large collections of British greatcoats piled up and left behind."—ED.

Digitized by Google

the move again southwards, marching through Guise. We passed through the town, and thought that we should halt a little beyond it, but we had many miles to go yet. Shortly after leaving Guise, a report came in that there were some German infantry ahead of us, and we got ready to attack them. It did not sound probable, and turned out to be untrue, so we resumed our march. Crossing the hills a little farther on, we got soaked by a very heavy storm of rain, which increased the weight of the men's packs considerably; but the sun came out afterwards, and by the time we reached our destination we were fairly dry. Passing through Mont d'Origny, we turned to the right to Neuvillette, where we arrived with everyone dead beat from fatigue and want of sleep. We billeted in the houses, but had to find outposts on the hills overlooking the village. At midnight we were woken up, and given orders to get all our baggage packed, and our train wagons sent off at once. We ourselves were ordered to be ready to move at 4 a.m., so we were able to get a little more sleep.

August 28th.—(Neuvillette to Servais, 20 miles.) Up at 3 a.m., and had breakfast. When we were all ready to move, fresh orders came that we were to stand fast for the present. Eventually, the other regiments of the Brigade moved off, but we ourselves were left behind, on the hill above the village, to act as a flank guard, while the other troops, chiefly of the 1st Division, passed through the village. Afterwards I received orders to leave two companies behind as a flank guard, to be eventually relieved by 1st Division troops, and then to come on with the other two companies. B and D, under Wood, were the companies left behind, and I moved off at 10 a.m. with A and C Companies. There was much difficulty in moving along the road, as we had to go through a lot of artillery before reaching our brigade. The 1st Division being on the same road also added to our difficulties The sun was extremely hot, and the men dead tired. I was obliged to have a halt after every half-hour's marching, and to allow much more water than usual to be drunk. It was the only way of getting along. Many men were limping badly, but they stuck to it splendidly. On one occasion we halted close to some apple trees, and I allowed the men to eat the apples, which helped them on a good deal. We passed through La Fère, and hoped that we were to billet there, but we had to go still farther, and only reached our bivouac at Servais just at dark. We had marched 59 miles in the last 64 hours, beginning the march in the middle of an entirely sleepless night, and getting no more

Digitized by Google

than eight hours' sleep altogether during the other two nights. Many men could hardly put one leg before another, yet they all came into Servais singing. B and D Companies did not arrive until long after dark, but they also marched in singing. Wood had hired a French wagon at one of the villages, and loaded it up with the packs of the men who were most tired, by doing which he was able to get them along well. They had, of course, a harder time than had A and C Companies.

August 29th.—(Servais.) A very welcome day of rest, though lying out in a bare stubble field under a most fierce sun did not make it as good a rest as it might have been, but it was certainly better than no rest at all. We were now told to make arrangements to relieve the men of their greatcoats, so the wagon hired by Wood was used to convey most of the coats when we moved off again, the men to carry waterproof sheets instead. To-day we were able to write and send off letters.

Digitized by Google

THE END OF THE RETREAT.

From the 29th August the British Commander-in-Chief was freed of anxiety for his flanks, since General Joffre had moved up a French army on either side of the British force; but he was not without anxiety for the safety of his lines of communication with Havre. He had already evacuated Amiens, into which a German division had moved at once, and he now changed his base to St. Nazaire, with an advance base at Le Mans. The enemy's advance was still pushed with great vigour; but, although the two French Army Corps in the eastern theatre had gained a complete victory over three German Corps, General Joffre decided to continue the retreat of the Allied forces to the line of the Marne, with the intention of drawing the enemy on until the situation should become favourable for assuming the offensive. Accordingly, on the 30th August, the troops resumed their march to the south, and on the 31st reached a line running approximately through Crépy and Villers-Cotterêts. Cavalry engagements and rear-guard actions were frequent; and on the 1st September, near Villers-Cotterêts, the 4th (Guards') Brigade was heavily attacked, as was also the 1st Cavalry Brigade at Néry, where L Battery R.H.A. fought its memorable fight. On the 2nd September the British force reached the north bank of the Marne, and the 3rd was occupied in crossing to the south bank, when the bridges were blown up, and the troops got into position between Lagny and Signy-Signets. A march of another twelve miles to the south brought the British on the 5th September to the line from which it turned about to take part in the great offensive which General Joffre now launched.

Digitized by Google

Shortly before this, air reconnaissances had discovered what appeared to be a change in the enemy's plans; the direct advance on Paris was suspended, and his main columns changed their direction to the south-east, possibly with the intention of breaking the Allies' line between Château Thierry and Vitry-le-François. On the 5th September it was found that some of the German columns had halted on the River Ourcq, while others had crossed the River Marne between Chagnis and Mezy. Large bodies of troops were seen to be converging on Montmirail, and others had established themselves about Coulommiers, Rebais, La Ferté-Gaucher, and Dagny.

LIEUT.-COLONEL DAVIES'S DIARY CONTINUED.

August 30th.—(Servais to Terny, 15 miles.) We were on the move again at 4.30 a.m., continuing the retirement. A very hot and tiring march, with many halts and blocks on the road, but the men much relieved by having their greatcoats carried for them. Through Barisis and Coucy-le-Château to Terny (about 5 miles north of Soissons), arriving at 5 p.m., and bivouacking in a field close to the village. We were able to requisition and cook some potatoes, which were most welcome. We are really being fed very well, except in the matter of vegetables, which are scarcely ever served out; but we can sometimes buy or requisition enough potatoes for the Regiment, and at some places Company officers have been able to arrange for bread and milk (on payment) for their men.

August 31st.—(Terny to Laversine, 15 miles.) Off again south at 5 a.m., skirting Soissons, crossing the Aisne at Pommiers, then turning westward along the river, and finally south again up a side valley to Laversine. Arrived at 1.30 p.m. A very shut-in place, entailing a lot of outposts. C Company and part of B on outposts. We had our baggage-wagons here for a short time, but in the evening they were ordered to go on ahead again. There was a little stream in the valley, and many men were able to get a wash.

September 1st.—(Laversine to Cuvergnon, 17 miles.) An early start. We were on the move in the dark by 2.30 a.m. On the march we drew our supplies at Boursonne, and at about noon had a long halt of 2½ hours or more, for dinner, a little beyond. We

Digitized by Google

passed through large woods both north and south of Villers-Cotterêts, through which town we also passed.

In the afternoon we arrived at Cuvergnon, and soon afterwards news arrived that the 4th (Guards') Brigade, who were doing rearguard, had been heavily engaged in the woods north of Villers Cotterêts. We at first got orders that the 5th Brigade was to advance and join in the fight, but before we had moved fresh news came that the fight was over, and that we were to entrench a position where we were (at Cuvergnon). This we accordingly did, and we remained in the trenches all night, though no Germans came near us. The 4th Brigade retired through us in the evening. They had had a pretty stiff fight in the woods, and had had some losses, but had also killed a good many Germans. Their Brigadier (Scott-Kerr) was wounded, and Morris, commanding the Irish Guards, killed.

September 2nd.—(Cuvergnon to Chauconin, near Meaux, 20 miles.) We and the Worcestershire were rearguard to-day, the Worcestershire being in rear of us. We did not get off until 7.45 a.m., as there was much transport to get clear of Betz before we could move. Our road led through Betz, Acy-en-Multien, Etrépilly, and Chambry. We saw no enemy, and the 4th Cavalry Brigade behind us covering our rear saw only cavalry patrols.

This was one of the worst marches we had. The 1st Line Transport had to be sent off the night before, and as in the early morning we were standing to arms in the trenches, it was not possible to get any tea, so our breakfast was biscuit and water. The sun was very hot indeed, and after a few miles it began to tell on the men. Several fell down unconscious from heat stroke, and others were quite unable to keep up. We had no ambulances and no transport, but some of the worst cases were taken on by the artillery who were with us.

Our orders were to hurry on as quickly as possible, the reason of this being, I believe, so as not to keep back the cavalry, as it seems to have been expected that the Germans would press in on the rear. I went to the Brigadier, and told him that too much hurrying would result in our leaving a number of men on the road. I pointed out that it was not a question of unwillingness on the men's part, but simply their inability to march fast with empty stomachs under a hot sun, after all the previous hard marching they had done, and on the top of a night in the trenches with little if any sleep. The Brigadier quite agreed with me, but said that

Digitized by Google

the orders were to push on as quickly as possible. However, he gave us one or two halts, which saved us a good deal; and, fortunately, between Etrépilly and Chambry, we came up with our 1st Line Transport, when we found that Brett (Transport Officer) had, with great foresight, made tea for the whole Regiment. This really saved us. We were allowed half an hour (which was subsequently extended to three-quarters), and after some tea, with something to eat, the Regiment marched excellently—well closed up in their fours, and in good spirits.

Near the end of the march we passed the 6th Brigade in bivouac. This was the first that we had seen of them since leaving Aldershot, although, being in the same Division as ourselves, they had probably never been far from us. We bivouacked at 6.30 p.m. in a pleasant field, just below a château, at Chauconin.

September 3rd.—(Chauconin to Petit Courrois, 14 miles.) An early start. We were off in the dark at 3 a.m., and passed through the town of Meaux, which seemed very deserted except for troops. From here we turned eastward through Trilport and Montceaux, then south-east through Pierre Levée to Petit Courrois, where we arrived in the middle of the day. Beyond finding some outposts, we had nothing to do, and were able to get a good rest. The 1st Division are to the north of us, nearer the Marne, about La Ferté. D Company, on outpost to the east, had a good deal of bother along the road, stopping French Staff officers in cars, Belgian fugitives on bicycles, and local fugitives on foot, any of whom might have been spies. I had a good long night under a corn stack—the best sleep for some considerable time.

September 4th.—(Petit Courrois to Le Fay, 9½ miles.) The 1st Division and one of the Cavalry Brigades moved off southwards, from La Ferté, across our front, in the morning. Reports came in that the bridge, or one of the bridges, over the Marne at La Ferté had been only partially destroyed, and that some German infantry were crossing by it to the south bank. As the 1st Division had by this time passed through, I was ordered, at about 10 a.m., to take the Regiment out to act as outposts and rearguard in the direction of La Ferté, with orders that, in case the enemy advanced, I was to make some resistance, but to retire before becoming seriously engaged.

I put A Company out about L'Hôtel des Bois, where they had a good field of fire. Back at La Fringale (where I had Regimental Headquarters) were C on the left of the road, and half B on the

Digitized by Google

right. The remainder of B were to the south of this, facing east, while D remained in a fire position at Le Petit Courrois.

The enemy, however, instead of advancing in our direction, were marching away eastward, on the road to Montmirail. We could see big columns of them moving along this road for a considerable time. Towards ourselves they sent out only cavalry patrols.

In the afternoon I received orders to move back on Le Petit Courrois at 5 p.m., and then form a rearguard to the Brigade, who were marching by night through or near Giremontiers.

When we began to withdraw from La Fringale, we were followed by a few German cavalry, two of whom stupidly rode right on to the tail of our rearguard and were captured by A Company, after one of their horses had been shot. A few more followed the Regimental Scouts, who were covering our left flank, and who also shot a horse and got a prisoner. They belonged to the Death's Head Hussars.

Except for this, our withdrawal was quite undisturbed. We left Le Petit Courrois at 7.30 p.m., and followed up the rest of the Brigade, through Le Gros Chêne and Pré-aux-Rats, to the vicinity of Le Charnois, where we arrived at 1 a.m. (5th September), and after having something to eat, bivouacked in a stubble field at the farm of Le Fay.

Our 1st Reinforcement of 90 men, under Turbutt (3rd Battalion), joined us here.

With regard to the above, the following entry in the diary of Lieut. R. M. Owen is of interest :—

At about 6 p.m. the Company was ordered to withdraw, and I to do rearguard with my Platoon. Soon after the Company had moved off, I saw two mounted men coming along the road towards us. I got my glasses on to them, but could not make up my mind for certain whether they were Germans or our own troopers, but I thought they must be the former. I had my men across the road with bayonets fixed and rifles loaded. Meanwhile the two horsemen had come within a few hundred yards, and there was no further doubt that they were Germans of the Death's Head Hussars. They were quite by themselves, although I could see a few others about a half-mile behind them. They continued to come along quite unconcernedly, until they got to within about 40 yards, when I called out to them, and held up my arms, with the idea of trying to convey to them that they had better surrender. They, thereupon,

Digitized by Google

threw their lances on to the road, and we immediately doubled forward and bagged them. Two of my men took possession of the lances, and were very pleased with themselves; while I, having selected the better horse of the two, immediately mounted it. As this was our first capture, there was naturally a certain amount of excitement. By this time we were getting rather left behind, and a few more of these Germans were coming along, so I gave the order to open fire on them. We knocked one fellow out, also killing his horse, and wounding another, whose rider scuttled like a hare into the wood which bordered the road. We then joined up with the Company feeling quite happy. When I examined the holsters of my newly-acquired charger, I found several boxes of matches, towels, sponges, tins of preserved meat, and various odds and ends, which I distributed amongst the men of the Platoon.

Lieut.-Colonel Davies's Diary continued.

September 5th.—(Le Fay to Champlet, 9 miles.) Our Brigade was rearguard again; but, as usually happened when we were on rearguard, we saw no enemy. We crossed the Morin at Tresmes, and thence we marched through Faremoutiers to Hautefeuille, and southwards to Lumigny. After a long halt here in a scorching sun, we went into bivouac in a large avenue at Champlet, close to Lumigny, while the remainder of the Brigade billeted in Marles. A and C Companies were on outposts, facing north on the Marles-Lumigny road, the line being carried on on the left by the Connaught Rangers, and on the right, on a line rather farther back, by the Scots Guards, of the 1st Division. A quiet night, except for some firing once—the result of a supposed visit to our outposts of a German cavalry patrol.

Extract from the Diary of Major A. J. F. Eden, Commanding C Company.

C Company was on outpost near a large farm and market garden, and close to a fine shooting lodge; so plenty of good vegetables, as well as jam and some excellent red wine, were to be had. A quiet night. In the last 16 days we have marched 227 miles, and I have had 45 hours' sleep (excluding the rest day, when some of us managed 8 or 10 solid hours). The actual distance of the march since the retirement began is 173 miles in 12 marching days. Lumigny was the most southerly point reached by the 5th Brigade. Weather still very hot.

Digitized by Google

BATTLE OF THE MARNE, AND ADVANCE TO THE AISNE.

When the Germans suddenly altered their plans and moved away towards the south-east, General Joffre saw his opportunity of striking a blow at the enemy's partially exposed flank by wheeling to the right and assuming a vigorous offensive. The 6th French Army, with its right on the River Marne, was ordered to wheel up and attack the enemy on the Ourcq, cross that river, and cut in on the flank of the 1st German Army. The British, filling the gap between the 6th and the 5th French Armies, also to wheel to the right, and join in the general offensive. This was put into execution on the morning of the 6th September, and by noon the Germans, realizing the danger with which they were threatened, began to draw off and retreat northwards. On that evening, Sir John French says in his dispatch, the fronts and positions of the opposing armies were roughly as follows : *Allies :* 6th French Army (Manoury) right on the Marne at Meaux, left towards Betz; British, on the line Dagny-Coulommiers-Maison; 5th French Army at Courtagon, right on Esternay. Conneau's Cavalry Corps between the right of the British and left of the French 5th Army. *Germans :* IVth Reserve and IInd Corps east of the Ourcq and facing that river; 9th Cavalry Division west of Crecy; 2nd Cavalry Division north of Coulommiers; IVth Corps at Rebais; IIIrd and VIIth Corps south-west of Montmirail. All belonging to the 1st German Army (Von Kluck). The 2nd German Army (Von Bülow, consisting of the IXth, Xth, Xth Reserve, and Guard Corps) was moving

Digitized by Google

against the centre and right of the 5th French Army (d'Esperey) and the 9th French Army.

On the 7th September the 5th and 6th French armies pushed the enemy back towards both the Ourcq and Petit Morin rivers, and inflicted severe losses on him, while the British cavalry fought some successful combats, and portions of the infantry were heavily engaged. On the 8th the Germans were still in retreat, but their rearguards resisted vigorously, and the British and two French armies were fighting all day. Next day the passage of the Marne was forced, but not without difficulty, since the bridges had been destroyed, and the enemy offered stubborn resistance. The two French armies met with strenuous opposition from the reinforced enemy west of the Ourcq and near Montmirail, but after long and fierce fighting succeeded in driving him north with great loss. On the 10th September the pursuit of the Germans was resumed at dawn, and the British Army, fighting its way forward, pushed the enemy beyond the Ourcq, and captured some two thousand prisoners, thirteen guns, and seven machine-guns, besides a great quantity of transport. The 5th and 6th French armies moved forward with little opposition, for the 1st and 2nd German armies, seeing their danger, were now in full retreat.

This concluded the period of fighting generally known as the battle of the Marne, in which, according to an official estimate, there had actually taken part: Germans, 1,056,000; Allies, 1,038,000. But the pursuit did not slacken, and on the 11th September the British Army crossed the Ourcq practically unopposed. That day the cavalry reached the Aisne, the 1st, 2nd, and 4th Infantry Brigades about Couvrelles and Cerseuil, and the 3rd and 5th Infantry Brigades south of Soissons. Advancing again on the 12th September, the Allied

Digitized by Google

Armies soon found that the enemy was preparing to make a stand on the line of the Aisne River, and by the afternoon heavy fighting was in progress all along the line. At nightfall the opposing forces faced one another at varying distances apart along a general line running in front of Verdun and Reims, in rear of Soissons, and thence approximately north-west towards Amiens. The three British Army Corps were at Vauxcéré, Missy and Vailly, and south-east of Soissons, respectively. Such was the situation on the eve of the long struggle known as the battle of the Aisne.

Lieut.-Colonel Davies's Diary continued.

September 6th.—(Champlet to Pézarches, 3 miles.) Lumigny was the farthest point south reached by the 5th Brigade. The retirement is over now. Between the 24th August and the 5th September we have done 178 miles in 12 marches, and had one halt day. Not a very long distance, but very long hours under arms; hardly any sleep, and broiling hot weather. Never in my life have I felt anything like the degree of tiredness that I felt on this retreat. Everyone suffered in the same way. We often wondered if we should ever feel rested again, and whether it would not leave some permanent effect on us.[1] The worst thing was the want of sleep; next came the heat of the sun and the thirst. I think that the extreme fatigue brought on a sort of unnatural thirst. Hunger I do not think one felt to any great extent. Once or twice I tried to eat some biscuit and bully beef at a halt on the march, but failed to manage more than a few mouthfuls. Apples helped us more than anything; and whenever we happened to halt anywhere near apple trees, I always ordered the apples to be picked and eaten.

More than half the men were reservists, who, in spite of some route marches, had not got into proper condition for marching, and, consequently, there were a good many sore feet. A few of these were so bad that they had to be sent to hospital, but the large majority of the sore-footed men stuck to it splendidly. We usually

[1] As a matter of fact, I do not think that it did have any permanent bad effect on anyone.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

had no ambulances with us, so that even the men who fell down unconscious with sunstroke had to be got along on transport of some kind, or on artillery limbers. In spite of all this, the Regiment had only one man missing [1] during the whole retreat. The officers all worked magnificently; tired to death as they themselves were, they kept their companies together all through. Whenever there was a halt, men dropped down and slept on the road, and one had to allow extra time at each halt to wake them up before we could get on the move again. Sometimes a company commander, going down his company to wake the men, would find at the end that some of the men whom he had awakened first had dropped asleep again. The amount of sleep which I myself had in the six nights between the 22nd and 27th August was 13¼ hours; but between the 22nd August and 5th September I had managed to get just 60 hours—an average of 4 hours a night.

Though having to begin the war with a long retirement undoubtedly came as an unpleasant surprise, we did not feel any real depression or loss of confidence. Every day we expected to be the last of retiring, and we always imagined that we should turn round and advance on the following day. The retreat was certainly carried farther than we expected, but this only made it all the more pleasant when we did eventually turn round and chase the Germans.

In the morning we were ordered to be ready to move at any time, but we did not actually move until 7 p.m. D Company was on outposts on the extreme edge of the woods round the Château of Lumigny. To the east there was some artillery and cavalry fighting, and small bodies of Germans were reported in the Forêt de Crecy and the Forêt de Malvoisine, to the north of us. The Germans apparently are now retiring in a north-easterly direction, and our turn has come to go after them, instead of retiring before them, which is indeed a change for the better. Why things have undergone a change we do not know clearly, but we have an idea that the change is due to the appearance of a considerable French force on our left (western) flank.

Our delay in moving seems to be due to the 3rd Division, who are on our left, not yet being up in line with us.

In the evening they appeared, and I came across the 4th Battalion of the 7th Fusiliers, who had been at one time in the 5th Brigade at Aldershot with us.

[1] He was eventually reported a prisoner of war in Germany.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

In the end orders to move came very hurriedly, and I had to collect D Company from their outposts in haste. We did not go far, but bivouacked in a damp field a little north-east of Pézarches.

September 7th.—(Pézarches to St. Simeon, 13½ miles.) We moved off at 8.45 a.m., but just short of Mauperthuis we had a long halt in a place made odorous by dead horses. From here we turned east, by Saints and Beautheil, and on through Chailly to St. Simeon, just beyond which place we bivouacked in a stubble field at about 7 p.m.

On this march we passed numerous old German bivouacs, in which the most conspicuous feature was the number of empty bottles. Evidently they issue wine as a ration, or else the troops help themselves. In all the villages through which we are passing now a lot of damage has been done to houses and furniture by German troops. Shops are often looted, and the French inhabitants complain bitterly of their conduct.

September 8th.—(St. Simeon to La Belle Idée, 11¾ miles.) Marched at 6.45 a.m., viâ Rebais, to a little short of La Trétoire, where we had a long wait. During this halt we were joined by our 2nd Reinforcement (80 men) under Higgins. They had come by train to Coulommiers, and marched from there. Higgins takes over command of C Company from Eden, who will now act as Senior Major.

Our halt was caused by a brisk engagement which the 4th (Guards') Brigade were having in crossing the river Petit Morin, where a German rearguard was putting up a pretty good fight in a wooded country. The Worcestershire Regiment from our Brigade was sent up on the left of the 4th Brigade, and the Highland Light Infantry on the right. The former had a fight, and captured some prisoners and a machine-gun of the German Guards. And at about this time the 4th Brigade drove the Germans across the river.

The remainder of our Brigade—the Connaught Rangers and ourselves—then advanced by La Trétoire, crossed the little river, and turned westward to help the 3rd Division, who were attacking Orly. The Connaught Rangers, who were leading, drove some Germans in front of them, and the 3rd Division crossed the river about the same time, and occupied Orly.

While this was going on, one of our Companies (D) was sent up on to the wooded hill to the east of Orly, and came across Germans, who fired on them, in thick wood, killing one man. The Company, however, advanced, and killed 4 Germans (including an officer).

Digitized by Google

In this fight Private Kippax[1] distinguished himself, and was promoted corporal for his good work.

As the object of our advance—the capture of Orly—was achieved, General Haking ordered the recall of D Company, and we went on to our bivouac ground at La Belle Idée, where we arrived long after dark, having been blocked on the road by the 6th Infantry Brigade and a brigade of artillery.

Private Allen, who was killed, was the first man of the Regiment killed in action in the war. We buried him by the side of the La Trétoire-Orly road, close to the spot where he was killed.

September 9th.—(La Belle Idée to Domptin, 9 miles.) Rouse at 6, but we did not actually move until 11.30 a m The supply wagons came up, and we were able to fill up with our rations before marching off. When we reached Pavant, we received unexpected orders that the 5th Brigade was to entrench a position on the south bank of the Marne. I do not know why this order was issued, but we had hardly begun to dig when we got other orders, viz., to resume our march. Crossing the Marne at Charly bridge, we bivouacked after dark at Domptin, in a place where water was so scarce that we could not water our animals. I believe that the 6th Brigade, who were doing advanced guard, had a little fighting, but the crossing of the Marne was certainly accomplished with very little difficulty as far as the 2nd Division was concerned. In Charly a German soldier had written up on the wall of a house the date on which they expected to enter Paris!

September 10th.—(Domptin to Monnes, 12 miles.) Started at 4.20 a.m., after a rather short night under an apple-tree, which kept off the dew. When we had gone a few miles, near Bussiares, there was heavy firing from the 6th Brigade, who were in front of us as advanced guard. They had some German infantry crossing their front, and were getting round them. We (5th Brigade) were then ordered to advance on their right, and, in conjunction with the left of the 1st Division (Northamptonshire Regiment), to advance through Breuil and Cointicourt, and attack the ridge beyond. In this movement the Regiment was advanced guard to the Brigade, but there were only a few Germans, who retired, so we had nothing much to do. After getting on to the ridge, we came under some shell-fire (H.E. black shells from field guns).

[1] He was subsequently given the Médaille Militaire.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

One of our batteries, coming up afterwards, was considerably shelled close to us, their teams being lucky to escape damage. In the Regiment we had one man killed and 4 wounded. This was our first real shelling. We bivouacked at a little village named Monnes, and put out outposts. The whole of the 5th Brigade was here This was a pretty good day, as about 1,400 Germans were captured by our army.

Major Eden's Diary contains the following entry:—

September 10th.—Rouse at 3.30 a.m., and off at 4.20. A long halt on the road soon after starting. The 6th Infantry Brigade, advanced guard to 2nd Division, at about 9 a.m., when close to the village of Bussiares, found a German column retiring up a narrow valley, and immediately attacked with vigour. The 5th Brigade prepared to assist them, and a company and a half of the Regiment (B and half C) got a look in. Meanwhile, the 1st Division, on our right, became involved near Courchamps, and the 5th Brigade got ready to advance on their left. Shells now fell fairly thickly, but principally on the 1st Division, advancing on Priez. The enemy drew off without using infantry fire. All our companies were under shell-fire at different times during the day. At 4 p.m. our Brigade and some artillery reached Monnes, but did not move into bivouac until 7 p.m. Some well-aimed enemy shells fell near the village for some time, to which our heavies replied. During the day there was occasional heavy rain, and our bivouac was in a small and wet field. D Company lost one man and one pack animal killed by shell-fire in the village of Montmenjon this afternoon, and 4 other men of the Regiment were wounded.

Lieut.-Colonel Davies's Diary continued.

September 11th.—(Monnes to Beugneux, 13 miles N.E.) Marched at 5 a.m., through Neuilly-St. Front, Nanteuil, and Oulchy-le-Château, to the small village of Beugneux, where we arrived about 1 p.m. A short day indeed, but it was not much of a rest for us, as we had to bivouac in a field on the windward side of a hill in pouring rain. Two Regiments of the Brigade got into billets in the village, but we were not lucky enough to be one of these.

September 12th.—(Beugneux to Vieil Arcy, 16 miles.) Marched at 5.30 a.m. to the château at Lime, where we had a long halt

Digitized by Google

while the bridge over the Vesle at Courcelles (which had been broken) was made good for infantry to pass. We crossed it in the afternoon, following the Worcestershire, who went on to the high ground[1] north of Courcelles. We went on past the Worcestershire, and just as we had got beyond Monthussart farm, some Germans came in sight, moving from the west, apparently being driven eastward by the 3rd Division, who had crossed the Vesle on our left. Our leading Company (D) at once opened fire on them, but they immediately put up white flags, and we took 107 prisoners, including 7 officers.[2] A little while afterwards 5 German cavalry men came galloping towards the right of our extended line, and A Company, opening fire, killed 1, wounded 1, and captured a third. They evidently did not know what they were coming into. By crossing the broken bridge at Courcelles, we had struck in on the German line of retreat. The infantry were Landwehr, the cavalry were Uhlans of the Guard.

After a long halt here, we were eventually ordered to march on to Vieil Arcy, arriving after dark, in pouring rain, and the darkness made the process of billeting rather slow, but eventually we all got into shelter.

---

[1] Point 142 on map, Soissons, Sheet 33, $\frac{1}{80,000}$, Set G.—H. R. D.

[2] Another account says:—"D Company, aware of German abuses of the white flag, did not take any risks, but made the Germans advance without their arms, being covered all the time by the rifles of our men."—ED.

Digitized by Google

THE BATTLE OF THE AISNE.

To 13th October 1914.

Whether what is called the "Battle of the Aisne" may be said to have commenced on the 12th September or on the 13th is a matter of opinion, but quite immaterial. On the night of the 12th the opposing forces were within the Aisne area, but it was not until the 13th that the British crossed the river. So far the Allies had made a successful advance of between fifty and sixty miles against the retreating Germans, but it was soon discovered that the latter had prepared a position on which to stand at bay—whether only for the purpose of fighting a rearguard action, or as a solid line of defence was not at first known. To Sir John French one thing seemed certain : that at least three German Army Corps were guarding the passages of the Aisne, and on the morning of the 13th September he ordered his troops to move forward and "make good the Aisne."

As will be seen from the map, the valley of the Aisne runs approximately east and west, varying in width from half a mile to two miles, and having sides sloping up to a height of some four hundred feet both on the north and on the south. In places the slopes are steep, with bluffs and quarries, bold spurs and ravines; here and there under-features crop up, to form downs or minor plateaux, while elsewhere the ground rises, from the wide, sluggish, and unfordable river, gently upwards, and is cultivated, more especially in the vicinity of the farms and villages, of which there are several. Each side of the valley is dotted with woods, extending up to the crest, and in a great measure concealing the actual edge of the plateau above. That portion of the river

Digitized by Google

which came within the British sphere of action, viz., between Soissons and Villers (about 15 miles), had eleven crossings, all of which it was found were under the enemy's artillery fire from the northern slopes of the valley. And the German batteries were too far distant from the southern ridge to be silenced by our guns.

The British Forces (in addition to the Cavalry) now consisted of the following :—

IST ARMY CORPS.

1*st Division* (1st, 2nd, 3rd Infantry Brigades)
2*nd Division* (4th, 5th, 6th Infantry Brigades).

IIND ARMY CORPS.

3*rd Division* (7th, 8th, 9th Infantry Brigades).
5*th Division* (13th, 14th, 15th Infantry Brigades).

IIIRD ARMY CORPS.

4*th Division* (10th, 11th, 12th Infantry Brigades).
6*th Division* (16th, 17th, 18th Infantry Brigades) not complete until 16th September.

The passage of the Aisne was not easily effected, since the enemy had taken care to destroy all save one of the bridges, while that not destroyed he kept under artillery or machine-gun fire. Still, on the 13th September, the British advanced to the south bank at various points and commenced to repair such broken bridges as they desired to use, and throw pontoons across. By nightfall, and after considerable opposition, a proportion of the force had established itself on the right or north bank of the river, when the enemy withdrew for a distance of about two miles to a strongly-entrenched position, leaving detached posts, supported by heavy artillery, on the spurs in front.

The 5th Brigade crossed the river in the evening by a pontoon bridge, made alongside the destroyed road

Digitized by Google

bridge at Pont Arcy, and threw out outposts for the night facing north and north-west. The Ist Army Corps (of which the 5th Brigade formed part) was on the right of the British Force, having on its right the French 5th Army, and on its left the British IInd and IIIrd Corps, on whose left again was the French 6th Army.

On the 14th September the passage of the river was continued, and the fighting became severe, more particularly for the Ist Army Corps, on the right of the twenty-mile British line. Early in the morning the 2nd Brigade of the 1st Division which had reached Moulins the day before, pushed on towards Vendresse, with a view to covering the advance of the remainder of the Division. Within a few hours the fighting in the neighbourhood of the cross-roads near Troyon became of the fiercest description, but the 2nd Brigade eventually succeeded in gaining its immediate objective by establishing itself on the ridge opposite the German trenches. Westward, near Verneuil, the 3rd, 5th, and 6th Brigades were engaged at the same time, though with less result, the enemy resisting stubbornly and counter-attacking throughout the day. On the left again, i.e., south-westward, the 4th (Guards') Brigade fought its way upwards from Chavonne to Soupir, thus getting in touch with the 6th and 5th Brigades.

While the Ist Army Corps was making this brilliant advance, the IInd had been hung up on the south side of the river for want of bridges. The 3rd Division, coming to the river at Vailly in the morning, found that the bridge had been broken at the northern end, but by a single plank over the gap two brigades managed to file across by noon, while the 3rd Brigade negotiated the river on rafts, which occupied most of the day. Pressing forward, they made good the high ground

Digitized by Google

above, and occupied satisfactory positions on the two spurs Maison Rouge and Ostel, the 9th Brigade joining up with the 4th (Guards') Brigade, in the vicinity of the farm La Cour de Soupir. The other Division of the IInd Army Corps—the 5th—were not so fortunate in crossing the river even as the 3rd Division, as the ground over which they essayed to pass to the south bank at Missy was swept by the enemy's fire. One brigade was forced to remain at Sermoise, but the other two brigades succeeded in the afternoon in crossing at Moulins des Roches and joining in the heavy fighting which they found going on in front of them. Filling the gap between the 3rd Division on their right and the 4th Division already on their left, these two brigades first assisted in beating back a German attack on the 4th Division, and then attempted, but unsuccessfully, to capture the Chivres heights.

The 4th Division had got across, one brigade by means of boats between Soissons and Venizel, another by the Venizel Bridge which had been repaired, and the third by a pontoon bridge close by.

On the night of the 14th the British north of the Aisne were established on a general line running from a point on the river a little below Venizel, through Missy, Vailly, La Cour de Soupir, and Vendresse, to a point on the Chemin des Dames, a little to the east of Cerny; and the resistance offered by the enemy during the day now made it evident that he intended to stand and fight on the position which he had prepared. Described generally, his front from west to east ran north of Compiègne, north of the Aisne, and north also of Reims and Verdun.

From this time onwards the British made little or no headway, although every effort was put forward. Daily engagements took place, and the Germans brought up

Digitized by Google

heavier artillery wherewith to pound our trenches. But open warfare here was practically at an end, and its place was taken by the new trench warfare, in which attack and counter-attack alternated for the next few weeks. Neither side gave way, and the opposing lines of trenches remained almost unchanged.

In the meantime, while the British held the Germans to their position in the Aisne valley, General Joffre reinforced the French 6th Army and ordered it to drive in the enemy's right, and, if possible, envelop it. By the 23rd September this movement began to make itself felt, and the Germans were forced to draw back their right, until, at the close of the month, this flank was facing westward, with the extreme right near St. Quentin. On the east of the British, the French armies were also busily engaged with the German left, up to the frontier of Alsace-Lorraine, thus preventing all attempts on the part of the enemy to work round the right flank of the Allies.

Foiled in his attempt to break through to Paris as originally planned, and realizing that matters had arrived at a deadlock, the enemy bethought him of the easier route by way of the plains of Flanders; so, leaving sufficient forces to hold his heavily entrenched positions, he drew off the remainder in a north-westerly direction. And the Allies, perceiving their enemy's intention, set to work to frustrate his fresh designs.

Lieut.-Colonel Davies's Diary continued.

September 13*th*.—(Vieil Arcy, across the Aisne, to Moussy, 3½ miles.) Our prisoners were sent away to the rear under escort. A good deal of delay in the morning, owing to the necessity of repairing the bridge over the Aisne. I found time to write two letters and to have a shave. Also got a letter dated 29th August. The post is very slow.

Digitized by Google

In the afternoon (about 5 o'clock) we crossed the river by a pontoon bridge which had been constructed by the side of the broken bridge at Pont Arcy. A few shells were fired at us, and some of the Connaught Rangers were hit. On the farther bank of the river the whole of the 5th Brigade took up a line of outposts from near Verneuil to Soupir. Our (52nd) part was from Ferme de Metz to Soupir (exclusive), the Worcestershire being on our right, and the Connaught Rangers on our left. I made Regimental Headquarters in an estaminet close to the canal bridge, west of Moussy, and, securing a bed to sleep on, had 3 or 4 hours' sleep. D Company, in reserve, were also billeted near this bridge. During the night, which was wet and cold, we heard a good deal of rumbling of wheels on the ridge in front of us, and early in the morning (14th) some German cavalry appeared near Ferme de Metz, and exchanged shots with a piquet of A Company. 5th Brigade Headquarters were at Verneuil.

September 14th.—(To Soupir.) In the morning the 5th Brigade was told to hold on to the outpost position, while the 6th Brigade advanced through us. This they did during the morning, and then moved towards Braye, where they met with considerable opposition. Farther to the left the 4th (Guards') Brigade were also strongly opposed on the wooded hill above Soupir. We remained where we were until the afternoon, being considerably shelled with both high explosive and shrapnel.[1] Soon after midday I was ordered to collect the Regiment at Moussy, with the idea of pushing forward on the left of the Worcestershire, who were also to advance. However, the 6th Brigade were all over this part of the ground, and we were not used in this way.

Eventually (about 5 p.m.) I was ordered to take the Regiment to Soupir, to act as a reserve to the 4th Brigade. The road to Soupir had been a good deal shelled, but by keeping to the left of the road, where the ground was a little lower, and by moving well strung out, we apparently escaped observation, and were not shelled at all.

We found that the 4th Brigade, with whom were the Connaught Rangers, were holding their own well. They had reached the crest

[1] Major Eden writes in his diary :—"The enemy's artillery fire was at times very heavy, and did us a great deal of damage. A and B Companies were in the open, with their firing line so situated that they could not use their rifles, and suffered several casualties. One H.E. shell, bursting at one spot, killed four men and wounded another four."—ED.

Digitized by Google

of the ridge above the village, and had repelled several counter-attacks. The Connaught Rangers, who were there first of all unsupported, must have done very well. About 300 German prisoners had been taken here.

We were billeted in the village of Soupir, but when we had got to sleep we were called up almost at once (about 11 p.m.) to go up the hill and reinforce the 4th Brigade, the reason being that there was a good deal of firing going on. This, however, turned out to be an attack on the 3rd Division, on our left, which, apparently, was repulsed. We were, therefore, sent back to our billets, and slept the remaining three hours of the night. We had all our men under cover, chiefly in barns and sheds.

During the day our losses—all from shell-fire—were about 45, of whom, fortunately, only 4 were killed. Among the wounded were Owen, Colour-Sergeant Small, and Sergeant Walker. We did not get a chance of firing back, as we saw no German infantry.

At night the Connaught Rangers went away back to the 5th Brigade.

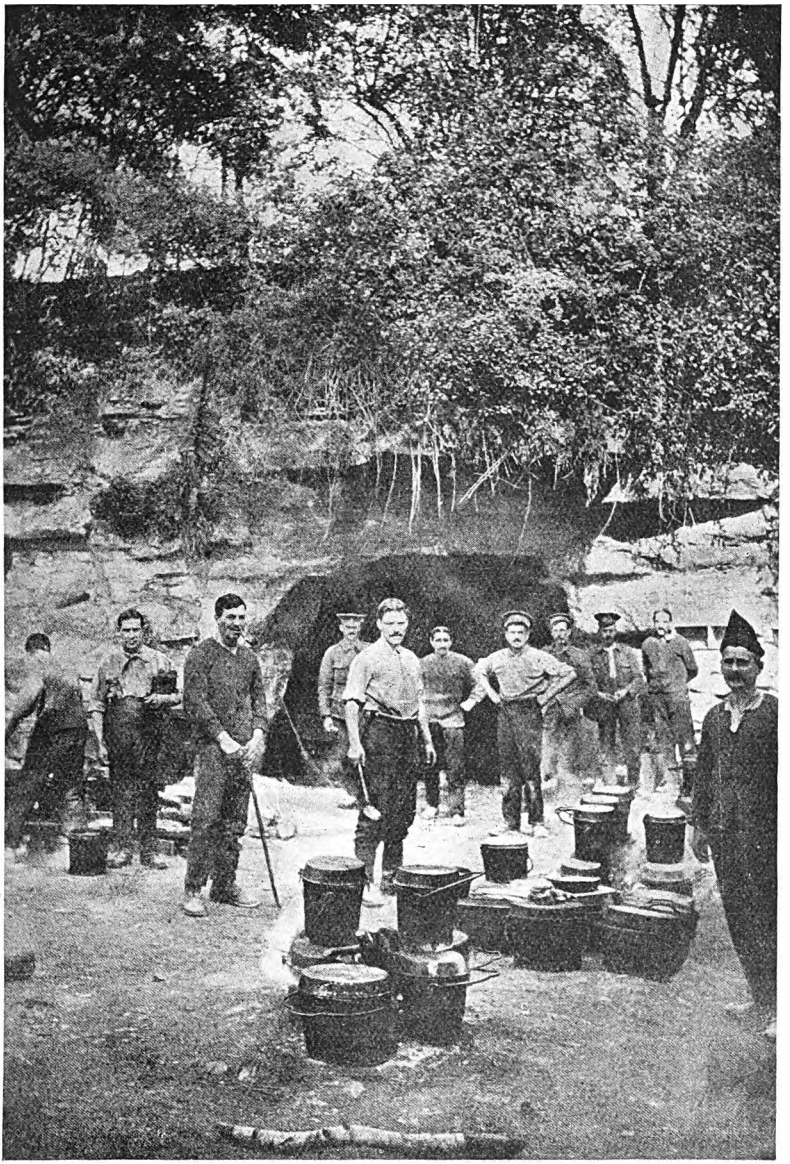
Brigadier-General Percival (C.R.A. of the 2nd Division) was commanding this part of the line, the Brigadier of the 4th Brigade having been wounded on the 1st September.

September 15th.—(Soupir Village.) The day opened quietly, but at 6 a.m. the Germans began shelling the 4th Brigade, and later on in the morning they began dropping shells near our village. Their shelling, however, was very ineffective, and, in fact, we had quite a rest-day—a rest we all much enjoyed, the first real rest we have had since the 20th August. I managed to have 7 hours' sleep in a bed.

September 16th.—(Soupir Village.) Still in Soupir, in reserve, and had a fairly peaceful time. A good deal of shelling all around, but no shells came actually where we were. In the evening got orders to relieve the 2nd Battalion Grenadiers the next morning in a farm called La Cour de Soupir, a mile and a half away.

At about noon C and D Companies were sent up to La Cour de Soupir as a support to the 4th (Guards') Brigade, and towards evening a most unlucky big shell landed amongst them, killing Worthington, Mockler-Ferryman, Girardot, and 8 men, and wounding Higgins, Evelegh, Tylden-Pattenson, and 8 men, besides causing 40 or more casualties to the Grenadier Guards. Our men had been in a large cave, but owing to some firing in front, had

Digitized by Google



CAVE MOUTH NEAR LA COUR DE SOUPIR.
Afterwards used as cook-house. September 1914.

Digitized by Google

been ordered out of the cave by the officer commanding the Grenadiers, so that they should be ready to act. Just as the head of the leading company was coming out the shell fell. These are the first officers of the Regiment to be killed.

September 17th.—(Soupir Village to La Cour de Soupir.) Went up and relieved the 2nd Battalion Grenadier Guards at 4.30 a.m. It was a good position to hold, and we were able to make those men who were not actually in the trenches very comfortable in caves and elsewhere under cover. We found trenches already dug, and at once set to work to improve them.

The place was full of German wounded, who had had a very poor time, as most of them had been hit three days before. Their wounds had been dressed, but many of them were becoming gangrened, and they wanted getting away to hospital badly. They were originally put in a cow-house, but yesterday this was set on fire by German shells. The Grenadiers succeeded in getting all the German wounded out of the barn at considerable risk to themselves, but some unfortunate cows (chained up) were all burned to death, and their charred carcasses remained there during the whole time we were in these trenches, and had to be constantly covered with earth to stop the smell.

Ambulances could not come up in the daytime owing to the shelling, but after dark we got all the German wounded away into hospitals which had been established in the church and château in Soupir village.

Besides the wounded there were a considerable number of dead, both British and German, lying about, but the enemy's fire prevented us from doing anything with them by day, so we had to do all the burying at night.

Our principal trouble to-day was caused by pouring rain, which made things very uncomfortable. The shelling was not severe.

Major Eden's account of the above two days, as entered in his diary, is as follows :—

September 16th.—Rouse at 5 a.m., as usual. At 11.30 a.m. C and D Companies, as well as Worthington and some scouts, were sent up to reinforce the line of trenches. D Company moved very wide to the east, to help the 60th, while C Company went to the Grenadier Guards, near whose position there was good cover for reserves in the caves of a large stone quarry near La Cour de

Digitized by Google

Soupir. At about 5 p.m. an infantry attack appearing imminent, C Company (together with A Company of the Grenadier Guards) were brought out from cover. Most of the officers were outside together, when suddenly a most awful H.E. shell burst in their very midst, with the unfortunate result that Worthington, Mockler-Ferryman, Girardot, Huggan (R.A.M.C., attached to the Grenadiers), and 8 N.C.O.'s and men of the Regiment were killed, and Higgins, Evelegh, Tylden-Pattenson, and 8 men were wounded, and one man was missing. Truly an awful day for C Company and for the Regiment. The Company of the Grenadiers had some 40 casualties at the same time.

September 17th.—Rouse at 2 a.m., as the Regiment had to relieve the 2nd Grenadiers in the trenches at 4.30 a.m. B and D Companies went to the trenches at La Cour de Soupir; A Company to Chavonne. Our Regimental Headquarters were now established at the farm of La Cour de Soupir, such fine buildings, but woefully knocked about. Not much sniping during the day. About 11.30 a.m. several shells coming into the farm-buildings forced Headquarters to move from the forge into the caves below. Afternoon quieter, so I was able to make arrangements for burying our dead in the evening. At 6.30 p.m. I took a carrying-party to convey the bodies of our three dead officers for burial in Soupir cemetery, where Sergeant Sibley had prepared graves and crosses. A dreadfully sad ceremony.

The *Oxford Times* published a letter, from Private Ernest Wallington (C Company), relating to the above events. The following is an extract :—

On the 16th I was put on sentry by the hospital doors. The Church was the hospital, and it was full of wounded, mostly serious cases, while in the yard outside there were 74 German prisoners, 70 of whom were wounded, but able to walk about. These we had to watch; and our wounded, who were arriving fairly often, had to find another place, the Church being crowded. I went on sentry for the second time at 5 p.m., and had not been on five minutes before my Captain[1] was carried in. They had left the village scarcely an hour before for the firing line, and were standing at the mouth of a cave, where they were ready to reinforce the trenches

[1] Captain Higgins.

Digitized by Google

if required, when a shell dropped over the bank, and killed two officers of my Company (besides the Battalion Scout Officer),[1] wounded the Captain and two others, and left one officer absolutely unhurt. One of the above was my platoon officer.[2] I learnt he did not speak after, whilst the other[3] lived only ten minutes. Three days later our other Captain[4] and another officer[5] were killed, which made four officers killed and two wounded — all the six that we had in the Company, and all, you might say, sheer bad luck.

I came off guard early next morning (17th), and went up to join my Company on the hill where all this had happened. As soon as it was light, shells were flying about in all directions, from quite short range, too. There were only two wounded close to us, luckily, that day, and at dusk the fire of the Germans slackened down, so I, with others, went to the cave mouth, and made a stretcher of my waterproof sheet, and carried our officer down to Soupir churchyard, where, in company with the other officers who were killed, he was buried. He was a nice chap, and was dearly liked by everybody, although we reservists had known him only a matter of six weeks. But there he lies, with a small wooden cross above him, and my waterproof over him.

Lieut.-Colonel Davies's Diary continued.

September 18th.—(La Cour de Soupir.) A very quiet day, but wet and muddy. Evelegh and Tylden-Pattenson have sufficiently recovered of their wounds to return to duty. A Company returned from Chavonne. They were attacked yesterday, but not in a very determined manner, and they caused 20 or 30 casualties to the enemy, without loss to themselves.

September 19th.—A quiet morning, but at 1.15 p.m. we began to get a very heavy shelling, which continued until 7.15 p.m. It was directed at the trenches themselves, at the farm, at the mouths of the caves, and at the road which ran between the farm and the caves; and it was pretty accurate. A and D Companies were holding the trenches. I stayed in the caves, with B and C Companies in reserve, for some time; but about 3.30 p.m., when infantry

[1] Lieut. Worthington.
[2] Lieut. Mockler-Ferryman.
[3] 2nd Lieut. Girardot.
[4] Captain Evelegh.
[5] 2nd Lieut. Barrington-Kennett.

Digitized by Google

fire began, and I received news of an advance of some German infantry, I brought out B Company. Wood took most of them round the south side of the farm to support or reinforce C Company, who were on the left. I went to the forge in the farm, with 1½ platoons, under Turbutt, as a reserve for A Company on the right. Here I was better situated for discovering what was going on than at the caves. Many shells came over, but they did not actually hit the forge. The enemy's infantry did not really come on, and, as it happened, the reserves were not wanted. It was not a pressed-home attack, but was possibly intended to keep us in our trenches during the artillery fire, or to be turned into a real attack if they found that we were shaken by their artillery fire. When our men in the trenches fired at them they went back. At dark (about 6.30 p.m.) things became quieter, and we had a peaceful night. Our losses, entirely from shell-fire, were about 35, including one officer killed, one died of wounds, and one wounded. A Company had 18 casualties, caused principally by two H.E. shells falling actually in the trench.

A few were hit between the farm and the caves, and, unfortunately, Evelegh [1] and Barrington-Kennett were among them. The former was killed outright. The latter, though badly hit, refused to allow the men with him to carry him to the cave in which the dressing-station had been established. When eventually brought in, he was very cheerful, though rather badly wounded in the neck, jaw, and back. He was got away to hospital at night, but the next day he died at Vieil Arcy.

One man (Private Hamblin), badly hit at the farm, was carried down to the caves by Payne, the mess waiter, and Carter, the driver of the mess-cart, under very heavy shell-fire.

Blewitt was the wounded officer. He was hit by shrapnel in the face, but stuck to the trenches, and remained at his duty until all firing was over.

In the evening Lord Cavan, who had just come out to command the 4th Brigade, came up, and asked if, after the heavy shelling, we would like to be relieved, but I said that we would stick it. In the ordinary course it would have been our day to be relieved, as we had done three days; but I asked this morning to be left here, as it seemed to me to be really better to remain in the place we

[1] Captain Evelegh was buried at 9 p.m. next day in Soupir churchyard by the side of his three brother officers.—ED.

Digitized by Google

know than to go down to Soupir village for one day's rest, with every chance of being sent to another part of the line about which we know nothing.

From Captain G. Blewitt's Diary.

September 19th.—(Cour de Soupir.) A bath was discovered in the dairy, and our mess-men, who cooked in the kitchen of the farmhouse, provided hot water for each in turn. Having had my bath, I went to lunch at the forge, out of which we were shelled at 1.30 p.m., when the mess retired to the caves. I went back and relieved Vere Spencer in the trenches, where a hellish artillery fire went on until dark. Infantry advanced on our right, where they succeeded in getting a Maxim into action, near some hay-stacks which rather enfiladed us, but the fire was always high. Then, at dusk, they collected in the turnip-fields in front of us, and we thought that they meant coming through. We got up all the reinforcements we could (3 platoons, under Turbutt and Marshall), and laid them down, with fixed bayonets, behind our trenches, ready to counter-charge when the enemy got into our entanglements (of which there was little left). But they never got there, and by 6.30 p.m. the firing died down, when the attack shifted farther down the line to our right. Our position was very peculiar. The Aisne was behind us, and from it the ground sloped steeply up towards a wooded plateau, almost on the edge of which (where the cultivation and woods met) we had our trenches, mostly looking up a slope, and in many places with very little field of fire. To our left front D Company's trenches had a field of fire of only 200 yards, and the enemy must have come to within 100 yards in his attack after dark.

I was hit by a shrapnel bullet just below the eye at about 3 p.m., and Harden put on my first field dressing. By the time the show was over, my face was beginning to get painful, so I went back to the second cave, which was our hospital, to see Thurston, the doctor. The cave was a mass of wounded, and horrible. Here I found poor Barrington-Kennett, terribly wounded, and I lay down beside him, as he preferred me to the orderly, and I did what I could for him. The Colonel came and saw us, and was very kind. At 11 p.m. the horse ambulance came up, and we drove to Vieil Arcy, Eden seeing us off

Digitized by Google

September 20th.—(Vieil Arcy.) The doctor took off my first field dressing about 11.30 a.m. My face was in a pretty fair mess now, and I could not see out of my eye. He was of opinion that there was a piece of shell in it. Poor Barrington-Kennett died about 12.30 p.m. after having his arm off.[1]

LIEUT.-COLONEL DAVIES'S DIARY CONTINUED.

September 20th.—(La Cour de Soupir.) A quiet day, with very little shelling; but in the evening, just at dusk, there was a good deal of infantry fire. It could not be called an attack. Small parties of the enemy and their machine-guns fired at us, probably with the idea of disturbing and annoying us. There was some sniping in the daytime, and two of our men were hit by bullets. We replied with our best shots, and I think hit one or two Germans.

Dillon took over command of C Company, all of whose six officers have been killed or wounded, though Tylden-Pattenson is back again at duty.

September 21st.—(La Cour de Soupir to Dhuizel, 6½ miles.) Still some sniping, but we had only one man hit while distributing rations. The Germans were digging some fresh trenches, the nearest being about 700 yards off. A little shelling at times. One never quite knows when shells may come. They put ten H.E. shells near D Company's trenches, but did no harm. Shrapnel was also apt to come at long intervals.

At dusk the German infantry and machine-guns again did some shooting of the same sort as last evening. We ourselves did not reply to it much, but there was a good deal of firing by the regiments on either side of us.

At night we were relieved by the Leinster Regiment (of the 17th Brigade, 6th Division), and were ordered to rejoin the 5th Brigade at Dhuizel. We did not get off until 1 a.m. (22nd). We crossed the Aisne at Chavonne, and marched, viâ Vieil Arcy, to Dhuizel, where we arrived after daylight, found the 5th Brigade there, and then went into billets and slept. General Haking had been wounded, also Terry (52nd) the Staff Captain; and Gilkison,

[1] Captain Blewitt was taken to Braisne on the evening of 20 September, and on to Paris (Hotel Astoria Hospital) on the 22nd. Next day he was operated on, and a shrapnel bullet was removed from the muscles of his right jaw. Arriving in England on 6 October he remained there until 18 December, when he returned to France.—ED.

Digitized by Google

the Brigade Major, had been killed. Lieut.-Colonel Westmacott, commanding the Worcestershire, is in temporary command of the Brigade, with Stevenson (H.L.I.) acting as Brigade Major. The Worcestershire and the Highland Light Infantry have each lost an equal number of officers to ourselves.

September 22nd.—(Dhuizel.) We are now reserve to the 1st Corps, which means a rest as long as nothing particular happens. We do not get shelled, though shells occasionally pitch within a few hundred yards of the village. A number of gifts arrived from Aylesbury, and 1,000 cigarettes from Lord Orkney. The 3rd Reinforcement (120 men), under Humfrey (3rd Battalion), arrived to-day.

September 23rd–24th.—(Resting at Dhuizel.) Getting washed and shaved and clothes washed. The rest in billets is doing us a lot of good. We wanted it. Shelling going on in front as usual. I spoke first to the officers and then to the N.C.O.'s, and thanked them all for the excellent work they had done during the retreat and afterwards. This I told them to convey to the men, as it was not possible for me to have a Regimental parade to speak to them also. Chippindale (3rd Battalion) joined for duty.

September 25th.—We got some exercise to-day by digging trenches in a back position selected by the Corps, not with much idea that they will ever have to be occupied, but just as a precaution.

September 26th.—(Dhuizel.) Early in the morning and during part of last night there was considerable artillery and infantry fire. We were held in readiness to move, but were not called for. We heard later that the firing was caused by an attack which the 21st German Division made on our 1st Division. The attack was repulsed with considerable loss to the enemy.

September 27th.—Still held in readiness to move, but were not wanted. Very little shelling to-day. Ponsonby arrived from England and took over command of C Company, having got leave to give up his appointment of Assistant Military Secretary in South Africa.

September 28th.—Continued digging the back line trenches on the heights to the south of Dhuizel village. Platoons exercised in drill, musketry, marching, etc.

September 29th.—Out again finishing off the trenches. Some shells fell near the village to-day, and one of them crashed into a big farm in which the Worcestershire were billeted, but, fortunately, without hurting anyone.

Digitized by Google

In the afternoon we got orders to move, across the Aisne to Bourg, 3½ miles, which we did after dark (7 p.m.), and took over billets from the Connaught Rangers. Quite good billets. The duties here entail finding a few guards, digging some trenches at night, and cleaning up the streets of the village. The Headquarters of both the 1st and 2nd Divisions are in Bourg.

September 30th.—(Bourg.) Spent part of the day riding about looking for places to dig trenches as a sort of extra precaution. A few shells near the village occasionally, but our billets were not disturbed. One company occupied trenches at night, protecting our heavy artillery. Much colder both by day and night.

October 1st.—(Bourg to La Cour de Soupir, 4 miles.) In the afternoon got orders to move at 7.30 p.m. back to our old line at La Cour de Soupir, where we took over from the Leinster Regiment. They had carried on the improvement of the trenches, and there are now good communication trenches all round. Things are much the same as before, except that shelling is rather less and sniping rather more. The nearest German trenches are now 550 to 600 yards from our line.

October 2nd.—(La Cour de Soupir.) Misty morning. Did not clear until 10 o'clock. As the Highland Light Infantry have such a long line on our right, we have had to take over from them one company's length along the edge of the wood, so we now have three companies in the trenches. In the mist this morning one of our scouts (Hurst), getting too near the German trenches, was shot, but whether killed or a wounded prisoner is not at present known.

October 3rd.—Our new bit of the line got some shelling this morning, and B Company lost 3 killed and 19 wounded.

October 4th.—Again some shelling at the same part of our trenches, and A Company, who were holding it, had 1 killed and 9 wounded, amongst the latter being Sergeant Dunn and Corporal Millgate. The Germans are now using high explosive shrapnel which, bursting fairly high, throws pieces backwards as well as forwards, and gets men although they may be well covered from the front. When Corporal Millgate was hit he was under an overhanging rock which looked quite a safe place. The Regiment received to-day a very generous and welcome gift of comforts, cigarettes, etc., from friends in South Oxfordshire and High Wycombe.

October 5th.—Still at La Cour de Soupir. Some shelling again at the same trenches, but a lot of trouble had been taken to make the

Digitized by Google

cover thoroughly good, and there were no casualties there, but 6 men were wounded by shrapnel in the farmyard. Our arrangements for holding the trenches are now as follows: D Company permanently in on the left, while A, B, and C take the remainder of the line, each with two days in and one day in reserve.

Captain Villiers, Royal Sussex Regiment, who has been with us in command of A Company since mobilization, went back to his own regiment.

October 6th.—Very few shells, and no damage. About 10 p.m. there was some infantry fire, probably started by one of our patrols meeting a German patrol. The fire was quite harmless, and we made little reply. It died down in about half an hour.

October 7th.—(La Cour de Soupir.) Our own artillery is now more active than that of the Germans. This is quite the reverse of what was the case three weeks ago, when we were first here.

Large consignments of presents from friends at home arrived yesterday and to-day, and were distributed to the men—clothing, cigarettes, tobacco, chocolate, etc. We have excellent food now, fresh meat and bread every day, also cheese, bacon, and jam, with a rum issue pretty often.

The officers' mess is in the cellar of the farm, which also acts as a bedroom (with straw laid down) for the headquarter officers and the commander of the reserve company. The farthest trenches being not more than 200 yards from headquarters, all officers are able to come to the mess, by reliefs, for meals.

October 8th.—The nights are now cold, with a white frost in the early morning; but the days are perfect, with a bright, warm sun. The country about this place is pretty, and there are some fine woods, in which one would enjoy walking about if the Germans would not drop shells into them. We were not shelled at all to-day. In the evening six officers arrived: Kirkpatrick, Murphy, Wingfield (3rd, late 2nd, Battalion), Pendavis (3rd Battalion), Titherington, and Filleul (3rd Somersetshire Light Infantry).

October 9th.—More shelling than usual to-day, and a good many fell in the farm, but no one was hit. Luckily the first shell was a bit wide, and so gave us warning to get into the cellars and caves —the only safe places. We get mails regularly every day now.

October 10th.—They let us off to-day. We did not get a single shell at us all day. At night there was some firing on the right

Digitized by Google

which we heard afterwards was an unsuccessful attack on the 1st Division. The casualties in the Regiment up to date are 5 officers and 32 men killed, and 5 officers and 110 men wounded.[1]

October 11th–12th.—Still at La Cour de Soupir, but preparing to move. Our part of the line was not shelled on these two days. At night one of our sentry groups, in advance of the trenches, shot a German scout, who was within 300 yards of our line. He was a magnificent man, and must have stood 6 ft. 4 in. Apparently he belonged to the 8th Grenadier Guard Regiment, and on his shoulder strap were the letters F. W. R. in monogram.

October 13th.—(La Cour de Soupir.) Another very quiet day. A little rain. At night we were relieved by the 254th French Regiment. The Commanding Officer and his second in command came up in the afternoon to look round, and were quite pleased. At 11 p.m. the French battalion to relieve us arrived, and we were able to march off half an hour after midnight. The Germans appeared to be nervous, and sent up a lot of lights [2] directly it got dark. Possibly they had news of the arrival of the French, and thought that we were being reinforced with a view to attacking them.

---

[1] Major Eden gives, in his diary, the result of a Regimental Court of Inquiry on missing men: "The Regiment has had only 9 men missing, of whom 5 have now been traced. This, I am sure, is a good record for a battalion all through the retreat from Mons." Later information showed that all the missing were eventually traced, and only one of them was a prisoner.—ED.

[2] It was on the Aisne that we first saw these lights used. Since then they have come into nightly use in trench warfare. Here, also, we had Véry pistols served out to us for the first time, but we did not make much use of them.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

FLANDERS.

Several causes had made it desirable to transfer the British Army from the Aisne to the north-west, in which direction both the Germans and the French had been manœuvring for some time, each with the idea of outflanking the other towards the seaboard. General Castelnau had brought the French 10th Army up on the left of the Allies in the endeavour to turn the flank of the Germans, who, however, met the movement by pushing farther north, until the opposing forces reached the neighbourhood of Lens and Lille.

Early in October Sir John French had realized that, the fighting on the Aisne having taken the form of trench warfare, the British Army would be more usefully employed on the left of the French, which would, moreover, give him the advantage of being nearer the Channel ports, and so shorten his lines of communication. General Joffre having acquiesced, the transfer commenced on the 3rd October, and was completed by the 19th, French troops relieving the British on the Aisne. The relief in the face of the enemy of so large a force was a very fine performance, and was carried out without a hitch.

In the meanwhile the Germans were pressing on Antwerp, whither the Belgian Army had withdrawn previous to the entry of the enemy into Brussels in August. On the 7th October the British 3rd Cavalry Division and the 7th Division arrived from England at Zeebrugge, and although too late to assist in the defence of Antwerp,[1] which fell on the 9th October, were

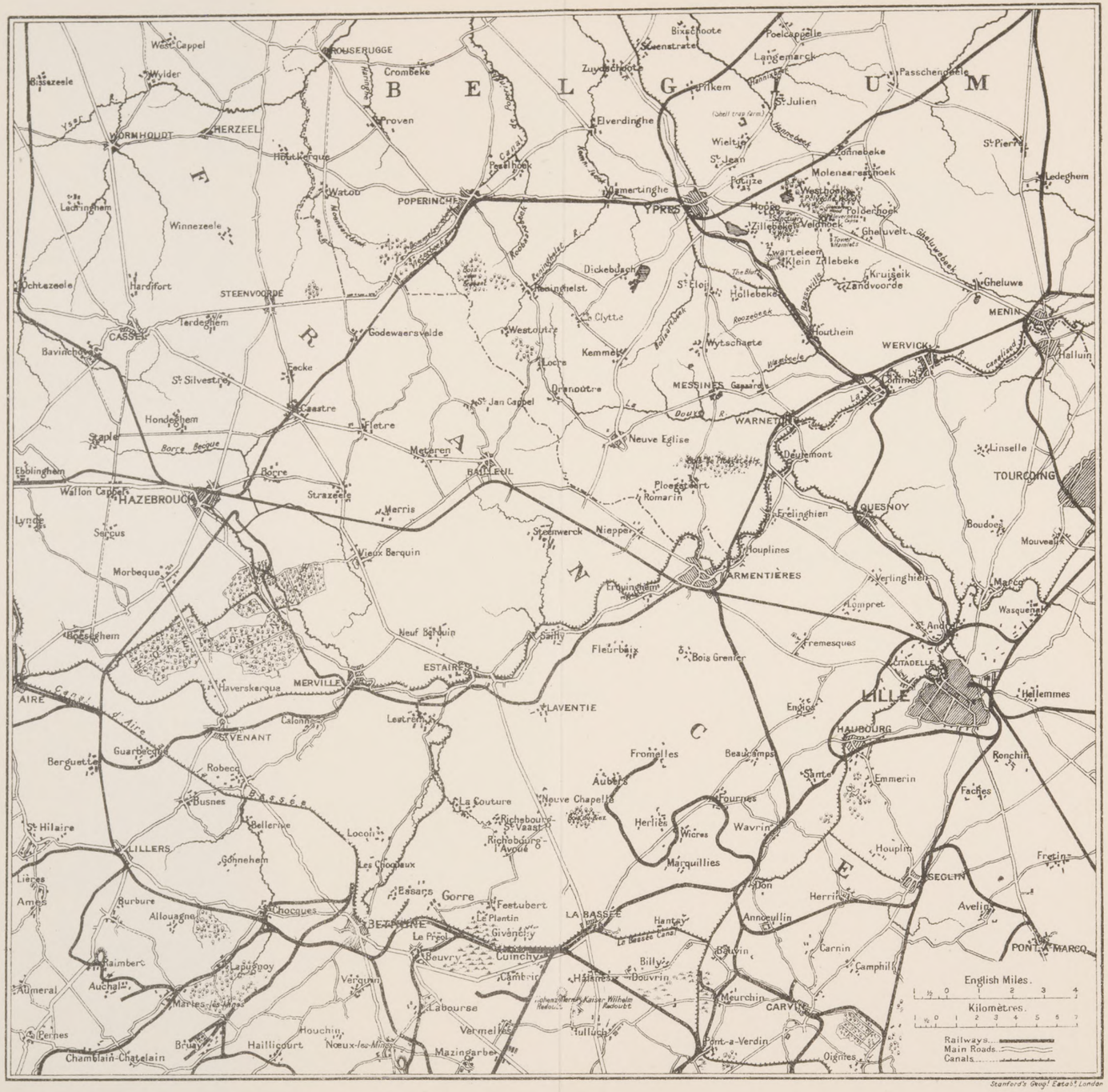
[1] Some 7,000 British were present during the latter stages of the defence of Antwerp, but they did not form part of Sir John French's army. They composed

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

MAP 4.


B E L G I U M
F R A N C E
West Cappel
Wylder
Bissezeele
DROUSERUGGE
Crombeke
Proven
Houtkerque
WORMHOUDT
HERZEELL
Watou
POPERINGHE
Lederingham
Winnezeele
Ochtezeele
Hardifort
STEENVOORDE
CASSEL
Terdeghem
Godewaersvelde
Bavinchove
St Silvestre
Fecke
Caestre
Hondeghem
Staple
Ebblinghem
Wallon Cappel
HAZEBROUCK
Lynde
Sercus
Morbeque
Boeschepe
Vieux Berquin
Meteren
Borre
Strazeele
Merris
Steenwerck
Nieppe
BAILLEUL
Neuve Eglise
Ploegsteert
Romarin
Wytschaete
Messines
Kemmel
Locre
Dranoutre
St Jan Cappel
Westoutre
Clytte
Dickebusch
Reninghelst
Roodebeek
Elverdinghe
Zuydschoote
Bixschoote
Poelcappelle
Langemarck
Passchendaele
Pilkem
St Julien
Wieltje
St Jean
Potijze
YPRES
Zillebeke
Zwarteleen
Klein Zillebeke
Hollebeke
St Eloi
Zandvoorde
Houthem
Wervicq
Gheluwe
MENIN
Halluin
Tourcoing
Linselles
Deulemont
Warneton
Comines
Frelinghien
Quesnoy
Boudoes
Mouveaux
Armentières
Erquinghem
Lompret
Verlinghem
Marcq
Wasquehal
St Andre
Fremesques
Bois Grenier
Fleurbaix
Sailly
Neuf Berquin
Estaires
Merville
Haverskerque
Aire
Calonne
Lestrem
Laventie
Citadelle
Lille
Hellemmes
Haubourg
Ronchin
Faches
Emmerin
Santes
Fromelles
Beaucamps
Aubers
Fournes
Herlies
Wavrin
Wicres
Marquillies
Houplin
Seclin
Fretin
Don
Herrin
Annoeullin
Avelin
Pont-a-Marcq
Carnin
Camphin
Salvin
Billy
Douvrin
Hallennes
Meurchin
Carvin
Oignies
Pont-a-Vendin
Fouquieres
Violaines
Richebourg St Vaast
Richebourg l'Avoué
Nouve Chapelle
La Couture
Busnes
Bellerive
Locon
St Hilaire
LILLERS
Gonnehem
Les Choquaux
Lieres
Ames
Burbure
Allouagne
Chocques
Essars
Gorre
Festubert
Le Plantin
Givenchy
BETHUNE
Le Preol
Beuvry
Cuinchy
La Bassee
Hantay
La Bassee Canal
Raimbert
Auchel
Aumeral
Lapugnoy
Vaudricourt
Labourse
Marles-les-Mines
Vermelles
Houchin
Noeux-les-Mines
Haillicourt
Bruay
Bernes
Chamblain-Chatelain
Mazingarbe
Hulluch
Loos
Haisnes
Kaiser Wilhelm Redoubt
Hohenzollern Redoubt
Pont Fixe
Ligny
Ecluse
Ecluse
Ecluse

in sufficient time to help materially in the withdrawal of the Belgian army from the fortress.

At this time General Foch was in command of all French troops north of Noyon, with his headquarters at Doullens, where he was visited by the British Commander-in-Chief, and joint plans of operations were decided on. Briefly, these were that the IInd Army Corps was to join on to the French left on the Bethune-Lille road, on arrival at the line of the Aire-Bethune Canal wheel to the right (eastward), and attack the flank of the enemy menacing the left of the French Army; the IIIrd Army Corps, as soon as it came up from the Aisne, was to move on the left of the IInd Corps, and prolong the line northwards; while the 3rd Cavalry Division and the 7th Division were to cooperate as soon as they had completed their work in connexion with the withdrawal of the Belgian Army from Antwerp.

Between the 11th and 19th October everything went like clockwork; the two Corps wheeled up to the east, and, after heavy fighting, reached a line running roughly from Givenchy, through Violaines and Fromelles, to the north of Armentières; and the 7th Division and 3rd Cavalry Division, which had reached Ypres from Dixmude on the 14th, had pushed forward 6 miles east, and occupied Zonnebeke, Kruseik, and Zandvoorde. This was, however, the end of the forward movement, for the Germans, set free from the siege of Antwerp to the number of some 90,000, were already arriving on the scene.

---

three brigades of the newly-raised Naval Division which were dispatched from England direct to Antwerp on 3 October. In the retreat a considerable number, going astray, crossed the Dutch frontier and were interned; others fell into the hands of the Germans; while the remainder reached Ostend and returned to England, the force depleted by one third of its numbers within the week. They were wholly untrained and only partly equipped.

Digitized by Google

Turning now to the Ist Army Corps, the last to leave the Aisne, and that with which we are more immediately concerned, we find that it reached the neighbourhood of Ypres on the night of the 19th October, and, as the enemy appeared to be endeavouring to push through on the northern flank of the British, between Ypres and the sea, it was decided to dispatch Haig's corps to the north of Ypres, to join on to the left of the 7th Division.

LIEUT.-COLONEL H. R. DAVIES'S DIARY CONTINUED.

October 14th.—(La Cour de Soupir to Vauxcéré, thence to Fismes, and on by train.) Left the trenches at La Cour de Soupir at 12.30 a.m., and marched by Soupir and Mard to Vauxcéré, going into billets there at 3.30 a.m., and getting a little sleep. In the afternoon we marched to Fismes, and left by train at 6.20 p.m. We had to crowd 45 men into trucks intended for 40, and even then had to leave the whole of B Company behind, to come on by the next train. This was because Brigade Headquarters were in our train, and the French arrangements do not admit of the size of the train being increased. The officers were fairly well off, some in carriages and some in open trucks with the wagons, but the men were very crowded.

Information received to-day that Worthington had been awarded the Cross of Chevalier of the Legion of Honour.

We are now on the way round to Belgium again, though we do not yet know exactly where.

October 15th.—(By train to Hazebrouck and on to Morbeck.) In the train all day, by Amiens, Boulogne, Calais, and St. Omer. Not a very well-arranged journey, as there was only one proper halt—that at Amiens. Lost two horses out of a truck, and a man was very seriously injured by climbing on to the look-out (found on some French trucks) and then being struck when the train entered the big tunnel north of Boulogne. We went very slowly, and did not arrive at Hazebrouck until 11.30 p.m. Dillon, who had gone on ahead as Brigade Billeting Officer, met us, and leaving one company to unload the transport, we marched to Morbeck,[1] about 3 miles south. Very good and clean billets; the best we have had so far.

[1] Morbeck is the Flemish spelling; Morbecque the French. Although the place is in France, the people all speak Flemish among themselves.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

FROM MAJOR EDEN'S DIARY.

October 16*th*.—(At Morbecque.) It was nearly 3 a.m. before we got to bed, but some kind people provided us with hot coffee, which was very welcome. After enjoying a good sleep in a clean and comfortable bed, breakfasted at 9.30. Excellent brown bread, fresh milk, butter, and even eggs obtainable here, and every one made the most of the good fare. The whole of the 5th Brigade assembled here now. The Germans have scarcely been near this place. The day passed in peace and quiet until 8 p.m., when all, except company commanders, had gone to bed, and then came orders that we were to be prepared to move at dawn.

October 17*th*.—(Morbecque to Godewaersvelde, 12 miles.) Marched off at 7 a.m., and passed through Hazebrouck and Steenvoorde. A raw and chilly day. At 11.30 a.m. we reached the outskirts of the town of Godewaersvelde, where at 1 p.m. we went into very fair billets. Visited by the Divisional Commander in the afternoon.

October 18*th*.—(Halt at Godewaersvelde). A quiet day. Provisions plentiful here, but the mails failed us.

October 19*th*.—(Godewaersvelde to Poperinghe, 7 miles.) We received to-day 30 boxes of gifts from England—a most generous supply of good things. It took from 9 a.m. to 1 p.m. to divide them amongst companies. We were settling down for another quiet night, when orders came at 3.30 p.m. that we were to march at 4.30 p.m. Companies were heavily loaded with the gifts which they had received in the morning. Crossed the Belgian frontier and reached Poperinghe at 7 p.m., but not settled into billets until 10 p.m., as the Belgian system differs from that of the French, in that it is first necessary to obtain an order (*billet de logement*) for certain houses to be occupied. The billets are quite good. I was told to-day that several doctors had remarked on the exceptional fitness and good marching of the Regiment. The following is a list of officers now present with the Regiment :—

Lieut.-Colonel H. R. DAVIES, Commanding.
Major A. J. F. EDEN, Senior Major.
Lieut R. B. CROSSE, Adjutant.
Lieut. J. A. SOUTHEY, Machine-gun Officer.
Lieut. R. J. BRETT, Transport Officer.
Captain A. S. FIELD, Quartermaster.
Captain L. V. THURSTON, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.

Digitized by Google

A Company.

Captain E. H. KIRKPATRICK.
Captain H. M. DILLON.
2nd Lieut. F. PEPYS.
2nd Lieut. D. H. W. HUMFREY.[1]
2nd Lieut. H. V. PENDAVIS.[1]

B Company.

Captain H. L. WOOD.
Lieut. C. S. BAINES.
Lieut. G. M. R. TURBUTT.[1]
2nd Lieut. J. S .C. MARSHALL.
2nd Lieut. L. A. FILLEUL.[2]

C Company.

Captain A. W. N. PONSONBY.
Lieut. C. F. MURPHY.
2nd Lieut. A. D. TYLDEN-PATTEN-SON.
2nd Lieut. G. W. TITHERINGTON.
2nd Lieut. F. W. C. CHIPPINDALE.

D Company.

Captain A. H. HARDEN.
Lieut. W. G. TOLSON.
Lieut. A. V. SPENCER.[1]
Lieut. M. ff. R. WINGFIELD.[1]
2nd Lieut. P. F. NEWTON-KING.

Acting Sergeant-Major F. BARNES.
Quartermaster-Sergeant A. J. SAKER.

[1] 3rd Battalion.

[2] 3rd Somerset Light Infantry.

Digitized by Google

FIRST BATTLE OF YPRES.

LANGEMARCK.

The Ist Army Corps moved immediately after its destination had been settled, the 2nd Division receiving orders to join up with the left of the 7th Division. The 4th (Guards') Brigade on the right of the 2nd Division met with a good deal of opposition before gaining touch with the 22nd Brigade (7th Division) to the north of Zonnebeke. On the same day (21st October) the 5th Brigade, on the left of the 4th, advancing towards Poelcapelle, at once became heavily engaged with the enemy, and during the fight which ensued suffered considerable losses. Full accounts, by Colonel Davies and others, of the day's work will be found in the following pages, and it is only necessary to say here that, after the fight, the Ist Army Corps found the resistance so severe that it was forced to stay its advance, consolidate the ground gained, and endeavour to withstand the shock of the German attacks, which were delivered during the next two days and nights.

In view of the immense amount of fighting in which the British were engaged from this time forward, it may be as well to recapitulate the general situation of Sir John French's army at the end of October. Taking the line from south to north : Givenchy-Fromelles-Ploegsteert, occupied by the IInd Army Corps, IIIrd Army Corps, and 19th Infantry Brigade, with the Lahore Division and Conneau's French cavalry in support. Then, for some eight miles, between Ploegsteert and Hollebeke, came Allenby's cavalry, linking up the IIIrd Army Corps with the 7th Division (Capper). And, lastly, the northern part of the line, Hollebeke-Ypres-Langemarck, held by the 7th Division and the

Digitized by Google

Ist Army Corps, with the 3rd Cavalry Division (Byng) and a French Territorial Division in support, and another French Territorial Division on the left of the Ist Army Corps.

LIEUT.-COLONEL H. R. DAVIES'S DIARY CONTINUED.

October 20th.—(Poperinghe to near Pilkem, 9 miles.) Not a very long night to enjoy our billets, as we were on the march again at 6.45 a.m., moving viâ Elverdinghe to Pilkem. Here a lot of French Territorials passed us retiring. The Brigade was put into a sort of outpost line from 1 mile south-east of Pilkem to Steenstrate. The part taken up by the Regiment was from near Pilkem towards the north-west, the Highland Light Infantry being on our left near Steenstrate, and the Worcestershire on our right.

Some rain at night. Headquarters were established in a little farmhouse, where we got shelter, but not much sleep. A Company were also in shelter in some buildings of the same farm, as they were in reserve. The other three companies were chiefly in trenches which we dug in the evening. We have not seen any of the enemy to-day, and an attack by night does not seem likely, as the country is a good deal cut up by ditches.

At one time, in the middle of the night, there was a lot of cheering, but from no part of our line could I get any information as to the cause of it, though it was supposed to have come from French Territorials.

October 21st.—(Fight near Langemarck.) About 3 a.m. I was sent for to go to Brigade Headquarters (in the village of Pilkem) to get orders. The Brigade was ordered to rendezvous, at 6.30 a.m., at the road junction half a mile north of St. Julien.

When we arrived at this rendezvous, orders were received that the 1st Division would attack Poelcapelle from Langemarck, while the 2nd Division, on their right, would advance on Passchendaele, the movement to be by the left, i.e., the 1st Division directing.

The 5th Brigade orders were that we on the left and the Worcestershire on the right were to be in front line, the Highland Light Infantry on the left, and the Connaught Rangers on the right in second line.

I deployed along the Langemarck-Zonnebeke road, with our left on the Haanixbeck,[1] so as to get touch with the 1st Division.

[1] Also known as Lekkerboterbeek.

Digitized by Google

Front line was C Company (Ponsonby) on the left, D Company (Harden) on the right; second line, B Company (Wood) on the left, and A Company (Kirkpatrick) on the right.

Between 8 and 9 a.m. we got in touch with a company of the South Wales Borderers—the right regiment of the 1st Division The Captain of the company said that the 1st Division were advancing. So I went back to the Brigade Commander (Lieut.-Colonel Westmacott, Worcestershire Regiment), told him, and received orders from him to advance.

By this time shrapnel had begun to fall, but it did not do a great amount of harm. The advance began, the men going forward under fire excellently. Bullets came almost at once, and it soon became evident that most of our losses were from fire from the left front, from ground which the 1st Division were to attack.

A good many men were hit, but in spite of losses we advanced quickly and steadily, delay being caused chiefly by the difficulty of getting through the thick fences.[1] We finally got a line with our left about the *c* of Haanixbeck (Map $\frac{1}{100,000}$, Hazebrouck sheet), and our right joining up with the Worcestershire on the lower part of the Stroombeek. Here the fire from the left enfiladed us, and the Captain of the South Wales Borderers' Company sent a message to say he was in front of the rest of the 1st Division, who did not seem to be coming on. It was obviously impossible for us to go on unless the 1st Division came on also, so we stayed where we were, hanging on to the ground we had gained.

The Germans had trenches in front, the nearest being about 300 yards away, along the track which leads from near the junction of the Haanixbeck and Stroombeek to the *m* of Lange*m*arck.

[1] In "The First Seven Divisions," by Lord Ernest Hamilton (London, Hurst and Blackett, 1916), the following account is given:—"Just short of the Haanebeck stream the further progress of the Oxford Light Infantry was checked by a long hedge, interwoven with barbed wire. In the middle of the hedge was an open gateway, apparently offering the only opportunity for advance. Every officer and man, however, who attempted the passage of the gate was mown down by machine-gun fire. Here was killed Captain Harden, Lieuts. Turbutt and Murphy, and 2nd Lieuts. Marshall and Filleul, whilst Major Eden, Captains Wood and Kirkpatrick, and 2nd Lieuts. Chippindale and Newton-King were wounded. Eventually Captain Tolson and Lieut. Spencer succeeded in running the gauntlet of the gateway, and got through. At the same time the hedge was broken down in more than one place, and the 52nd dashed forward and captured the position. Their losses in men amounted to over 200 in a quarter of an hour." This account is far from accurate. There were about 30 casualties at the gate, and very few if any of the officers named were killed or wounded at this spot.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

Their men could be seen running into these trenches, either to occupy them or to reinforce them, and our front line was able to shoot a good many of them as they did this.

I had been coming along with A Company on the right of the second line, and at this stage got into the upper storey of a farm-house,[1] about 200 yards behind our front line, just north of the Kilometre post 7. From here I could see to some extent in three directions. I kept looking northwards, hoping for the appearance of the 1st Division, but nothing more appeared beyond the one company of the South Wales Borderers, who, unsupported on their left, were unable to advance any farther. From the front and right front there were movements of Germans towards the front of the Worcestershire on our right, but they were well taken on with shrapnel by our artillery, and they made no real attack in that direction.

The fight was now becoming stationary, and remained so for the rest of the day. There were occasional outbursts of firing, but at other times it died down almost entirely. I had sent messages to say that we wanted the 1st Division up in line with us before we could advance farther, but they did not come on.[2]

At dusk we began to entrench. It was a fairly good line that we had got, and a company of the Highland Light Infantry, under Mayne, came up on our left, and filled a gap between us and the company of the South Wales Borderers.

During the night we were able to get up rations and ammunition, also the big entrenching tools from the tool wagons; and water-bottles were filled at the farm where I had my headquarters.

A great many of the wounded were brought into our farm, but there was some delay in getting up the ambulances, owing, I believe, to a mistaken order having been given to them by someone to turn back when they were on their way up. Having some 50 wounded in the farm, with the probability of its being shelled, was a great anxiety; but to my intense relief some motor-ambulances arrived just in time, and we were able to get all the wounded away before daylight.

[1] Subsequently shown on the map as New Houses.

[2] It was not until General French's Dispatches came out that we knew the reason of this. Apparently the French cavalry on the left of the 1st Division had moved away, and it was therefore necessary for the 1st Division to extend so far out to their left that they were not sufficiently strong to advance on such a wide front. This was unfortunate; for I think that if the 1st Division had been able to come on, we should have taken the German trenches.—H. R. D

Digitized by Google

This was our first big fight. The men advanced splendidly, and officers and N.C.O.'s did their duty magnificently. There was always an absolute readiness to advance on the part of the men.

Our losses this day were about 220 killed and wounded,[1] including a good many officers. Among the killed were Harden, Murphy, Turbutt, and Filleul, Marshall mortally wounded,[2] and Eden, Wood, Kirkpatrick, Chippindale, and Newton-King wounded. We lost also several good N.C.O.'s, including Corporal Hodges, who was given a posthumous D.C.M. for his gallantry in this fight.

We had a quiet night as far as fighting went, but much work in digging, and serving out rations, ammunition, and water, as well as in bringing in and sending away the wounded. The stretcher-bearers did excellent work.

Extract from Major Eden's Diary.

Just as we started our advance at 9 a.m., heavy shell-fire opened, and caused a great many casualties to the left portion of our Brigade. Wood and Marshall were badly wounded by shell almost at once, and I had the bad luck to get a bullet in my right hand, necessitating my going back to the dressing-station, which had been established at a small estaminet by the roadside. The whole road and neighbourhood was plastered with shell and rifle bullets throughout the day, until 5 p.m., when the enemy ceased firing on account of the failing light. At 7 p.m. I went in search of our Regimental Headquarters, and found them at a large farm. Severe fighting had been going on all day, and only about 1,500 yards of ground gained. Heard how the Regiment had suffered, as regards both officers and men, but I was thankful to find the Colonel and Crosse quite safe. At 8.30 p.m., the ambulances being so busy, I marched a party of 36 wounded down to St. Julien, a mile and a half in rear, where, in a clearing hospital, we were well looked after for the night.[3]

Lieut.-Colonel Davies's Diary continued.

October 22nd.—(On the Haanixbeck—near Langemarck). During the day there was not much infantry fire, nor was there much

[1] The official list shows the following casualties in the Regiment:—Killed, 4 officers and 61 men; died of wounds, 1 officer; wounded, 5 officers and 143 men; missing (believed killed), 3 men; total casualties, 217 of all ranks.—Ed.

[2] He died two days later.—H.R.D.

[3] Major Eden was sent to England a few days later, and was kept at home until the following January.—Ed.

Digitized by Google

artillery fire on our portion of the trenches. I was still able to live in the farm most of the day.

The companies in our line were much mixed up, and I did not try to sort them out. It was much better for the men to remain in the trenches which they themselves had dug, and watching ground which they knew. Officers were in charge of different parts of the line, usually with some men of their own company and men of other companies mixed up with them. On the right of the main road was Dillon; on the road, Tolson; on the immediate left of the road, Baines; farther to the left, Kirkpatrick (who, in spite of wounds in the neck and shoulder, stuck to duty for 24 hours after being hit); and on the extreme left, Ponsonby.

In the late afternoon the Germans began to shell us. They made rather a special mark of the farm, and soon succeeded in setting it on fire. However, I had had a good trench already dug behind the farm, and into this Regimental Headquarters moved without having any casualties.

Soon afterwards (about 5.30 p.m.), just as it was getting dark, a fairly heavy attack was made, on the part of the trenches near the St. Julien-Poelcappelle road, by about a battalion of Germans. The bulk of the attack was delivered a little to the right (east) of the road, and was enfiladed by some men under Tolson who lay along the road. Three men were actually lying in the culvert by which the Haanixbeck crosses the road, and did good execution. The leading Germans got within 25 yards of our trenches, but then could stand it no longer, and ran back.[1]

In this attack the Germans came on in thick lines, but our men were very steady, and we lost only 1 killed and 1 wounded. Another 6 men were killed and 8 wounded at other times to-day.

During the day I had had orders that the Worcestershire and ourselves were to retire after nightfall to a position about half a mile behind, so as to be in line with the 1st Division. I protested strongly against this, as we were well able to hold our position and it did not appear difficult for the 1st Division to advance until level with us. My protest was forwarded by Westmacott to General Monro, commanding the 2nd Division, who replied that although he appreciated our disinclination to give up the ground gained, it was necessary for us to retire, so as to conform to the general line

[1] The next morning we found 4 wounded Germans near our trenches and brought them in. We were able to count 70 of them lying dead.— H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

of the army. To my great relief, however, the order to retire was cancelled at night—possibly because of the attack which the Germans had made. A considerable part of the night was spent in burying our dead of yesterday.

October 23rd.—(On the Haanixbeck, near Langemarck.) A good deal of artillery fire, and sometimes infantry and machine-gun fire from the German trenches. In the afternoon they shelled both the farm and the trenches. A trench just west of the main road, where Baines was in command, was smashed in by H.E. shells, but the men luckily suffered little harm. They were ordered to retire about 50 yards, until the shelling subsided, and re-occupy the trench if the German infantry attacked.

At 5.30 p m. an attack was again made by the enemy—this time by a larger force than on last evening They attacked chiefly on the east of the main road, coming on in very thick lines, and in places got close up to our trenches, but our men were absolutely cool and steady, and fired well. The attack appearing to be more formidable than that of yesterday, I reinforced with every man, until the firing line was as full as it could be. I also succeeded in getting up ammunition, and after the repulse of the attack every man was again well supplied. Our men in the culvert again did great execution.[1]

The result of the attack was as before; some Germans got very close, but in the end they turned and ran back behind the next hedge, 150 yards off. Here they remained for some time, with a good deal of shouting, which appeared to come from officers trying to get their men on again. Anyhow, no further assault was made, and they evidently retired to their own trenches.[2] Our casualties were 2 men killed and 5 wounded. Ponsonby and Humfrey were also wounded.

In the evening we received orders that the French were to relieve us here, and, at about 10 p.m., the French 125th Regiment arrived and took over from us and the Worcestershire. The first part of the relief went off quietly, but just as we were beginning the relief of the part of the line west of the main road, rifle and machine-gun

[1] For his services here Private Hastings was subsequently awarded the D.C.M.—H. R. D.

[2] The enemy's losses must have been very severe, for the French who relieved us afterwards reported that they counted 740 dead Germans the next morning in front of this part of the line. These would include the 70 whom we had killed on the evening of the 22nd.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

fire started from the enemy's trenches, and some shrapnel was fired at the farm and the road. This interrupted matters, as we had to lie down while the firing was going on. Afterwards the relief was interrupted three or four times in the same way; but we got through it at last. Luckily none of our men were hit during all this, but I believe that both the Worcestershire and the French lost a few men.

Additional notes on the three days' fighting, supplied shortly afterwards by Captain and Adjutant R. B. Crosse :—

October 21*st*, 1914.—Cold, raw morning. Regimental Headquarters were in a farm across the road from that one occupied by A (Captain Kirkpatrick's) Company. There had been shouting and bursts of firing all night from our right front, and a big force of French Cavalry passed our flank, I believe, going forward during darkness. Just before dawn Lieut.-Colonel Davies was sent for to go to Brigade Headquarters and to get operation orders at once. I went with him, but we lost our way, and only arrived in time to get the orders and return to move off with the Regiment to the position of assembly. We formed mass in a field just in rear of the Langemarck-St. Julien road, which was afterwards shelled when we had left it. The companies were moved off to their allotted positions, and the Colonel and I rode down the Langemarck road to get touch with the 1st Division, and returned just as the shelling of the road began. The infantry advance started in exact Aldershot formation, and the lines shook out in proper skirmishing order. There seemed at first to be little or no firing against us, but it began before very long. We left Regimental Headquarters, personnel, bicycles, etc., near the dressing-station, and took forward Lance-Corporal Blackwell and Private Richardson (signallers) as orderlies. Blackwell was badly wounded in the leg later in the day, but Richardson remained with us throughout. The Colonel several times remarked how steadily and well the Regiment was going forward.

There was a great deal of trouble in getting through or under the various kinds of fences and obstacles.

As we reached the line of the farm, which later became Regimental Headquarters, the advance seemed to be held up. There was a good deal of fire coming obliquely from the left; and, from the top storey of the farm, we could see no forward movement on

Digitized by Google

our left, but heavy German artillery fire on the exits from Langemarck Village. Lieut.-Colonel Wolfe-Murray (H.L.I.) and his Adjutant came up into this room, which made a good observation place, and remained with us till dusk.

I went with the Colonel along a hedge just in front of the farm to see D Company. Captain Harden saw us, and ran across the road to us, although the Colonel called out to him not to come. He came, however, and was explaining where his Company was, when a bullet went straight through his head and killed him at once. On our way back we saw a man who told us that Lieut. Murphy had just died of his wounds, and that his body was about 50 yards away under a haystack.

There was great difficulty in getting vehicles to come and take away the wounded, but when we were almost despairing of their coming, a motor-ambulance convoy arrived, and the last man was removed just at dawn.

It was very necessary to clear this farm, as it was highly probable that it would be shelled in the day.

It was actually shelled, set on fire, and burnt to the ground the next evening.

Regimental Headquarters moved to a trench 25 yards in rear of it.

When the farm was set on fire, several Regimental Scouts, and particularly No. 8777 Private Hart, did very well in bringing up ammunition from a store (which we had made close to the farm) while it was actually blazing.

There was a good deal of shelling of our trenches on the 23rd, and in the late afternoon enemy's infantry could be distinctly seen moving about in the root fields on our left front. Lieut. Baines's part of the line, just on the left of the Poelcappelle-St. Julien road, was badly shelled, and he saved a great many casualties by very cleverly withdrawing his company to the steep bank of the stream in rear and occupying the shell-holes, which he connected up and made into a trench as soon as the shelling ceased.

The following casualties occurred on the 21st October :—

Killed.

Captain A. H. HARDEN. Lieut. G. M. R. TURBUTT.
Lieut. C. F. MURPHY. 2nd Lieut. L. A. FILLEUL.

And 61 other ranks.

Digitized by Google

Wounded.

Major A. J. F. Eden
Captain H. L. Wood.
Captain E. H. Kirkpatrick.
2nd Lieut. J. S. C. Marshall (died of wounds).
2nd Lieut. P. F. Newton-King.
2nd Lieut. F. W. C. Chippindale.
And 143 other ranks.

Missing.

3 men.

Total casualties, 217 officers and men.

The missing are probably all either killed or wounded, as we held all ground gained, so it is practically impossible that there should have been any prisoners.

The casualties on the 22nd amounted to 15, i.e., 7 men killed and 8 wounded; while on the 23rd October 2 men were killed and Captain A. W. N. Ponsonby, 2nd Lieut. D. H. W. Humfrey, and 5 men were wounded.

From the *Oxford Times* of 21st November 1914 :—

Officer's Graphic Narrative.

The following letter is written by an officer [1] of the Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry to his sister, and is interesting as showing what the Regiment has accomplished at the front :—

October 22.

We are in the middle of the most furious battle it is possible to imagine, but I have got a few men here of three regiments entrenched, which I managed to do last night, and we have got well in; and as I can do no more for the present, here goes. We attacked yesterday with two divisions (of about 20,000 men each), so something decisive ought to be the result, but I only know what has happened in my brigade. We got under fire almost at once. I was the right-hand company of the second line, and as soon as we got into line ready to advance they turned their guns on to us like a hose. We had to wait a bit to let the first line get on, and a good many people got hit. When the first line got on, I went forward

[1] Captain H. M. Dillon.—Ed.

Digitized by Google

at once, and ran until I got to a ditch and put 50 men into it. All the officers of the first line company in front of me, bar one, were down by now, so the only thing was to get on at all costs and get our rifles into the devils. Went on again, but the men fell fast as we advanced. Collected about 100 men at some hay-stacks, but the wounded were rushing in from all sides for cover, so went on again. Got to farm buildings with 12 men and had a few minutes' rest. Went on again into lane, where I found four officers, and it seemed impossible to get on, and I found only three of my men had got on. I had to go back to the farm to try to collect some men, but when I got there could find nobody, and I don't know now where they got to. Started coming back, when I saw there was a deep furrow in a field on my right with some men in it, which I thought must be them, so went through. There was no shell-fire now, but we were fairly snowed on by rifles and machine-guns from God knows where, and had to crawl on elbows. When I got on about 60 yards I found they were not my men, but some of another regiment. While I was debating what to do, a man ran to me; he had six holes in him, and asked me to bandage him. He had no dressing, but I covered all the wounds bar one, for which I had no dressing—not a very good start for a battle, as I got covered in blood, and shall not get a chance to wash for perhaps a week. Got on to hedge, and at last discovered German position. —— was there with some men. The other officer and most of his men had been killed. Opened fire at, I suppose, about 10 a.m. 21st, and am still in the same spot at 1 p.m. 22nd. One could not move hand or foot all day, but in the evening went down and got some men of a Scotch regiment. This made three different lots in my command. If we could have got another hundred men we could have rushed the Germans, but they did not want us to, as the next troops on our left were behind. A great pity, as the Germans evidently had had enough, and we could have got through. Dug deep trenches all night.

The fire this first day was beyond belief. High explosives, shrapnel, machine-guns, and rifles blended into one unending roar. I was completely deaf through the first part of the night, but a good deal has worn off now. To hark back to about 8 p.m. 21st: The fire slackened a good deal. I left —— in charge and went to find out what had happened. Found the Colonel, who was all right, thank God, but five other officers gone west. He told me to take command of all the troops I had with me, get the wounded away if possible, and dig. We did dig, and got the wounded away before

Digitized by Google

morning. The dead we pulled out into a field and covered them up; also got some rations and water. There was nothing to be done but await events. At dawn the guns opened again, but in trenches "c'est tout différent," and had a bit of sleep. At about 5 p.m. hell was absolutely let loose again and continued all night.

23rd, 3 p.m.—Have just driven back an attack. But to continue where I left off: The Germans attacked twice during the night, but we drove them off. This morning the ground was dotted with thick clusters of their dead. Just as I had written the above a tremendous shelling started, followed half an hour later by swarms of Germans, and we have been blazing away for all we have been worth. I think I dropped six myself, and we must have knocked over a lot. No casualties in my lot, owing to our good trenches. No more for the present.

October 25.

Since writing many things have happened, and I am still unwashed, but in another trench some miles from where I was. To continue where I left off: Far the most exciting thing that has happened to me happened on the evening of the 23rd. In my section, about 200 yards, I had about 150 men, and just where I was myself was the thinnest portion. The night came on rather misty and dark, and I thought several times of asking for reinforcements, but I collected a lot of rifles off the dead, loaded them, and put them along the parapet instead. All of a sudden about a dozen shells came down, and almost simultaneously two machine-guns and a tremendous rifle-fire opened on us. It was a most unholy din. The shells ripped open the parapet, and trees came crashing down. However, I was well under ground, and did not care much, but presently the guns stopped, and I knew then that we were in for it. I had to look over the top for about ten minutes, however, under their infernal Maxims, before I saw what I was looking for. It came with a suddenness that was the most startling thing I have ever known. The firing stopped, and I had been straining my eyes so that for a moment I could not believe them, but, fortunately, I did not hesitate long. A great grey mass of humanity was charging straight on to us not 50 yards off, about as far as our summer-house to the coach-house. Everybody's nerves were pretty well on edge, as I had warned them what to expect, and as I fired my rifle the rest all went off almost simultaneously.

One saw the great mass of Germans quiver. In reality some fell, some fell over them, and others came on. I have never shot so much

Digitized by Google

in such a short time; it could not have been more than a few seconds, and they were down. Suddenly one man—I expect an officer—jumped up and came on. I fired and missed, seized the next rifle, and dropped him a few yards off. Then the whole lot came on again, and it was the most critical moment of my life. Twenty yards more and they would have been over us in thousands, but our fire must have been fearful, and at the very last moment they did the most foolish thing they possibly could have done. Some of the leading men turned to the left for some reason, and they all followed like a great flock of sheep. We did not lose much time, I can give you my oath. My right hand is one huge bruise from banging the bolt up and down. I don't think one could have missed at the distance, and just for one short minute or two we poured the ammunition into them in boxfuls. My rifles were red-hot at the finish, I know, and that was the end of that battle for me. The firing died down, and out of the darkness a great moan came. Men with their arms and legs off trying to crawl away; others, who could not move, gasping out their last moments with the cold night wind biting into their broken bodies, and the lurid red glare of a farm-house showing up clumps of grey devils killed by the men on my left farther down. A weird, awful scene! Some of them would raise themselves on one arm or crawl a little distance, silhouetted as black as ink against the red glow of the fire. Well, I suppose, if there is a God, Emperor "Bill" will have to come to book some day. When one thinks of the misery of these wounded, and, later on, wives, mothers, and friends, and to think that this great battle, where there may have been half a million on either side, is only on a front of about 25 miles, and that this sort of thing is now going on on a front of nearly 400! To think that this man could have saved it all! The proposition is almost too vast to get a grip of. It is ruining lives of thousands. From the Bay of Biscay, through France, Germany, Russia, India, and right to Siberia, poor wives and people are waiting to hear. It really is the greatest calamity the world has ever seen.

Our losses in the battle were five officers killed and five wounded, and we have not had time to find out how many men, but I should think about 400.[1] There are not many of the original lot left now. Our Colonel is all right. I am the only captain, and the rest subalterns. It all fills me with a great rage. I know I have got

[1] Actually 207.—ED.

Digitized by Google

to stop my bullet some time, and it is merely a question of where it hits one, whether it is dead or wounded. We fight every day, and I am in support to-day in a trench with the shells coming along at intervals. The order may come at any minute to support an attack which is going on, and then it is just a chance. I don't care one farthing as far as I am concerned, but the whole thing is an outrage on civilization. The whole of this beautiful country is devastated —broken houses, broken bodies, blood, filth, and ruin everywhere! At about 11 p.m., 23rd, we were told that some French troops were to relieve us, and that we were to go to another part of the line. I was the first to be relieved, and started off. I got a good shelling on my way, but no damage. We got assembled at about 4.30 a.m., and I learnt who the dead were—Harden, Murphy, Marshall, Turbutt, and Filleul. We have now lost 20 officers, and we only started with 26. We marched until 6, then had some breakfast, and were hurried on here to support the 7th Division against a German attack. We had an uncomfortable job. I had two killed and eight wounded in my company. —— got another bullet through his sword-hilt; he is a very lucky young man, as it is the third time he has been the only one out of a bunch of five or six. I forgot to take any biscuit in the morning, so had nothing to eat all day, and got very exhausted. We got four hours' sleep, and this morning I have been detached with my company on the right of my brigade, which is in support to an attack going on in front. The firing has not been very heavy, and I can't see what is happening from my place, as there are woods all round. Again dead Germans wherever one goes. I suppose 5,000,000 men take a lot of killing, but we ought to have accounted for a good few by now. I suppose this is one big battle that has been going on for about six days. It is certainly bloody enough for anything. I am now second in command of the regiment, so if the Colonel gets hit I take command—rather too much responsibility for my liking; still, it might be a chance of doing something. I do hope the old man will be all right, but he moves about too much, and I am always in terror that he will get it. I have had two men wounded to-day up to date. Well, will finish now. I only wish I could wash and get into a comfortable bed. Not so much as washed my hands since the 20th, and only four hours' sleep. My trench is so narrow I can't sleep here. I will dig it bigger after dark, but then one is always anxious in case they should attack, and I don't sleep much under these conditions.

Digitized by Google

WOOD FIGHTING.

24TH OCTOBER–16TH NOVEMBER.

(*See Map* 5).

On the night of the 23rd–24th October, as described in Colonel Davies's diary, French reinforcements came up and took over the trenches held by the Ist Army Corps, and a portion of those held by the 7th Division, the 2nd Division being relieved by the 17th French Division (IXth Army Corps). These reinforcements arrived none too soon, for the 7th Division and the Ist Army Corps had been hard put to it to hold back the German masses, and the 7th Division had been very severely handled. The 2nd Division was, however, given no rest, and the 5th Brigade moved during the 24th to relieve a brigade of the 7th Division, a few miles to the east of Ypres, on the Ménin road. The line was now held as follows: North of the Ypres-Zonnebeke road, French troops; on their right, from Zonnebeke to Polygone Wood, 2nd Division; thence to the Menin road, 1st Division; onwards to Zandvoorde, 7th Division; and in the Zandvoorde trenches, the 3rd Cavalry Division. On the 25th the 5th Brigade moved to Polygone Wood, in which and in neighbouring woods the Regiment spent an anxious three weeks, constantly engaged, but only on two occasions having the opportunity of really distinguishing itself. These memorable days were the 31st October and the 11th November, on the latter of which it fell upon and utterly routed the Prussian Guard at Nonne Bosschen,[1] accounting for, it is said, no fewer than six hundred of the enemy.

[1] This encounter formed the subject of the spirited painting by Wollen, exhibited at the Royal Academy in 1916, which was purchased for the Art Gallery, Preston, Lancs., and subsequently acquired by the 52nd Officers' Mess. See Frontispiece of this volume.

Digitized by Google

On the 16th November the 5th Brigade was relieved by French troops, and marched to Ypres, in which historic town, it is of interest to note, the 2nd Battalion of the 52nd had been quartered exactly a century before, when it formed part of the army of occupation of Flanders.

LIEUT.-COLONEL DAVIES'S DIARY CONTINUED.

October 24th.—(Haanixbeck to the Halte, on the Menin road, east of Ypres, 5 miles south, and thence eastward to cross-roads beyond Gheluvelt, and back to Veldhoek, 13 miles in all during the day.) After being relieved by the French, we marched to St. Jean, where we joined up with the rest of the 5th Brigade, and marched through Potijze to the *halte*, where the railway crosses the Menin road, which we reached at 5 a.m. We slept for an hour or two, lying in a field, but the cold woke us up; so we had breakfast, and read letters which had come in. We had had a hard three days with scarcely any sleep, and were hoping for a day or two in reserve. This, perhaps, had been the intention, but it was not to be. During the night or early morning, the 7th Division had had some of their trenches taken, and we were consequently moved off in a great hurry, at 9 a.m., to their support.

We were sent up to Polygone Wood (Polygone de Zonnebeke),[1] and the Worcestershire and the Highland Light Infantry were pushed forward to clear this wood, at the eastern end of which were the trenches which had been lost. The Worcestershire had a fight in this wood, drove the enemy back, and got close up to the part where the captured trenches were situated. There they and the Highland Light Infantry established themselves in trenches. Meanwhile, the Connaught Rangers had been dispatched south, to Veldhoek, as a reserve to the 21st Brigade (7th Division), who were entrenched on the Ypres-Menin road.

We ourselves were kept in the west end of Polygone Wood, except B Company (Baines), who were sent as a support to the Scots Guards (of the 20th Brigade), in trenches at the north-east end of the wood. Later on—about 3.30 p.m.—I got orders to take the remaining three companies to the cross-roads,[2] near the 9th kilometre on the

[1] War Office squared Map, $\frac{1}{40,000}$, sheet 28, Ypres, squares K. 10 and L. 6.

[2] Square L. 23, central. To prevent obliteration of detail, the squares have been omitted from Map 5.

Digitized by Google

Menin road, as a support against a German attack in that direction. At the cross-roads there was to be a Staff Officer of the 7th Division, who would give me further orders. I was told to avoid passing through Gheluvelt, which was being shelled, by keeping to the north of it, and coming out on to the road about the 8th kilometre post.

With no exact knowledge of the position of either our own troops or of the Germans, it was rather a difficult job to take the Regiment across country like this. I went in front myself, and by worming along low ground, and obtaining some information from the Bedfordshire (7th Division), who were in trenches in front of Gheluvelt, as to what ground to avoid, we got to the 8th kilometre fairly successfully. The rear Company (A) did get caught at one place by a German machine-gun, and lost 1 killed and 4 wounded, but we were perhaps lucky to get off so easily. It was growing dark, and the evening was fortunately hazy, which helped us to move unobserved.

All this time there had been no sign of any fighting going on in this direction, though an occasional big German shell dropped on the road. I left the Regiment under cover of a steep bank at the side of the road near the 8th kilometre, and went on myself, with two buglers, to the appointed cross-roads. There was no sign of any Staff Officer, but with some difficulty I managed to find King, the Colonel of the Yorkshire Regiment (7th Division), in a trench. He said that there was nothing going on, and no need for support or reinforcements. As there seemed to be nothing to do, I went back to the Regiment and marched back to Veldhoek, where we bivouacked for the night in some buildings and an orchard on the south side of the road. Here I was able to get in touch with the headquarters of the 21st Brigade, under whose orders we had been temporarily placed. We got a few hours' sleep at night.

October 25th.—(Polygone Wood.) We again came under the orders of the 5th Brigade, and were ordered to relieve the Scots Guards (7th Division) in the north-eastern part of Polygone Wood. We moved early in the morning, and C and D Companies took over a bit of the line at the edge of the wood, with the Worcestershire and Highland Light Infantry on our right. Here we found B Company in support, and they rejoined us. Some of the 6th Brigade were partly in front of us, so that only half of our trenches were actually in the front line. We were shelled occasionally in the afternoon, and at intervals a few bullets came over, but on the whole we had a quiet time.

Digitized by Google

In the afternoon the 4th (Guards') Brigade made an attack, passing through the line to the right of us, and gained some ground. It is said that they also captured two guns.

A very wet night, which made things most unpleasant.

October 26th.—(Polygone Wood to Wood south-east of Westhoek.) About 1 p.m. got orders to go back into Divisional Reserve in the wood (K.14.b.) south-east of Westhoek (Eksternest), the rest of the Brigade being also distributed about here in reserve.

No sooner had we arrived in our place than we got orders to return to the place from which we had come, so as to support an attack by the 6th Brigade. By the time we had carried out these orders it was dark, and we were told that we could go back again into reserve. After this we had a quiet night, and were even able to have tea cooked—a rather unusual event in these days.

Regimental Headquarters got into a little house, and the companies made shelters in the wood, which afforded some protection from the weather.

October 27th.—(Wood south-east of Westhoek.) Had a quiet morning and part of the afternoon, but at 3 p.m. we were again sent up to the front to support an attack by the 6th Brigade, only, however, to be returned as not wanted when we got there. We are becoming a little tired of the extremely muddy track which leads along the north side of Polygone Wood.

October 28th.—(Wood south-east of Westhoek to Polygone Wood.) Again to support the 6th Brigade we marched, at 8 a.m., back to the north-east corner of Polygone Wood. The Connaught Rangers went on beyond Molenaaresthoek and relieved part of the 6th Brigade in their trenches, and the Highland Infantry went on in support of them. The Worcestershire and ourselves stayed in the north-east corner of Polygone Wood, and we dug fresh trenches where existing ones were not enough. On our first arrival some of the big howitzer shells did us some damage, but the shelling soon ceased. We had 1 man killed and 18 wounded, including Lieut. M. ff. R. Wingfield, who was badly wounded in the head.

October 29th.—(Polygone Wood.) Still in the same place in the morning. In the afternoon we were ordered to move to the north-west corner of Polygone Wood, where, with the Worcestershire and the King's (6th Brigade), we were in reserve under Lord Cavan, commanding the 4th (Guards') Brigade.

The Germans had made an attack about Gheluvelt, and had gained some ground, so it was thought that a reserve might be

Digitized by Google

wanted. However, the 3rd Brigade advanced and pushed the Germans back, the 7th Division also advancing on their right.

October 30th.—(Polygone Wood to near Zwarteleen, 4 miles south-west.) A quiet morning as far as we were concerned. An attack was made on the 6th Brigade, but was repulsed.

About 2.30 p.m. we were ordered off with the 2nd Grenadiers and the Irish Guards, under Lord Cavan, to reinforce the part of the line south of the Ypres-Menin road. The Grenadiers and Irish Guards were put in to dig trenches east of Klein Zillebeke, to fill a gap between the 1st Division on their left and cavalry on their right.

We were put in reserve west of Zwarteleen, and when we arrived there in the dark, were ordered to dig trenches commanding the road and railway, as a possible back position, if required. After digging the trenches I put the Regiment into a small wood close to the railway, and headquarters shared a farm with some of the 10th Hussars At about 10 p.m., just as we were going to sleep, I was ordered to send out two companies to connect the left of the Irish Guards with the right of the Gordon Highlanders.

The companies to go were A (Dillon) and B (Baines), and Crosse and I went with them. We woke up sleepy officers of the Irish Guards and Gordon Highlanders, but they knew nothing as to where we were intended to be used. In the end we found a company of sappers (of the 7th Division, I think) holding Groenenberg Farm (R. 4. a.) and the small wood to its north-west. They had apparently been promised relief, so I put A and B Companies in here, though there was barely room for both. A were in the farm, and B in the wood. In the latter were also some Irish Guards, while the Gordon Highlanders were on the left (east) of the farm. Some new trenches had to be dug in places.

If it had not been for the fact that there was a strong moonlight there would have been great difficulty in getting A and B Companies into position.

Crosse and I got back to our headquarters, where the other two companies had been left, at 4.30 a.m. (31st), and had only time for an hour's sleep.

October 31st.—(Woods near Zwarteleen.) The early morning was quiet in reserve, but later on in the morning there was a report (I believe false) that the Germans had broken into the big wood south-west of Klein Zillebeke, and we were ordered to dig trenches

Digitized by Google

facing this wood, with our left on a little mound (K. 22.c. O. 3)[1] which some Frenchmen were entrenching. Before we had got to work at this, I received urgent orders (1.30 p.m.) to take the two remaining companies—C (Tylden-Pattenson) and D (Tolson), as quickly as possible to a point north of Groenenberg Farm, where a German attack was expected.

I went by the road which turns north-east from a point just south-east of Zwarteleen (K. 22. d.O.1.), and after following this for about half a mile to a farmhouse (K. 23. c. 2. 7.), in a little gap between the woods, turned eastward to the re-entering corner of the wood (just below figure 23 on the map). I could not find anyone to tell me the situation, but soon saw Gordon Highlanders retiring to the north-east of Groenenberg Farm, as other troops on their left had already retired. The result of this was to make the position of A and B Companies insecure, since the Germans following up the Gordon Highlanders were looking into the left rear of the two companies. Soon afterwards therefore they began to withdraw. I now put C and D Companies into position where we were, to stop any further advance of the Germans on the south of the big wood; and as A and B came back, I lined them up along a ride facing eastward (K. 23. d. 6. 6.–5. 9.). I also sent two platoons of C and some regimental scouts to the north (to about K. 23. a. 8. 2.), to prevent any of the enemy getting round our left flank, as that was the direction in which the German main advance was said to have taken place.

Some of the Irish Guards had retired with our A and B Companies, but the position which we now took up enabled all their right companies to remain where they were. After a little time I received information from the party which I had sent northward that the Northamptonshire and Sussex Regiments were advancing on our left. So I told A and B Companies to get in touch with them, advance eastward through the wood, and clear it of Germans This movement, I think, took the enemy by surprise, for, at the beginning of the advance, we could see some of them, only a short distance ahead, crossing our front from our right to left, evidently quite unaware of what was impending. Others were running about in a confused manner, and though a few of them stood and fought, we had much the best of them, killing a considerable

[1] This mound subsequently became famous as Hill 60, the scene of hard fighting in the following spring.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

number—some with the bayonet—and clearing the wood to the edge (K. 24. c. 5. 3.–5. 9.). C Company also followed through the wood in this advance, while D was kept back (about K. 23. c. 9. 6.), to look after the right flank, where they had a pretty good field of fire.

In the evening I got most of the Regiment collected at the south edge of the wood (about K. 24. c. 1. 3.), and after much consultation with the Irish Guards and Gordon Highlanders, it was decided to take up our old line of trenches of last night. I was then sent for by Brigadier-General Bulfin, commanding the 2nd Infantry Brigade, and in temporary command of the 1st Division, under whose orders we had come for the time being. He wished to make a further attack during the night on the part of the woods (about K. 24 central) which was still in German hands. His commanding officers thought that their men were too done for anything more, and I think that they were right. The idea of this attack was, therefore, given up, and we were ordered to hold our present line, with the alteration that we were to fill the whole gap between the left of the Irish Guards and the right of the Northamptonshire; while the Gordon Highlanders, who had suffered severely lately, and were reduced to 1 officer and 100 men or less, dropped back into reserve. All this, however, was not quite possible to carry out, because the Germans were still in possession of part of the Gordons' original trenches (about K. 24. c. 7. 3.). This I discovered when, with Pepys and my servant (Flowers), I reconnoitred ahead and nearly walked into them. I had begun to have my suspicions as to whether the Highlanders were really there, so we were advancing cautiously, and were eventually challenged in German. We immediately turned and ran, keeping a little apart from each other, and were not hit by the few straggling shots which they fired. After this it was decided to hold the east edge of the big wood.

We had two companies out—C holding the south and east edges of the little wood (R. 3. b. 9. 9.), and D the south-east corner and part of the east edge of the big wood (K. 24. c. 5. 3.),with a burning farm in front of them. A Company was a little in rear of D, with a platoon guarding a track which ran between the two woods; while B Company was in reserve near my headquarters (about K. 23. d.1.7.) I did also put some men in Groenenberg Farm, but afterwards decided to withdraw them, as the place was so much looked into from the left rear by the Germans.

Digitized by Google

Our casualties to-day were 9 men killed, 36 men wounded, two of whom were captured. No officer was hit, which was lucky, for we had not many left. A and B Companies were shelled considerably in the morning, before the German infantry attack, but they had dug so well that they suffered little. On the whole this was a good day for us.

November 1st.—(Woods near Zwarteleen.) Heavy shelling began as soon as it was light. At about 1 p.m., when I was up in D Company's trench, at the east edge of the big wood, the shelling became still more intense, the range on the trenches being very accurate. From here I saw all the left part of the Irish Guards retiring, pursued by German shrapnel, which hit a good many of them

As this left C Company in too exposed a position, I ordered them to retire I got A and C Companies lined out along the southern edge of the big wood (K. 23. d. 5. 5. to K. 24. c. 2. 3.), with their left on the right of D Company, and told D to stand fast.

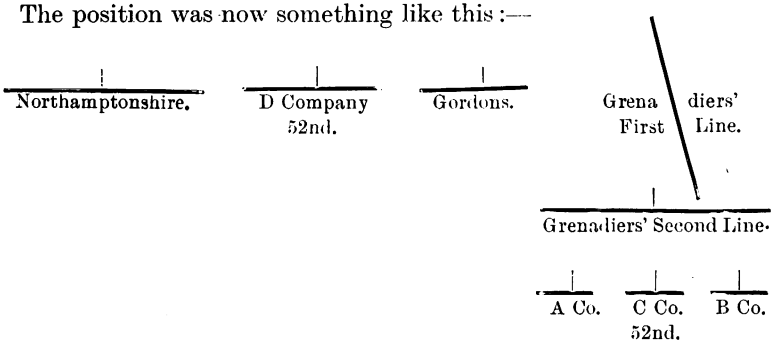
Soon afterwards, however, news came, both from Tolson, commanding D Company, and from a Sapper Officer more to the left, that the Northamptonshire, on our left, had also retired from their trenches, and that Germans were coming on into the big wood. As a German advance in this direction would enable them to come through the wood and attack us in rear, I ordered D Company to retire by a more northerly track, and C and A by a track along the south edge of the wood, to a position along the road which runs north-east near the north-west edge of the wood (K. 23. c. 4. 9.–K. 23. b. 2. 4.).

On arriving at this line I found the 2nd Battalion Grenadiers, who had been ordered up from reserve, to advance eastward and clear the wood. They advanced part of the way through the wood, and then, being fired on from the right flank, wheeled southwards, and lined along the south edge of the wood (K. 23. d. 1. 5.–7. 5.). This, of course, brought their easterly advance to an end, and their second line did not go any farther either.

Meanwhile D Company, retiring farther to the north, had come on the Gordon Highlanders and Northamptonshire, who were beginning to advance again towards the trenches from which they had retired. D Company joined with them, and advanced a certain distance, being now in front of, and to the left of, the Grenadiers' second line (about K. 24. c. 2. 9.).

Digitized by Google

The position was now something like this :—



We now got orders to entrench inside the wood, on a line running from about K. 24 a. 5. 0., in a south-westerly direction, thus cutting off the awkward salient at the south-east corner of the wood, and getting a line the effect of the shelling of which could not be observed by the enemy.

D Company moved to the right, to join on to the left of the Grenadiers' first line, and dug trenches facing east, while a company from the Grenadiers' second line moved up to take the place of the Gordon Highlanders, and join on with the right of the Northamptonshire at K. 24. a. 5. 0.

B, C, and A Companies remained in reserve, on the road where they had dug themselves in, except that one platoon of B Company was moved up to connect the right of the Grenadiers with the left of the Irish Guards (about K. 23 c. 7. 5). On the right of the Irish Guards were French troops.

We had lost about a quarter of a mile of ground, but had established ourselves in a better position.

Our losses to-day were 64 men, viz.: 17 killed, 43 wounded, and 9 missing. Again no officer was hit, but some good sergeants were among the casualties, including Sergeant JEFFERY killed.

Captain L. V. Thurston (R.A.M.C.) was succeeded as medical officer to the Regiment by Lieut. T. L. Hardy (R.A.M.C.).

November 2nd.—(Woods near Zwarteleen.) A sort of half-hearted attack was made by the Germans on D Company and on the Grenadiers, with the result that a good many Germans were killed. In front of D Company, who were in a fir wood, Germans kept crossing the front within sight, and several of them were shot.

At night two of our companies relieved the company of Grenadiers between D Company and the Northamptonshire. We thus

Digitized by Google

had three companies up in the front line (K. 23. d. 6. 6. to K. 24. a. 5. 0), and one company back in reserve,[1] having the Grenadiers on our right and the Northamptonshire on our left.

Not much shelling to-day, and we only had one man wounded. We keep improving our trenches, and have a few strands of wire fastened on to the trees in front as an obstacle. The wood is fir and not very thick ; one can see a certain distance through it.

November 3rd.—(Woods near Zwarteleen.) Near one part of our line, in front of A Company, some Germans came up and began digging in a hollow only 30 yards from our trenches. Pepys and Pendavis, with two men (Hall and Merry), shot at them from the trenches first, and then rushed out at them, driving them back, and killing about 30 of them as they retired.[2] In fact, the Germans were thoroughly frightened, and hardly even fired.

The enemy was not at all enterprising to-day, but there was some shelling, and a certain amount of firing at night, though no real attack.

During the day some shells fell among the 1st Line Transport at the Halte (Arrêt)[3], on the railway one mile east of Ypres, wounding Lieut. R. Brett (Transport Officer), Quartermaster-Sergeant Saker, Sergeant Sibley, the Pioneer-Sergeant, Sergeant Martin, the Bugle-Major, and the Orderly Room Clerk (Sergeant Smith).

The total casualties in the Regiment to-day were 11, of whom 1 man was killed, and Brett and 9 others wounded.

At night the 4th reinforcement of 120 men, under Ward, arrived.

November 4th.—(Woods near Zwarteleen.) Shelling by the enemy began at 11 a.m., and went on until 5 p.m. We kept in our trenches, and little harm was done—9 men wounded.

November 5th.—(Woods near Zwarteleen.) Our headquarters were shelled intermittently from 10 to 5, but our trenches were not shelled at all, and we had no casualties.

November 6th.—(Woods near Zwarteleen.) Shelling began about 11 a.m., and was pretty heavy until 1 p.m. In the afternoon news came in that the French, who were holding the ground beyond the Irish Guards—a little to our right—were retiring. Their retirement

[1] This arrangement continued for the next few days, one company being relieved by the reserve company each night; so that all companies got a night in reserve in turn.—H. R. D.

[2] For this Pepys and Pendavis were afterwards awarded the D.S.O., and Hall and Merry the D.C.M.—H. R. D.

[3] Afterwards known as Hellfire Corner.

Digitized by Google

eventually compelled the Irish Guards and some of the Grenadiers just in front of our headquarters and reserve company to retire also.

Reports then came that some Germans were working through on our right flank, and tolerably close. As I had to keep most of my reserve company (B) facing the front (to take the place of the right company of the Grenadiers, who had lost a good many men from shell-fire, and whose right had been exposed by the retirements on their right), I was only able to spare one platoon, and this I sent out on our right (about K. 23. a. 4. 1.). The Grenadiers were also able to send out one platoon, which eventually joined up with some of the 2nd Life Guards (dismounted), who had been sent up from reserve, and did some very good work. They succeeded in pushing back the Germans, who had got up to the farm at K. 23. c. 2. 7. and the road to the south-west of it.

About this time, just before dark, two companies of the Sussex Regiment (2nd Brigade) also came up, and this reinforcement finally stopped the German advance. They had, however, gained a little ground on our right, as owing to the French retirement it was not possible to get right back to the trenches which had been held by the Irish Guards. But we were able to establish quite a good line, the Grenadiers being a little behind their former position, our reserve company digging a new line (about K. 23. c. 7. 9.) on their right, and the Sussex joining up farther on the right so as to fill the gap between us and the 2nd Life Guards.

Our three companies (A, C, and D) on the left of the Grenadiers had been quite undisturbed. Their trenches, being inside the wood, were not shelled, and these companies were some distance from the part of the line against which the German attack had come. During the night there was a certain amount of firing, and some of the enemy, creeping up to reconnoitre the Sussex trenches, were shot, but no further attack was made.

We had 8 casualties, viz.: 2nd Lieut. J. M. B WARD and 1 man killed, and 6 men wounded.

Young Ward, who only joined us three days ago, was unfortunately killed during the time the Germans were beginning to get round our right flank. He had been sent, by Baines, his Company Commander, to the right, to see how things were going on, and observing the enemy in front of him, had led an attack, composed chiefly of Sussex men, a few Grenadiers, and two of our own men.[1]

[1] It was not the part of the line held by us.—H. R. D.

Digitized by Google

He was shot dead within a few yards of the fence held by the Germans. Baines afterwards heard one Grenadier telling another how well Ward had led them on.

November 7th.—(Woods near Zwarteleen.) Not much shelling on our part of the line. All four companies now in the front line trenches. One man killed and one wounded to-day.

November 8th.—(Woods near Zwarteleen.) Still some shelling, but on the whole a quiet day—the last day in these trenches, which we have occupied for nine days.

We have now been about three weeks without changing our clothes or boots, and with our feet generally wet, but every one has kept very fit. Our work in these woods has been, I think, satisfactory, and we have not lost heavily; but we have been made uncomfortable by a good deal of rain.

My usual day, on quiet days, has been to get up out of my hole in the ground at daylight, go round our trenches, and then come back to breakfast. On some days we have been lucky enough to have fog, and then shelling did not start until late, but ordinarily it began about 10 a.m., when we retired into the holes which we had dug, taking with us some bread and jam, or something of the kind, to eat during the day. In the evening, when the shelling slackened, we would issue out again; and then I made another tour of the trenches. After dark the rations would come up, when we had a meal of whatever there happened to be, and washed it down with tea. Sometimes the meal was interrupted by an outburst of firing, when the bullets would crack unpleasantly through the wood, and we lay flat, or, perhaps, even crept into our holes until the uproar was over, and we could finish our meal. Our cooks were established in a farmhouse (about K. 23. a. 4. 4.), so we were able to send out hot tea to the companies morning and evening.

We had two men wounded to-day, and very late at night the London Scottish took over the trenches from us.

November 9th.—(Woods near Zwarteleen to near Verlorenhoek, 4 miles.) It was getting on for daylight when the London Scottish relieved us and took over also the trenches on our right, which had been held by the Sussex. Leaving at about 4 a.m., we marched by the track (through K. 18. and K. 17.) to Zillebeke, and thence north to a place near Verlorenhoek, close to the headquarters of the 2nd Division, arriving about 6 a.m. Here we are in some old trenches made by the French, with regimental headquarters and

Digitized by Google

the officers' mess in a barn belonging to a farm, which contained also the headquarter offices of the 2nd Division. The place is well within shelling range of the enemy, but he does not seem to put shells very near it.

November 10th.—(In Corps Reserve near Verlorenhoek.) Quite quiet, but too cold to be much of a rest, though we were enabled to get cleaned up a bit, and to have some sleep.

General Monro, commanding the 2nd Division, had a look at the Regiment, and remarked that the men seemed fit and cheerful. Sir Douglas Haig I also saw and spoke to.

November 11th.—(Fight with the Prussian Guard in Nonne Bosschen Wood.) At about 10 a.m. we were turned out, as there had been a German attack on the 1st Brigade, who were holding the ground a little to the north of the Ypres-Menin road. I was ordered to take the Regiment to Westhoek, and get into touch with the 1st Division, who would be bringing up reinforcements on the right.

A certain number of shells were dropping about in different places, but by watching where they were being put, I was able to avoid them, and we reached Westhoek without loss. Here I got the companies into any cover that was available, and I could see the Northamptonshire (1st Division) advancing, on our right, into the southern part of the wood lying to the south of Westhoek. I also found here Colonel Lushington, commanding a Brigade of artillery, in a dug-out near a shrine just beyond the village. He told me that the Germans were in the Nonne Bosschen Wood, and that his adjutant had collected some gunners, cooks, etc., armed them with rifles, and put them out facing the Germans in front of us.

A message now came from the 5th Brigade that I was to clear the Nonne Bosschen Wood of the enemy, and that the Highland Light Infantry, who were in reserve on the western edge of Polygone Wood, would join in an attack on the trenches captured by the Germans, which extended southwards from the south-west corner of Polygone Wood.

Almost at the same time an order came from the G.O.C., 1st Brigade, that I was to bring the Regiment round to the south-east corner of the wood south of Nonne Bosschen, to combine with 1st Division troops in an attack on the captured trenches.

These contradictory orders could not both be obeyed, but it was obvious that the Germans must be cleared out of Nonne Bosschen,

Digitized by Google

as they were here in dangerous proximity to some of our guns and to some French guns. I therefore decided to carry out the 5th Brigade orders, and sent a message to the 1st Brigade to say what I was doing.

I sent A and B Companies to clear the Nonne Bosschen, advancing from north-west to south-east. This they did most successfully, driving the Germans before them, and killing and capturing a good many. C and D Companies followed in support. When A and B came out on the south-eastern edge of the wood they were joined by the Northamptonshire on the right, and by some Connaught Rangers and Sappers on the left. Led by Dillon, they charged the Germans out of the trenches,[1] some of the enemy turning and running when the attack was thirty or forty yards off, and others surrendering. Most of those who ran were shot. The men with whom we had this fight were the Potsdam Guards. They were very fine, big men, but by the time we came across them they did not seem to have very much fight in them, as they had been under our artillery fire for some time, and this, no doubt, had shaken them considerably.

Our casualties altogether amounted to 27, of whom 5 were killed. Lieut. C. S. Baines was wounded, and Colour-Sergeant J. JONES (A Company) was unfortunately killed, just at the moment when he had been promoted 2nd Lieutenant, though we did not know it at the time.

There was still another trench held by the Germans in front, and there is no doubt that this also would have been taken; but, unfortunately, the French artillery, not realizing that our attack had progressed so quickly, began firing shrapnel into our front line, so that the attack could not get on. It took some time to inform the French artillery, and by then it was dark.

I now collected the whole regiment at two or three houses just east of the south edge of the Nonne Bosschen Wood, and I found the 5th Brigade headquarters on the north edge of Polygone Wood. It was then proposed to try to retake the trenches which the Germans had captured, the idea being to make a flank attack on them from the south-west corner of Polygone Wood. As, however, it was absolutely pitch dark, it was decided to postpone the attack until 1 a.m., when the moon would be well up.

[1] Amongst those who eventually received rewards for good service on this occasion was SERGEANT W. DOBSON, who was awarded the Russian *Order of St. George, 4th Class.*

Digitized by Google

I returned to the Regiment, and just as I arrived it came on to pour with rain and hail, but I managed to squeeze all the men into the houses for shelter, though many of us got thoroughly wet before we could get under cover. It cleared up later, and I was trying to snatch a little sleep when, about 11 p.m., the Staff Captain of the 1st Brigade came in, and I went with him to see General FitzClarence, commanding that brigade, whose headquarters were in a house on the southern edge of the wood south of Nonne Bosschen. From him I learned that he also had orders to attack from the south-west corner of Polygone Wood, at 4 a.m., with the 2nd Grenadiers and Irish Guards (of the 4th Brigade), and the Munster Fusiliers. I then returned to the Regiment.

November 12th.—At 1.30 a.m. we moved up to the south-west corner of Polygone wood. I reconnoitred the enemy's trench as well as it was possible to do so in the dark. It did not seem possible to enfilade their trench for any distance, and behind this trench they had another line, from which it seemed likely that they would be able to enfilade our attack, as we went along. It was, moreover, quite uncertain whether the 9th Brigade, on the Ypres-Menin road, were still in prolongation of the trench which we were to attack, or whether the whole trench, as far as that road, was in the possession of the Germans. Considering all this, and our own ignorance of the ground, I did not think that it would be advisable to carry out the proposed attack. Grant (Rifle Brigade), the new Brigade-Major of the 5th Brigade, was with me, and he went back at once, and reported this to Westmacott (commanding the 5th Brigade). He fully supported my decision, and ordered me to bring the Regiment back to our former position, and to report to him on arrival there. While this had been going on there had been a lot of firing from the German trench, and on our way back we met the Grenadiers, Irish Guards, and Munster Fusiliers, coming along the west edge of Polygone Wood. They had, in their move across to the wood, apparently approached too close to the German trench, and had been fired on when in close order, thereby losing some men. At the moment we met the Grenadiers it had just been reported that General FitzClarence had been killed. He was hit by a chance bullet at the western edge of the wood, and died almost immediately. The attack by the Guards was then countermanded (I think, by Colonel Westmacott, who was senior officer on the spot).

Having got the Regiment back to the houses, I went again to 5th Brigade headquarters, and received orders for the new line to

Digitized by Google

be taken up. We dug trenches for two companies, with the left on Polygone Wood at K. 10. d. 6. 8., passing in front of the houses to the south-east corner of the Nonne Bosschen.

On our right, echeloned in front near Ferme Verbeck, were the Northamptonshire, with the Gloucestershire and the Guards farther along on their right.

We were just able to get our trenches finished before daylight; C and D Companies in the trenches, and A and B in some support trenches which we found already partly dug in rear. Regimental headquarters were in the north-west corner of Polygone Wood.

There was a certain amount of shelling during the remainder of the day, and we had 2nd Lieut. F PEPYS and 8 men killed, and 14 men wounded. Unfortunately, Pepys was just caught by a shrapnel bullet as he was out of the trench for a moment. He is a great loss, as he was a very good leader in action.

November 13th.—(Polygone Wood.) A quiet day, without any great amount of shelling. One man was killed. At night the fifth Reinforcement of 140 men, under Chichester, arrived.

November 14th.—(Polygone Wood, and thence to Molenaarelsthoek, 1½ miles north-east.) A good deal of shelling in the morning. Sergeant FOSSEY was killed He had 21 years' service, and had done very well, just having been promoted Colour-Sergeant.

In the evening we were relieved by the Hertfordshire Territorials, and went away to Molenaarelsthoek (about L. 1. b. 8. 8.), as a reserve to the 6th Infantry Brigade, commanded by Fanshawe (late 52nd), who provided soup for all the officers. We are partly in houses and partly in dug-outs and trenches.

November 15th.—(Molenaarelsthoek, and thence to near Westhoek.) In reserve to the 6th Brigade. Some snow fell. At night we were relieved by the French 109th Regiment, and marched to a little beyond Westhoek. I had intended to march towards Zonnebeke, and then turn to the left to Westhoek; but the Germans began putting big shells on to the Zonnebeke-Westhoek road, so I turned about and marched the Regiment the other way. Thus once again—and this time for the last time—we marched along the ankle-deep-in-mud track which runs along the north edge of Polygone Wood. Our road on from the wood to Westhoek was equally bad, and it was 1 a.m. (16th) before we reached a small farmhouse about half a mile south of that village where Colonel Cunliffe-Owen, commanding this part of the line, had his headquarters.

Digitized by Google

SYMPHONIE INTERROMPUE, PRÈS D'YPRES.

A French postcard, taken from the *Illustrated London News*, showing Captain G. A. Sullivan (52nd), A.P.M. 2nd Division, playing a duet with a French soldier, in a derelict house at Ypres. November 1914.

Digitized by Google

November 16th.—(Westhoek and adjacent trenches, thence to Ypres, 8 miles west.) On arrival we took over trenches from the Northamptonshire and Gloucestershire Regiments, with B, C, and D Companies, our left being near Ferme Verbeck, immediately on the right of the trenches which we had held from the 12th to 14th November, and the Highland Light Infantry were on our right. A Company was in reserve in Westhoek, while our Regimental headquarters and those of the Highland Light Infantry were in the house in which Cunliffe-Owen had been. I was now temporarily in command of the two regiments, as the acting Brigadier of the 5th Brigade was still in Polygone Wood.

We had a fairly quiet day, with some sniping, but not much shelling. Some men were hit by bullets from the German trenches.

In the evening we were relieved by the French 158th Regiment, and marched, viâ Potijze, to Ypres. We ought to have been met on the outskirts of the town by a Staff Officer, to show us our billets; but no one was there, and we had to wait for over an hour in pouring rain, with heavy shells, with which the Germans bombard the place at night, dropping only 100 to 150 yards away. By sending to the headquarters of the 2nd Division I eventually got some one to show us our billets, into which we moved at about 2 a.m. (17th). They were in large timber warehouses near the canal, in the north-west of the town. My headquarters were in quite a comfortable house, and I slept in a real bed, with bedclothes, finding it most difficult to wake up next morning.

Our casualties to-day were 2 men killed and 3 wounded.

Note to Map 5.

This map, which illustrates the foregoing operations, is a reproduction of the War Office Sheet 28, *Ypres, corrected up to* 1916. *This was used for our reproduction in preference to the* 1914 *issue because of its greater clearness of detail. The map in use in the field was "Sheet* 28, *Ypres* $\frac{1}{40,000}$, *War Office, October* 1914, *G.S., G.S. No.* 2743," *which was provided with squares enabling points to be located to within a few yards. These squares are not shown on Map* 5, *although the references are given in brackets in the text.*—Ed.

Digitized by Google

THE CLOSE OF 1914.

THE Battle of Ypres was over; the Germans had shot their bolt, and had failed signally to break through to Calais—their one aim and object. It is possible here to touch only lightly on the gigantic but victorious effort of the Allies to withstand the furious attempts of the enemy to hew a way to the Channel ports. Be it remembered that the Germans numbered no fewer than 600,000 men, highly trained, highly organized, equipped with every modern contrivance, and, moreover, belonging to one nation, confident of victory. Against them were pitted not half their numbers in men, with far fewer and inferior guns—men of three European nations and troops from India. Yet the enemy was foiled, and with a loss of a quarter of his force gained nothing beyond a few villages of no great importance.

Mention has already been made of the dispositions of the French and British forces in this great battle, and the line northwards was held by the French Marine Brigade at Dixmude, with the Belgian Army thence to the coast. These dispositions remained virtually the same throughout the battle, and the German onslaughts fell on every part of the line, not only in the neighbourhood of Ypres, but also in the south, as far as the La Bassée canal, as well as in the north, up to the sea. It is true that the Allies, overpowered by numbers, were occasionally forced to give way; it is true that they gained no sensational victory, as victories were reckoned in old wars; but, nevertheless, the enemy's defeat was complete, in that he sacrificed an enormous number of lives in failing to approach the objective for which he set out.

Digitized by Google

The part played by one battalion in a battle front of sixty miles must be comparatively small, although on many memorable occasions in the Battle of Ypres the gallant conduct of individual battalions averted disaster which threatened the whole Allied line. The work of the 52nd has been recorded, day by day, by Colonel Davies in the foregoing pages, and no one will doubt that, after its three continuous months of strenuous campaigning, it required the rest which was now given to it.

Marching, by way of Ypres, to Bailleul, the Regiment went into billets, and remained there for almost six weeks, with only one spell of three days in the trenches (Wytschaete) to break their rest. After that, in the last week of the year, the 5th Brigade moved south, to take over the trenches near Richebourg with which subsequently the Regiment became only too closely acquainted.

LIEUT.-COLONEL DAVIES'S DIARY CONTINUED.

November 17th.—(Ypres.) Halted for the day. Got a splendid bath in Sullivan's house. He is Provost Marshal of the 2nd Division, and lives in Ypres at present. Occasional shells fall into the town, and some houses have been smashed, but not much damage has been done as yet.

In the afternoon news came in of a fresh German attack, and Southey, with the Machine-gun Section, was ordered to be sent up again to the Menin road (near Hooge), to be attached to the 3rd Division.

To-day came the astonishing news that leave to England is to be granted to officers. One could hardly believe it. No one had ever dreamed of such a thing during the war. It seemed scarcely right that officers should go on leave and not N.C.O.'s and men; but shortly afterwards further orders extended the grant of leave to N.C.O.'s and men. Of the officers who had left England with the Regiment in August there were now remaining, besides myself, only Crosse, Field (Quartermaster), Dillon, Tolson, Southey, Spencer, and Tylden-Pattenson

Digitized by Google

November 18*th*.—(Ypres to Bailleul, 14 miles south-west.) Marched at 5 a.m., with the Highland Light Infantry, via Westoetre and Locre, stopping for breakfast at a big empty convent at the latter place, to which the cooks' wagons had been sent on. Went into billets at Bailleul for a rest, out of the range of shells.[1]

November 19*th*.—(Bailleul.) Billets quite good here, the men being in the houses of the town, and we are very glad of a rest. Weather very cold. The Connaught Rangers left the Brigade, to join their 1st Battalion, with the Indian Corps, their place in the Brigade being taken by the 9th Highland Light Infantry (Glasgow Highlanders).

November 20*th*–23*rd*.—(Bailleul, in rest.) Weather very cold, with hard frost and snow. On the 21st the Machine-gun Section, under Southey, returned from duty with the 3rd Division, having had one man wounded. Leave for 7 days to England for officers and N.C.O.'s was now opened, and on the 23rd I went on leave.

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

November 24*th*.—Still in rest at Bailleul.

November 25*th*.—(Bailleul to trenches near Wytschaete, 7 miles north-east.) Quite unexpectedly the Regiment was ordered to take over trenches near Wytschaete, in relief of the Gloucestershire Regiment. A, C, and D Companies in the front line; B Company in reserve. One man was wounded.

November 26*th*.—(Trenches near Wytschaete.) Not much shelling, but a good deal of sniping, as the German trenches were very near. Casualties: 3 men killed; Lieut. A. V. Spencer and 2 men wounded.

November 27*th*.—(Trenches near Wytschaete to Bailleul.) We had 3 men wounded to-day, and were relieved at night by the Lincolnshire Regiment, after which we marched back to Bailleul.

November 28*th*.—(Bailleul.) Reached Bailleul at 2 a.m., and went into billets.

---

[1] The following officers were present with the Regiment this day:—Lieut.-Col. H. R. Davies (Commanding), Lieut. R. B. Crosse (Adjutant), Captain A. S. Field (Quartermaster); Lieut. T. L. Hardy, R.A.M.C. (Medical Officer); Captain H. M. Dillon (A Company); Captain C. O. Chichester (B Company); 2nd Lieuts. A. D. Tylden-Pattenson and G. W. Titherington (C Company); Lieuts. W. G. Tolson and A. V. Spencer (D Company). Lieut. J. A. Southey (Machine-gun Officer) was attached to the 3rd Division until 21st November, when he rejoined the Regiment at Bailleul.—ED.

Digitized by Google

November 30th.—(Bailleul.) Seventh reinforcement of 80 men arrived with Captain S. F. Hammick (Reserve of Officers) and Lieut. T. C. Tanner (attached from King's Shropshire Light Infantry).

December 1st.—Captain A. K. North (Special Reserve) joined.

Information received of the promotion to 2nd Lieutenant of Colour-Sergeants G. Field and C. Dean, and Sergeant W. Wooding.

December 3rd.—(Bailleul.) Paraded and lined part of the Meterin road, for inspection by His Majesty the King, who motored slowly by, stopping to shake hands with commanding officers.

Information received of the award of the following honours :—

Distinguished Service Order.

Lieut. R. B. CROSSE.
Lieut. C. S. BAINES.
Lieut. A. V. SPENCER
2nd Lieut. F. PEPYS.
2nd Lieut. H. V. PENDAVIS.

Médaille Militaire.

7140, Sergeant A. KIPPAX.

Distinguished Conduct Medal.

9419 Corporal J. W. HODGES (killed 21.10.14).
5071 Private E. D. STOCK
8082 Private H. J. HASTINGS.
7441 Private H. MERRY.
8444 Private G. HALL.

His Majesty the King presented the D.S.O. to Lieut. Crosse, and the D.C.M. to Privates Merry and Hall at Divisional Headquarters.

The eighth reinforcement of 206 men arrived, with the following officers : Captain F. H. Beaufort, Captain H. W. Jackson (Special Reserve), 2nd Lieut. R. W. Rendel, and 2nd Lieut. J. W. G. Wyld.

December 4th—(Bailleul.) 2nd Lieut. F. E. L. Riddle joined.

December 13th.—(Bailleul.) Captain L. F. Scott (Reserve of Officers) joined.

December 14th–19th.—(Bailleul.) Warned to be ready to move at one hour's notice as Army Reserve, but were not required.

December 20th—General Haking, who had recovered of his wound, and resumed command of the 5th Brigade, left to-day to take over the command of the 1st Division. Lieut.-Colonel Davies took over temporary command of the 5th Brigade.

Digitized by Google

December 22nd.—(Bailleul.) We had been at Bailleul and the neighbourhood since 18th November, the last three weeks being devoted to drill, musketry, route marching, etc. A few men were also instructed in bombing, which is now being introduced.

LIST OF OFFICERS ON LEAVING BAILLEUL.

Lieut.-Colonel H. R. DAVIES, Tempy. Commanding 5th Infantry Brigade.

Captain F. H. BEAUFORT (B Company), Tempy. Commanding the Regiment.

Captain R. B. CROSSE, D.S.O., Adjutant.

Lieut. J. A. SOUTHEY, Machine-gun Officer.

Captain A. S. FIELD, Quartermaster.

Lieut. T. L. HARDY, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.

A Company.

Captain A. K. NORTH (Special Reserve).
2nd Lieut. F. E. L. RIDDLE.

B Company.

Captain H. W. JACKSON (Special Reserve).
Lieut. G. W. TITHERINGTON.
2nd Lieut. C. DEAN.

C Company.

Captain S. F. HAMMICK (Reserve of Officers).
Captain C. O. CHICHESTER (Reserve of Officers).
Lieut. A. D. TYLDEN-PATTENSON.
Lieut. R. D. RENDEL.

D Company.

Captain L. F. SCOTT (Reserve of Officers).
Captain W. G. TOLSON.
Lieut. T. C. TANNER.
Lieut. J. W. G. WYLD.
2nd Lieut. G. FIELD.

Sergeant-Major A. WARNOCK.
Acting Quartermaster-Sergeant F. BARNES.

Digitized by Google

December 23rd.—(Bailleul to La Couture, 14 miles.) The whole Brigade was moved in motor-buses,[1] starting about midnight (22nd–23rd December), and going round by Hazebrouck and Merville. Several buses took wrong roads, and others broke down temporarily, so that it was nearly midday on the 23rd before we were in our billets at La Couture. It was a very cold frosty night, and the men outside were intensely cold.

The ninth reinforcement of 70 men arrived.

December 24th to 26th.—(La Couture, in billets.) Spent Christmas Day quite quietly, and a service was held by the Bishop of Khartoum (Bishop Gwynne), who is Chaplain to the 5th Brigade. On the 26th Captain G. Blewitt (from being wounded) and Lieut. J. C. Warner (Special Reserve) joined for duty. Captain Blewitt assumed temporary command of the Regiment, as senior officer present.

December 27th.—In the evening went into trenches near Richebourg L'Avoué, relieving the 39th Gharwal Rifles. The Regiment, in the centre of the Brigade front, has three companies in trenches, and one in reserve in billets, with Regimental Headquarters in S. 9. a. 8. 0 (Map $\frac{1}{40,000}$, Bethune Sheet). The 5th Brigade, with its headquarters in Richebourg St. Vaast, has 3 battalions in the front line, and its left on the south edge of Neuve Chapelle, which is occupied by the 8th Division.

December 28th.—Very quiet in the trenches. One man was killed and one wounded by a short shell from our own artillery. Rained all night, and the trenches falling in everywhere. The country is flat, and intersected with wet ditches.

December 29th.—Relieved in the evening by the 9th Highland Light Infantry (Glasgow Highlanders), and went into billets at Richebourg St. Vaast.

Captain C. Fitzgerald (Special Reserve) joined for duty. Casualties: one man wounded.

December 31st.—Relieved the 2nd Highland Light Infantry in trenches near Richebourg L'Avoué, immediately to the right of the trenches previously occupied.

[1] Lieut.-Col. Davies, who was at the time in temporary command of the 5th Brigade, says that the reason of this hasty move was that part of the line held by the Indian Corps had been attacked by the Germans, who had captured some trenches.—ED.

Digitized by Google

Brigadier-General A. A Chichester took over command of the 5th Infantry Brigade, vice Brigadier-General R. C. B. Haking, promoted Major-General, and appointed to the command of the 1st Division.

On leaving the Brigade, General Haking wrote the following letter (dated 31st December 1914) to Lieut.-Colonel Davies, commanding the Regiment :—

"On handing over command of the 5th Brigade, which I have held for over three years, I wish to express to all ranks of the Battalion under your command my appreciation of the work they have done during this campaign. It is unnecessary for me to go into any details, because the rapid and skilful manœuvring of the Battalion during the retirement from Mons, and the subsequent advance to the Aisne, their defence during the long occupation of the latter, and, above all, their splendid attacks and defence round Ypres, is well known throughout the Army, and later on will become a matter of history. The Battalion has always been celebrated for its attack at Waterloo, but, in my opinion, it will in future be distinguished, above others, for its magnificent attack near Ypres.

"Your Battalion has been in the Brigade during the whole time I have been in command, and, consequently, I feel more closely attached to it than to the others. I cannot tell you what satisfaction it gives me to be able to record in this brief manner the heroic doings of the Battalion during the present campaign, which cannot be exaggerated."

SUMMARY OF CASUALTIES TO 31ST DECEMBER.

——	Killed.	Wounded.[1]	Unwounded Prisoner.	Total.
Officers – –	13	18	—	31
Other Ranks –	150	450	1	601
Total –	163	468	1	632

[1] Of these, 2 officers and 4 men were captured when wounded.

Digitized by Google

ADMITTED TO HOSPITAL FOR SICKNESS.

14th to 31st August	91
September	135
October	55
November	53
December	125
Total	459

REINFORCEMENTS RECEIVED DURING 1914.

Officers: 25 (of whom 2 were promoted from the ranks of the Regiment, and 1 rejoined from being wounded).

Other ranks: 952 (nine reinforcements).

HONOURS BESTOWED IN 1914.

Distinguished Service Order.

Lieut. R. B. Crosse.
Lieut. C. S. Baines.
Lieut. A. V. Spencer.
2nd Lieut. F. Pepys.
2nd Lieut. H. V. Pendavis.

Legion of Honour.
(Cross of Chevalier).

Lieut. R. G. Worthington.

Médaille Militaire.[1]

7140 Sergeant A. Kippax.

[1] The following appeared in the *Oxford Times* of 10 April 1915:—

"Sergeant Kippax was awarded the Médaille Militaire by the French Government. On the 8th September 1914 his regiment was ordered to clear the enemy out of a wood, and on the scouts advancing one was immediately shot dead. The others returned and reported that parties of Germans were in the vicinity. Sergeant Kippax volunteered to go forward to ascertain their strength, and suddenly coming across a German patrol, under an officer, with a machine-gun, he shot the officer and six men dead himself, capturing two fully-equipped horses and a bicycle. The gun was in a position where it commanded the road by which the regiment was going to advance, and, but for the energetic action, severe loss would have been inflicted on the regiment. The medal was presented to Sergeant

Digitized by Google

Distinguished Conduct Medal.

9419 Corporal J. W. Hodges (killed 21st October 1914).
5071 Private E. D. Stock.
8082 Private H. J. Hastings.[1]
7441 Private H. Merry.
8444 Private G. Hall.
7380 Sergeant H. Edwards.
8545 Sergeant G. Ashby.
4654 Private A. Tyrell.

Promoted from the Ranks.

To be 2nd Lieutenants Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry.

Colour-Sergeant G. Field.
Colour-Sergeant C. Dean.
Company-Sergeant-Major J. Jones (killed 11th November 191.).
Sergeant W. Wooding (to 1st Battalion, Mesopotamia).

Mentioned in Dispatches.

(From the beginning of the War up to 8th October 1914.)

Captain U. J. D. Bourke (attached R F.C.).

Lieut.-Colonel H R. Davies
Captain G. Blewitt
8111 Private W. R. Carter
8357 Private G. F. Payne.
7140 Private A. Kippax.
9524 Lance-Corporal H. Apsey.

Kippax by His Majesty King George during his recent visit to the Expeditionary. Force. Sergeant Kippax continued to serve with the Regiment until wounded in the fighting round Ypres. The me lal itself is ordinarily of silver, and bears the legend *Valeur et Discipline.* It is worn with a yellow ribbon edged with green. Wearers are entitled to a salute from all of equivalent rank in the French service, and a gratuity of £40 is given to each recipient, also an annuity of 100 francs. It is the most coveted of all the French decorations, and can only be won in the field by the performance of some special act of courage, and is purely a military distinction."

[1] Private H. J. Hastings was afterwards transferred to the Royal Engineers (No. 36303) and was awarded the Russian *Medal of St. George, 3rd Class,* in August 1915.—Ed.

Digitized by Google

1915.

TRENCH WARFARE IN FLANDERS AND NORTHERN FRANCE.

(*See Map* 4).

It will have been noticed that so far the fighting had not become restricted to siege or trench warfare. The defenders had, of course, entrenched themselves deeply and heavily, but they left their trenches and advanced in the open whenever opportunity offered for a bold stroke, and such encounters as that with the Prussian Guard at Nonne Bosschen were after the manner of the old-fashioned open warfare. These methods, however, soon came to an end, and, except for rare occasions, operations settled down to the new order of things, with opposing lines of trenches, assaults on which were preceded by heavy bombardments.

The Germans, finding that their plans for smashing through the Allied line had hopelessly broken down, dug themselves in on their advanced positions, doubtless with the intention of renewing their attempt when the winter should have passed. In this way there grew up on both sides a marvellous system of trenches, replete with every modern contrivance; and these trenches, facing each other at varying distances apart, became from time to time objectives of fierce attack. But the wet and cold of winter prevented for some weeks any movements on a large scale; the trenches themselves were often knee-deep in water, the country around was water-logged and impassable, and both Germans and Allies suffered severely from the resultant sickness.

During the opening weeks of the year no operations of any importance took place, and all that the Regiment did was to take its turn in the trenches in different

Digitized by Google

parts—mostly on the extreme right of the British portion of the line. On the 25th January the Germans commenced to shell Bethune, and then pressed forward with some success against the La Bassée position and the village of Givenchy. Severe fighting lasted for several days, but in the end the 1st Division recovered practically all the lost ground.

Early in February the British line extended from Vermelles (south-east of Bethune) to Gheluvelt (south-east of Ypres), the troops being disposed approximately as follows :—

1ST ARMY (HAIG).

Ist Army Corps : Vermelles to Givenchy.
Indian Army Corps : Givenchy to Neuve Chapelle.
IVth Army Corps. Neuve Chapelle to Bois Grenier.

2ND ARMY (SMITH-DORRIEN).

IIIrd Army Corps : Bois Grenier to Messines.
IInd Army Corps : Messines to Wytschaete.
Vth Army Corps : St. Eloi to Gheluvelt.

Desultory fighting took place throughout the month, but with little result, and on the 10th March the British Commander-in-Chief launched the great spring offensive, for which he decided the time was now ripe. This has become known as the Battle of Neuve Chapelle, during which the 52nd was occupied in holding trenches elsewhere, and did not take part in the actual attack. Nor did the Regiment see further fighting until the middle of May, the interval being spent in the dull but necessary duty of holding different portions of the trench line, with periods of rest between each tour of duty. As the diaries which follow show, the trenches were wet and uncomfortable; much labour was required to keep them in repair; they were shelled frequently, and "sniped" constantly; and casualties, though not numerous, occurred almost daily.

Digitized by Google

LIEUT.-COLONEL H. R. DAVIES'S DIARY CONTINUED.

January 1st, 1915.—Trenches near Richebourg L'Avoué.) In the morning I moved from Brigade Headquarters to Regimental Headquarters in a little farmhouse (S. 8. d. 7. 2., Map $\frac{1}{40,000}$, Bethune Sheet)—not at all uncomfortable compared with the places usually occupied by headquarters near Ypres. The Brigade front is now divided into two sectors, the Regiment taking the right sector, with two companies in the trenches, one company in support in billets in the Rue du Bois, and one in reserve near headquarters.

Some of the trenches are very wet—about knee-deep in water—and fresh trenches had to be dug in front; but digging is practically useless, as everything fills with water at once. It is, therefore, impossible to keep good communication trenches open to the front line, and I have to wait until it is getting dark in the evening to go my rounds.

Blewitt took over command of B Company. He was, in to-day's "Gazette," among the first recipients of the new Military Cross.

Information reached us that the following have been awarded Distinguished Conduct Medals:—

7380 Sergeant H. EDWARDS.
8545 Sergeant G. ASHBY.
4654 Private A. TYRELL.

January 2nd-4th.—We remained in the trenches during these days, companies relieving each other. No shelling on our part of the line, but one man was wounded, on the 4th, by rifle fire from the enemy's trenches, the average distance of which from our trenches is 300 to 400 yards.

January 5th.—(To Richebourg St. Vaast.) We dug a bit of new front-line trench this evening, and got through it without hindrance. At night we were relieved by the Glasgow Highlanders (9th H.L.I.), a Territorial Battalion, and we went into Brigade Reserve in billets in Richebourg St. Vaast, with Regimental Headquarters in the Mairie.

Just after dark 2nd Lieut. A. D. TYLDEN-PATTENSON was very unluckily killed (near the support house, Rue du Bois) by a chance bullet. He had been with the Regiment from the beginning of

Digitized by Google

the war, and had once been slightly hit (on the Aisne), but was able to come back to duty almost at once.

Eden arrived to-day, having quite recovered from the wound through the palm of his hand received on the 21st October.

FROM CAPTAIN BLEWITT'S DIARY.

January 6th.—(Richebourg St. Vaast.) Brigade Reserve. I took over my old company, D.

January 7th.—Richebourg St. Vaast.

Poor Tylden-Pattenson was buried in the churchyard in the afternoon. The Bishop of Khartoum took the service—very simple and impressive—beneath the fine old church, much knocked about by shells, and with the guns firing continuously in the distance.

January 8th.—The Brigade moved into Corps Reserve about Locon.[1] D Company was billeted in a farm, Tolson, Tanner, Field, Wyld, and myself living with the farmer and his wife. We had a lot of difficulty in getting an estaminet opened in which to have our mess. The old lady's objection was *Mon mari est mort*, but she soon settled down and enjoyed having us there, though she could not be brought to understand that we were not interested in her late husband's vest, which she would produce at breakfast. A reinforcement of 1 sergeant and 19 men arrived to-day.

January 9th.—(In Corps Reserve at Locon.) Men had baths.

January 10th.—The Bishop of Khartoum held a service in our farmyard at 11.15 a.m. Prevented from going out in the afternoon, as we had to stand by, ready to move at half an hour's notice, because the 1st Division were re-taking a lost trench preceded by an artillery bombardment, which it was thought might bring on a general action.

January 11th.—(Locon.) In the morning dug and practised attacking trenches. In the afternoon rode over to Loisne, and then walked to Gorre Château, where, I was told, 27 Indians were killed and 26 wounded by one shell, which fell in the courtyard.[2]

[1] Brigade Headquarters at Les Lobes; the Regiment billeted in X. 1. b. and d. and X. 2. a. (Bethune Sheet, $\frac{1}{40,000}$ 36, 36a, 36b, 36c, combined).—ED.

[2] The Regimental Diary says:—"*11th January.*—Lieut. E. Scott (R.A.M.C.) relieved Lieut. T. L. Hardy (who was admitted to hospital) as Medical Officer." "*16th January.*—2nd Lieuts. C. B. Baker and V. C. Martin joined, from the Cadet School of Instruction, for duty with the Regiment."—ED.

Digitized by Google

January 13th.—(Locon.) Route march to Paradis in the morning and got wet through. Rode into Bethune in the afternoon. The people are still in their houses, and things going on much as usual.

LIEUT.-COLONEL DAVIES'S DIARY CONTINUED.

January 14th-20th.—(In trenches near Festubert.) On the evening of the 14th we relieved the Meerut Cavalry Brigade (dismounted) in trenches in the southern part of Festubert, at the village of Le Plantin. The original trenches here had had to be abandoned, as they were full of water. The line now held was a line of breastworks, close in front of the village of Le Plantin (A. 8. a. 6. 8. to A. 1. b. 3. 8.), several hundred yards behind the original line.

Two companies were in front line; headquarters and two companies billeted in empty houses behind (F. 6. a. and c.). Even the front-line companies were chiefly in houses, and during the daytime a few sentries were able to watch the whole front, while the remaining men worked or rested. At night we manned the breastworks. The enemy's trenches were nearly half a mile away, and the intervening country was a swamp; consequently we had a very quiet time, with very little sniping, and though the Germans fired a few shells at times, our artillery shelled them a great deal more.

When we arrived we found all the houses which we were to use as billets in a very dirty state, and we had a lot of work in cleaning them. Our headquarters looked hopeless, with inches of dirt all over it, but by using shovels we eventually got the place clean. A few bullets (probably "overs," fired at the trenches) occasionally came near headquarters, but during the six days we occupied these trenches the Regiment lost only 1 man killed and 2 men wounded.

The Regiment occupied the right sector of the Brigade front, having the Worcestershire on our left and the South Wales Borderers (3rd Brigade) on our right. The weather during this period was not very cold, but was excessively damp, as the surrounding country was nothing more than a swamp. Snow fell on the 18th, and lay two or three inches deep until the 20th, when it disappeared.

On the evening of the 20th we were relieved by the Glasgow Highlanders, and went into billets at Essars, as part of the Brigade Reserve.

Digitized by Google

January 21st–24th.—(Essars.) We had pretty good billets, and the inhabitants were most friendly. Headquarters were in the school, and there was plenty of room for the officers' mess in the big schoolroom. The Curé was a broad-minded man, for he gave the Bishop of Khartoum permission to hold our Parade Service in his Roman Catholic Church. I believe that this was disapproved of by the higher ecclesiastical authorities; at any rate it never happened again.

January 25th.—(Essars.) About 7.30 a.m. we heard a heavy bombardment going on, which turned out to be the Germans attacking the 1st and 3rd Brigade at Cuinchy and Givenchy respectively. We were called out, as reserve, and left at 11.5 a.m. for the 3rd Brigade Headquarters, on the canal bank in the wood south of Marais (F. 10. b.). We stayed there all day (very cold and raw), but were not wanted, as the 3rd Brigade were able to hold

2ND BATTALION HEADQUARTERS AT FESTUBERT.

Digitized by Google

their own well, and recaptured their trenches which had been taken. Besides ourselves there were the Highland Light Infantry, two battalions of the Coldstream, and the North Lancashire Regiment, all ready to be used if required—a very different state of things to what used to happen at Ypres, where reserves only consisted of some tired regiment taken out of another part of the line. At 7.30 p.m. we marched back to billets at Essars.

Brett (rejoining from being wounded) arrived with the eleventh reinforcement of 153 men.

January 26th.—The 2nd Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers joined the 5th Brigade.

January 27th and 28th.—Still in Divisional Reserve at Essars, held ready to move at 15 minutes' notice.

January 29th to February 6th.—(Trenches near Festubert.) On the 29th we relieved the Glasgow Highlanders in our old trenches, where we remained until the 6th February. Things pretty quiet. Occasional shells on the front line and a little sniping, our casualties for the 8 days amounting to 2 killed and 8 wounded.

We were at work every night making a new line of breastworks in front of our present line, and near the original line of trenches, which had been abandoned on account of the water. The weather was pretty good, with little rain and not very cold.

On the 4th Kirkpatrick (recovered from his wounds) and Whitfeld joined, and were posted to A Company; on the 5th Colvile (Reserve of Officers, late 43rd) arrived; and on the 6th Tanner (K. Shropshire L.I.) left to join the 2nd Battalion of his own regiment.

On the evening of the 6th we were relieved by the 2nd Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers, and returned to our billets in Essars.

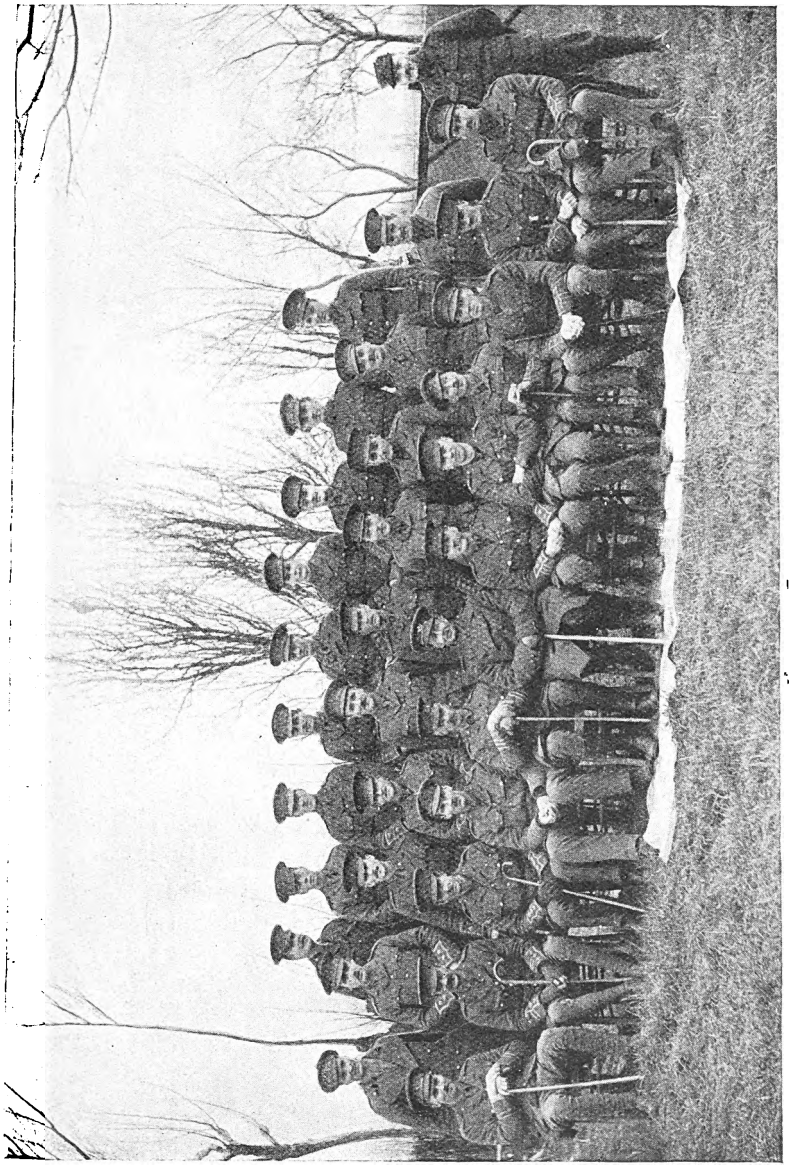
February 7th–13th.—(In Brigade Reserve at Essars.) Route-marching, drills, road-mending, etc. Nearly the whole Regiment got baths and a change of clothing at the Divisional bathing place in Bethune, where also a large laundry has been established, and many women are employed in washing clothes, as well as in cleaning and ironing uniforms.

On the 8th Bull joined for duty, and Humfrey returned (from being wounded).

February 14th–22nd.[1]—(In trenches near Festubert.) Back again in the same trenches, relieving the Inniskillings on the 14th,

[1] *Extracts from Regimental Diary*:—"*17th February.*—2nd Lieuts. J. B. Solomon and C. R. Horley joined on first appointment from the Artists' Rifles; and on the *18th February* 2nd Lieut. W. J. Eighteen."—ED.

Digitized by Google



Top Row.—2nd Lt. J. L. Johnston; Lt. R. D. Rendel; Lt. G. W. Titherington; Lt. C. J. Warner; Lt. R. E. B. Bull; Lt. J. W. Wyld; Lt. E. Scott (R.A.M.C.); 2nd Lt. F. E. L. Riddle; 2nd Lt. C. R. Horley. *Middle Row.*—Capt. H. N. Jackson; Lt. D. H. W. Humfrey; 2nd Lt. C. Dean; 2nd Lt. W. J. Eighteen; 2nd Lt. C. B. Baker; Capt. C. O. Chichester; Lt. E. H. Whitfeld; Lt. J. A. Southey; 2nd Lt. J. B. Solomon; 2nd Lt. G. Field; M. Flament (Interpr.). *Front Row.*—Capt. F. H. Beaufort; Capt. L. F. Scott; Maj. E. H. Kirkpatrick; Capt. G. Blewitt; Maj. A. J. F. Eden; Lt.-Col. C. H. Cobb; Col. H. R. Davies; Capt. and Adjt. R. B. Crosse, D.S.O.; Capt. S. F. Hammick; Maj. G. N. Colvile, D.S.O.; Capt. C. Fitzgerald: Capt. W. G. Tolson.

OFFICERS, 2ND BATTALION, February 1915.

Digitized by Google

and being relieved by them on the 22nd. A very quiet period, the casualties being 2 men killed and 3 wounded—all by chance bullets. Weather not very cold, and fairly fine.

Work continued every night, principally in improving small redoubts in the breastwork line, and constructing larger and self-contained redoubts in the second line, on the outskirts of the village of Le Plantin, the breastwork line being 400 to 600 yards in front of the village.

From the Regimental Diary.

February 21st.—2nd Lieut. J. L. Johnston and the twelfth reinforcement (1 sergeant and 29 others) joined the Regiment.

Information of the following received :—

Lieut.-Colonel H. R. Davies to be Brevet-Colonel.
Captain E. H. Kirkpatrick to be Brevet-Major.

2nd Lieuts. C. B. Baker and V. C. Martin confirmed in their rank.

February 22nd.—(Trenches near Festubert to Les Choquaux.) Information received that Brevet-Colonel H. R. Davies has been selected for the command of the 3rd Infantry Brigade.

In the evening the Regiment was relieved by the Inniskilling Fusiliers, and marched into Divisional Reserve at Les Choquaux, about one mile from Essars.

February 23rd.—Colonel H. R. Davies left the Regiment to take over the command of the 3rd Infantry Brigade. The following appeared in Regimental Orders :—

"Colonel H. R. Davies, on giving up the command, wishes to again thank all ranks for the splendid manner in which they have maintained the good name of the Regiment during this war. He is quite confident that they will continue to fight with the same courage and coolness that they have already shown, and to remember always the great traditions of the 52nd and of the Light Division, which it is the duty of all of us to keep up." [1]

Major A. J. F. Eden assumed command of the Regiment.

Lieut.-Colonel C. H. Cobb, commanding the 5th (Service) Battalion, arrived for attachment until the 25th February.

February 22nd–24th.—(At Les Choquaux.) Drills carried out daily.

[1] Colonel Davies had completed exactly 30½ years' service.—Ed.

Digitized by Google

DIARY OF MAJOR A. J. F. EDEN, COMMANDING THE BATTALION.

February 25th.—(Les Choquaux to Bethune.) Cobb left us today. In the afternoon the Regiment moved into Bethune, where the men are billeted in the "École de Jeunes Filles," a fine, commodious building, forming three sides of a square, and the officers are billeted in private houses near at hand. The mess is in the school dining-hall, and there is an excellent kitchen, so altogether we are living in luxury. Colvile (who is second in command now and wears the uniform of the Robin Hood Rifles) is in a very nice

2ND BATTALION NEAR BETHUNE.

house, with myself, in the principal boulevard. Our host is a very keen fisherman, and the house is adorned everywhere with stuffed fish, rods, nets, etc. Madame is most friendly and kind, and provides us with chocolate and rolls of the best.

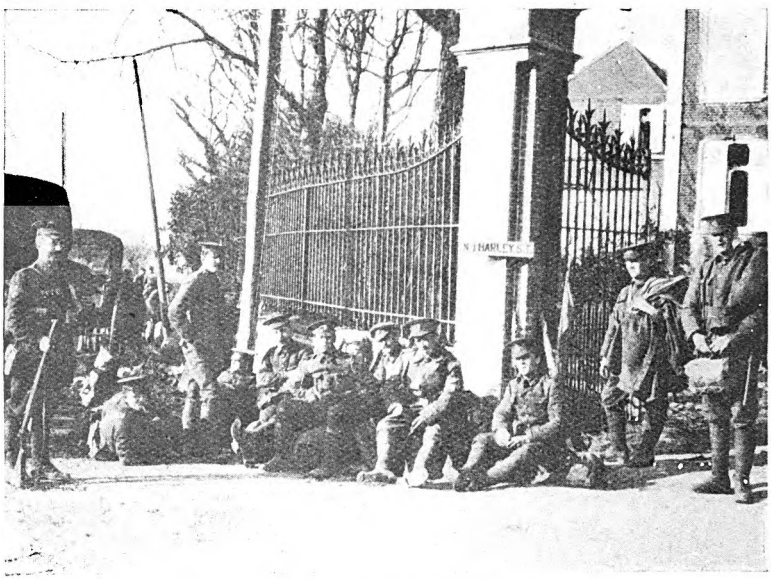
February 26th and 27th.—(Bethune.) The 5th Brigade had a capital concert on the 27th in the Municipal Theatre, which is close to our school billets, and a very capacious building. We used it daily for various purposes, and for Parade Service on Sunday.

February 28th.—(To Beuvry.) In the afternoon the Regiment marched to Beuvry, in relief of the 1st Irish Guards (4th Guards

Digitized by Google

Brigade). Very fair billets. Weather fine, though it has been unpleasantly cold lately.

March 1st–3rd.—(Beuvry, in Brigade Reserve.) On the 2nd the whole Regiment had baths in Bethune, all the blankets being washed at the same time. I rode over to Vermelles with Colvile to have a look at the place. It is still occupied by French troops, our boundary being the Bethune-La Bassée road. There was some very severe fighting at Vermelles last November before the French finally drove out the Huns. On the 3rd I made a reconnaissance of



No. 1 "HARLEY STREET."

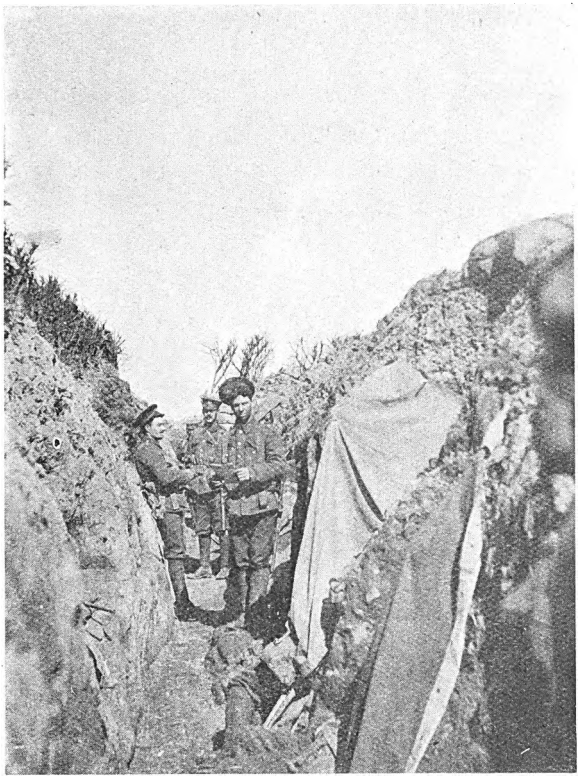
the right sector of the Cuinchy area. The 13th reinforcement of 15 men arrived.

March 4th–8th.—(Trenches at Cuinchy.) On the afternoon of the 4th the Regiment relieved the Inniskilling Fusiliers in the trenches at Cuinchy, and remained there until the 8th. The 4th (Guards) Brigade had done wonders with this area during their stay here last month, and everything was well planned and excellent. Here, for the first time, we came across the system of naming all the trenches after well-known roads and streets. Thus, our main routes in and out were the Old Kent Road and Coldstream Lane, while other important highways were Oxford Street, Praed Street,

Digitized by Google

Regent Street, etc. The road through Cambrin Village (running north and south) was called Harley Street, and No. 1 Harley Street was the most advanced Dressing Station in the area (though, of course, the Regimental Aid-posts were still farther forward).

There were several brick-stacks in this sector, and at night the noise of the bullets striking them was at first apt to be rather dis-



"PARK LANE," CUINCHY.

concerting. The Germans were very vigilant; a great deal of sniping took place at dusk and dawn; and not a few casualties occurred amongst the sentries, who had to watch over the top at night. We lost altogether during this period 1 man killed and 8 men wounded, and we had the bad luck to have two of our machine-guns placed *hors de combat* by enemy fire, as they dropped "whiz-bangs" into us in the daytime.

Digitized by Google

One or two friends had given us telescopic sights for rifles, and these were tried here as a new idea. Our snipers started work from the tops of the brick-stacks, taking care not to disturb the outer wall of bricks, and they killed several Germans.

Our right flank joined the left of the French on the La Bassée road, and the Inniskillings were on our left. All four companies were in the trenches, two in the fire-line, and two in support, very close up; while Regimental Headquarters were in the cellars of a most prominent house, officially known as Kingsclere, but called by us the Dovecote, on account of its pigeon-loft, which was still there.

The weather was distinctly bad, and on one of the days it rained without ceasing, which made the trenches very muddy and sticky.

From the Diary of Captain G. Blewitt, Commanding D Company.

March 5th.—(Cuinchy.) Trafford killed, Crowdy badly wounded. Another machine-gun knocked out. We are in the famous brick-fields, taken by the 4th (Guards) Brigade. Our trenches, old German ones, have communication trenches leading to the present German trenches. These are doubly barricaded, and we have posts behind our barricades about 40 yards down them. The Germans are about 20 yards off, behind their barricade. Our main trench is about 70 yards from the Germans in some parts. A lot of sniping goes on. We have every other man on sentry, and two officers on duty at night.

March 6th.—(From Cuinchy Front Trench to Support Trench and Keep.) A demonstration, during the afternoon, to assist French attack on our right, caused us to be shelled, but no loss. My snipers accounted for 2 Germans. In the evening I went down our saps, one 25 yards to our front, with a T being driven, to listen for German mines. The miners had only been out from England a week.

March 7th.—(Cuinchy Support Trenches and Keep.) Night somewhat disturbed by rifle and gun fire at 11 p.m. and 1 a.m., in connexion with a French movement on our right. We stand to arms daily at 5.30 a.m. We live in the "Guards' Club" dug-out. Tolson sleeps on the top berth, Robert (Bull) and I on the floor; and we all feed in the other part of the dug-out, where there are chairs and a table—most comfortable. We play bridge, and Robert makes a lot of noise singing.

Digitized by Google

March 8th.—(Cuinchy Support Trench and Keep, to Beuvry.) A bitterly cold day. In the morning Robert and I went to see the French, who are immediately on our right, and had a long buck with them. One man showed us his dictionary, compiled from his attempts to learn English from our men. Extracts :—

Venir – – – – – –	Toukom
Combien – – – – –	Am otch
Viande – – – – – –	Mit
Avez-vous allumettes ? – – –	Aviou aimetch ?

In the afternoon we were relieved by the Inniskillings, and marched back to Beuvry in Brigade Reserve.

IN THE FRENCH LINES AT CUINCHY.
2nd Lieut. R. D. Rendel using a periscope.

MAJOR EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

March 9th–11th.—(Beuvry.) Very glad to be back to our comfortable billets again. These intervals of so-called rest are not altogether a holiday, as, besides drill, route marches, etc., there is much business to be attended to. The first day "back" is always spent by companies in cleaning both themselves and their equipment, and in a regular overhaul of everything at kit inspections. Headquarters are fully occupied in the Orderly Room in working

Digitized by Google

off arrears of correspondence, writing up the War Diary, worrying out the promotion roll, and such-like things.

This rest period was much spoiled by our having to stand by, ready to move at very short notice, though it was not as bad as it might have been, as the restriction was removed during the nights, so the men were able to have their blankets and to sleep in their billets.

The attacks by the 6th Brigade at Givenchy unfortunately met with no success. What happened at Neuve Chapelle is known to everyone.

FROM CAPTAIN G. BLEWITT'S DIARY.

March 11th.—Rouse at 4.45 a.m.; standing by to move at short notice, as before. In the afternoon we got the ponies into a field, where we put up jumps, and all went through their paces, including the old mess-cart horse which came down to water (with blinkers on and no saddle). Jasper Wyld, Reggie Rendel, Jimmie Riddle, Stephen Hammick, and Colvile performed.

March 12th.—(Beuvry to Cuinchy Front Trench, relieving the Inniskillings.) Private Ayres and I did a reconnaissance; we got outside our right communication trench leading to the German line, and crawled along, getting inside again behind their barrier, in the hopes of catching a German there; but no luck. The German barrier is about 25 yards from their trench and 15 to 20 yards from our barrier.

March 13th.—(Cuinchy Fire Trench.) Enemy's snipers very active; Private Holmes hit in the wrist early; Sergeant Chandler in the face in the afternoon; and Haymer in the hand during the night. They hit the lids of tin cigarette-boxes immediately they were put up to represent periscopes. Private Hayes and Ayres sat with their backs to the German barrier in the enemy's communication trench to await arrival of German snipers down it; but no luck, and they are of opinion that it is not used.

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

March 13th–15th.—(In Trenches at Cuinchy.) On the first night frequent bursts of fire, by order, were made. On all days the enemy shelled us at odd hours, but never severely. Sniping brisk at night. By day many periscopes were destroyed by enemy's snipers, who are, undoubtedly, very good shots.

Digitized by Google

Enemy's trenches 200 to 100 yards distant opposite our right, but only 120 to 60 yards opposite the left. Enemy very vigilant, though possibly not in great strength.

2nd Lieut. L. A. Dashwood (from Corporal R.E. Motor Cyclist) joined for duty.

March 16th.—From Cuinchy Trenches to Beuvry (Brigade

THE BRICK-STACKS AT CUINCHY.

Reserve) on relief, in the afternoon, by the 2nd R. Inniskilling Fusiliers.

Casualties :—

13th March, 2 killed, 6 wounded.
14th March, 3 wounded.
15th March, 2 wounded.
16th March, 1 wounded.

Digitized by Google

IN CUINCHY TRENCHES.
2nd Battalion, March 1915.

Major Eden's Diary continued.

March 17th–20th.—(Beuvry.) This turned out to be a very peaceful rest, and we were able to get on with some training. I do not think that I have mentioned how we get our rations up when we are in the trenches. The transport remains in Beuvry, and each morning the Quartermaster takes his little convoy to the refilling point in the Marché des Chevaux in Bethune, thence going straight through to Harley Street, where companies take over their rations and fuel. In this part of the line water is fairly easily obtained in the trench area.

March 20th.—We relieved the Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers in Cuinchy trenches to-day, but at night we received orders that the Brigade will be relieved to-morrow, so we shall come out again.

Information was received that 3820 Sergeant-Major A. E. Warnock has been appointed Quartermaster, with the honorary rank of Lieutenant (19th March 1915), vice Captain and Quartermaster A. S. Field, placed on retired pay on account of ill-health (18th March 1915). Warnock, therefore, assumed the duties.

Digitized by Google

March 21*st*.—We were relieved by the 1st K.R.R.C. (6th Brigade), and marched back to our billets in Beuvry for the night. One of our men was wounded to-day.

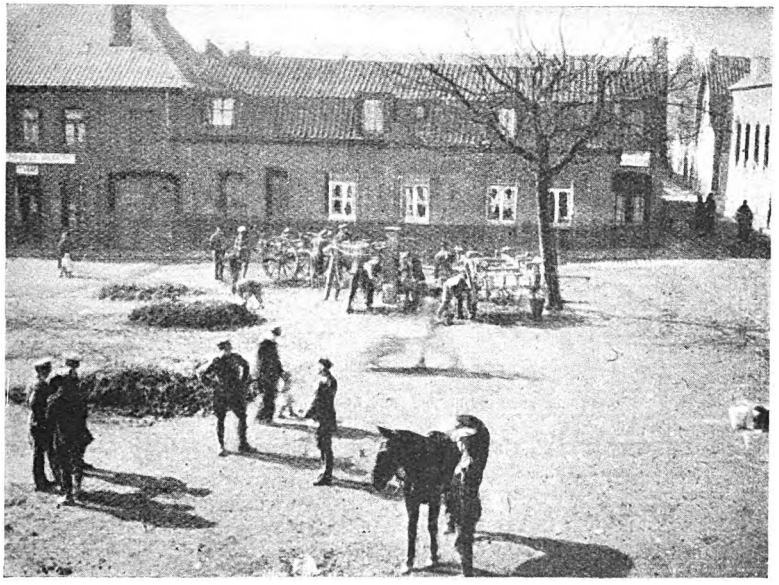
March 22*nd*.—Moved across to our old breastwork line near Festubert, in relief of the 2nd K.R.R.C. (2nd Brigade), and found the line much improved, principally owing to the recent dry weather. The Regiment, as before, is in sub-section C 1–Festubert–Le Plantin. Two companies in breastworks, one company in support of the village, and one in reserve near Regimental Head-quarters.

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

March 23*rd*.—(Trenches near Festubert.) The following officers joined from the Base :—

2nd Lieut. R. B. Kite, to be attached to A Company.
2nd Lieut. W. L. Barnard, to be attached to D Company.
2nd Lieut. H. V. Pendavis, D.S.O., to be posted to A Company.

Some heavy shelling of the left company's breastwork during the morning.



BEUVRY SQUARE.
March 1915.

Digitized by Google

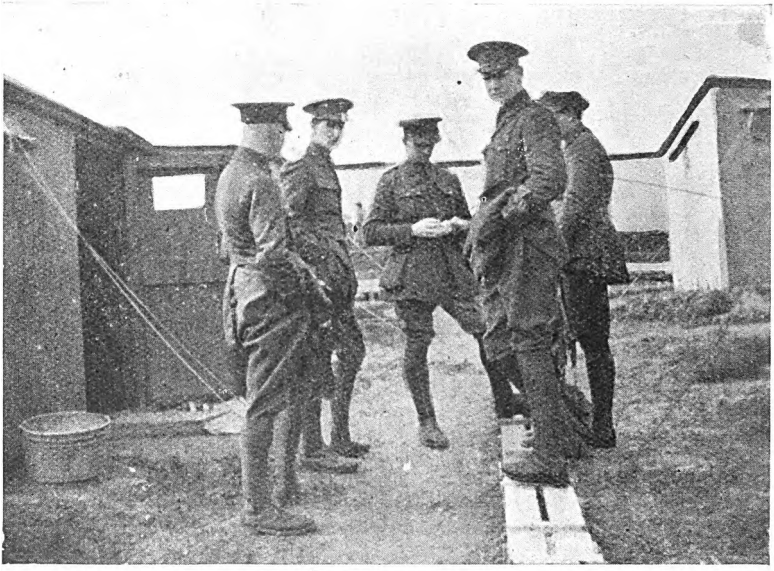
March 24th.—Lieut. C. S. Baines, D.S.O., rejoined from the Base, and was re-posted to B Company.

Less shelling to-day.

March 25th.—Wet day. Still impossible to dig deeper than 6 inches without encountering water. Working parties busy every night lengthening and completing new arms of breastworks. 2nd Lieut. C. R. Horley was wounded in the foot.

The following officers joined from the Base :—

Lieut. C. A. F. Fowke, to be attached to B Company.
2nd Lieut. D. A. W. Sewell, to be attached to C Company.



SOME 2ND BATTALION OFFICERS.
Havre, 17th March 1915.
[Lieuts. Sewell, Tuck, Baines, Kite, Barnard.]

March 26th–27th.—Some shelling on the right of the breastworks.

Two platoons of A Company of the 17th London Regiment (T.F.) were attached to the Regiment for 24 hours' instruction in trench duties on these days.

Casualties :—

March 23rd, 2 wounded.
24th March, 1 killed, 1 wounded.

Digitized by Google

25th March, 2 wounded.
26th March, 1 killed, 2 wounded
27th March, 1 wounded.

Private Quarrington, attached to the 170th Company R.E., was killed at Cuinchy on the 25th March.

March 28th.—The Regiment was relieved by the Inniskillings, and went into billets at Gorre.

2ND BATTALION HEADQUARTERS AT "ESTAMINET CORNER, FESTUBERT. April 1915.

[Major A. J. F. Eden, Capt. J. A. Southey, Lt. C. J. Warner.]

March 29th.—(Gorre.) Captain C. O. Chichester left the Regiment, on transfer to the Base, for duty.

March 30th.—Lieut. D. H. W. Humfrey proceeded to St. Venant for a course of instruction in the Trench Mortar Gun.

March 31st.—(Gorre.) One man of a working party was wounded.

Digitized by Google

ROLL OF OFFICERS, 1st April 1915.

Major A. J. F. Eden, Commanding.
Major G. N. Colvile, D.S.O., Senior Major.
Captain L. F. Scott, Transport Officer.
Captain C. Fitzgerald, Machine-gun Section.
Lieut. J. A. Southey, Machine-gun Section.
Lieut. (tempy. Captain) R. B. Crosse, D.S.O., Adjutant.
Lieut. A. E. Warnock, Quartermaster.
Lieut. E. Scott, R.A.M.C. (tempy. relieved by Lieut. G. Carter-Mitchell, R.A.M.C.).

A Company.

Captain and Bt.-Major E. H. Kirkpatrick.
Captain H. N. Jackson (sick leave to England).
Lieut. C. J. Warner.
2nd Lieut. E. H. Whitfeld (tempy. Lt.).
2nd Lieut. F. F. L. Riddle.
2nd Lieut. R. B. Kite.
2nd Lieut. H. V. Pendavis, D.S.O.
2nd Lieut. L. A. Dashwood.

B Company.

Captain F. H. Beaufort.
Lieut. C. S. Baines, D.S.O.
Lieut. C. A. F. Fowke.
2nd Lieut. G. W. Titherington (tempy. Lt.).
2nd Lieut. W. J. Eighteen.
2nd Lieut. C. Dean.
2nd Lieut. J. B. Solomon.

C Company.

Captain S. F. Hammick.
Lieut. D. H. W. Humfrey.
2nd Lieut. D. A. W. Sewell.
2nd Lieut. R. D. Rendel (tempy. Lt.).
2nd Lieut. C. B. Baker.

Digitized by Google

D Company.

Captain G. BLEWITT.
Lieut. W. G. TOLSON (tempy. Capt.).
2nd Lieut. J. W. G. WYLD (tempy. Lt.).
2nd Lieut. R. E. B. BULL.
2nd Lieut. J. L. JOHNSTON.
2nd Lieut. G. FIELD.
2nd Lieut. W. L. BARNARD.

April 1st–4th.—(Gorre.) In Brigade Reserve. Companies employed in route marching, musketry training, bomb-throwing, negotiating obstacles across country, etc.

On the 1st April the 15th reinforcement (26 men) and on the 4th the 16th reinforcement (30 men) arrived.

April 4th.—Lieut. Humfrey returned from course of instruction in Trench Mortar Gun. It being Easter Day, the Regiment attended a Parade Service, held by the Bishop of Khartoum, in Gorre Château.

FROM CAPTAIN G. BLEWITT'S DIARY.

April 5th.—(Gorre to Le Plantin Breastworks, where we relieved the Inniskillings.) A pouring wet night. I fell into a hole with my greatcoat on—the only dry thing I had—and afterwards was dripped on in the dug-out for the rest of the night.

April 6th.—(Le Plantin Breastworks.) Rained again hard. The Worcestershire's working party had 2 killed and 3 wounded, and we had a lot of trouble getting them away. The party works nightly, and is joining Givenchy to the end of Yellow Road by a new breastwork. During the day I spent some time firing at loopholes with my telescopic sights.

April 7th.—D Company from Le Plantin Breastworks to Reserve. Digging party 11 p.m. to 4 a.m. Robert Bull and I took them, and had no casualties.

April 8th.—Robert and I did not get up until lunch. Walked up to Le Plantin in afternoon. "Tiger" Wyld and Billy took the working party at night.

April 9th.—Le Plantin Reserve to Breastworks. D Company relieved B Company at 7 p.m. Quiet night. Some of the 19th London Regiment (T.F.) were mixed up with us, to gain experience.

Digitized by Google

April 10th.—I did some sniping in the morning. In the afternoon we were shelled a bit, causing two breaches in front and one in back breastwork. We were relieved by B Company after dark, and went into support in the village.

From the Regimental Diary.

April 13th.—From trenches near Festubert into Divisional Reserve, at Les Choquaux and Essars, on relief, in the evening, by the 2nd R. Inniskilling Fusiliers.

This period in the trenches (5th–13th April)[1] was very quiet. On two whole days there was no shelling whatever by the enemy. Some successful sniping on our part. On several occasions a rifle with telescopic and another with magnifying sights (both privately owned) were found very useful.

The new line of trenches towards Section B 3 was completed by hurdle work.

From the 8th to 10th April three companies of the 19th London Regiment (T.F.) shared duties with us in the breastworks; small parties of officers and N.C.O.'s came at first, then whole companies, and on the 11th–12th a complete company of theirs relieved one of ours in breastworks, our relieving company going into Reserve near Regimental Headquarters.

On the 7th April the 17th reinforcement (30 men), under Captain H. M. Dillon, arrived.

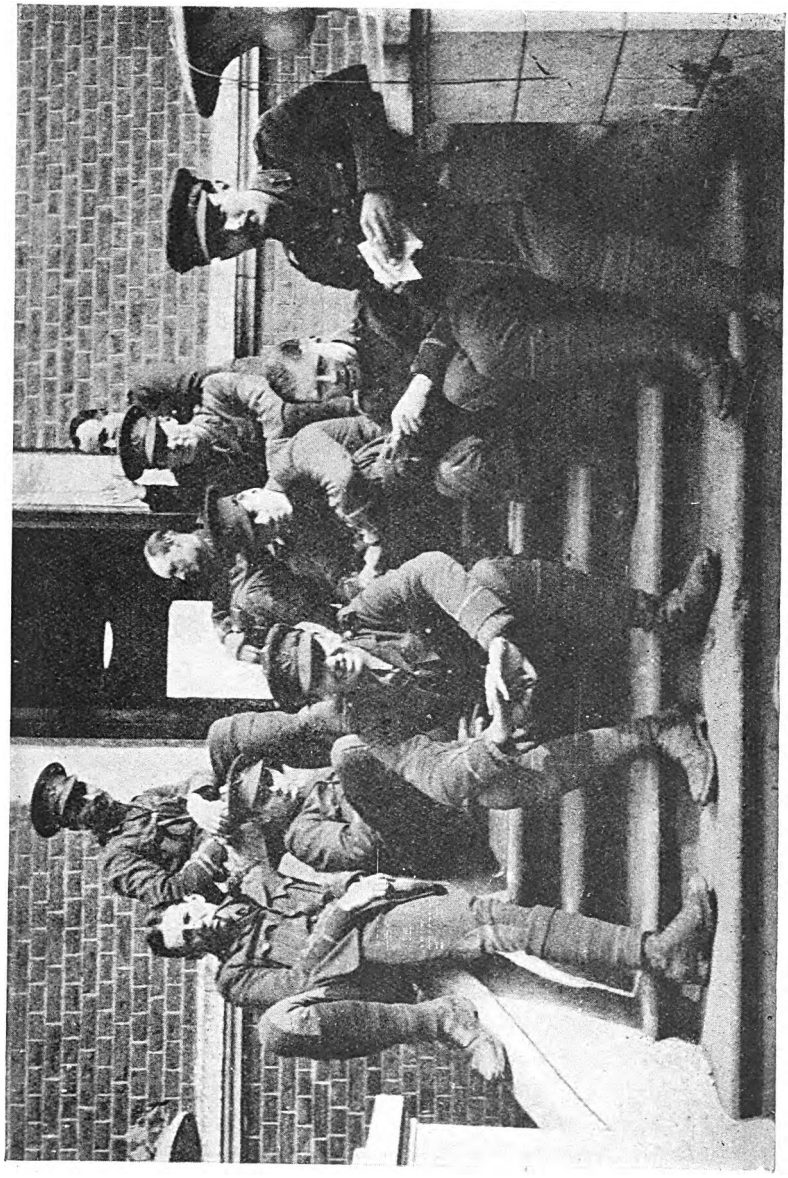
Casualties :—

6th April, 2 killed, 1 wounded.
8th April, 1 wounded.
10th April, 2 wounded.
12th April, 2 wounded.

April 14th–22nd.—(Les Choquaux and Essars, in billets.) Route marching, drills, and musketry carried out daily. On the 18th 2nd Lieut. J. B. Solomon left, to join Headquarters Royal Flying Corps, to be attached on probation, as an observer.

[1] Major Eden's Diary has the following entry:—"Enemy very quiet, and do not seem to be working much. It is difficult to see what they are doing, but Warner, who is now doing excellent work as Reconnaissance and Observation Officer, makes frequent visits to Givenchy, whence he gets a good side view of all the Boche territory in front of us."—Ed.

Digitized by Google



SOME 2ND BATTALION OFFICERS.
April 1915.

Digitized by Google

MAJOR EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

April 18th.—Managed to hire a motor-car in Bethune to-day, and in the afternoon Kirkpatrick, Crosse, and I went off, through Estaires and Armentières, to visit our 4th (Territorial) Battalion and the Bucks Battalion, both of which we found close to Ploeg street Wood. Saw Ballard, Bartlett, Bridgewater, and other officers, as well as Sergeants-Major Adams and Vincent. They have only very recently arrived in this country.

April 21st.—The 18th reinforcement (3 sergeants and 57 men) arrived.

April 23rd.—During this rest period a most successful inter-platoon football tournament was played off. The Headquarters' Company produced two teams, so that 18 in all entered. We were fortunate in having three grounds going at one time, but they were needed, for there were some extremely closely contested games—in fact, one match was played three times before a result could be obtained. The final to-day was between No. 12 Platoon and No. 3, and the former won from the only goal scored—obtained by a good rush in the first two minutes. We have a good many officers now, and nearly every team had a subaltern playing for it.

In the afternoon we relieved the 17th Battalion London Regiment (T.F.) in the trenches near Festubert.

April 24th.—We had a quiet twenty-four hours, without casualties, and were relieved by the 19th Londons, when we proceeded to billets in the Rue d'Aire quarter of Bethune—a very poor billeting area.

April 25th-30th.—(In billets in Bethune.) The whole Brigade now here in reserve. Rumours of a coming spring offensive began to circulate, and it soon became evident that we were undergoing the special fattening-up process preparatory to such. Company training was in full swing, and suitable ground, though limited in area, was available between the town and Beuvry, so much good work was put in. At night we furnished occasional working parties. Delightful warm weather now.

On the 27th the 19th reinforcement (2 sergeants and 43 men) arrived, and on the 30th the Regiment gave a capital concert in the Theatre.

Digitized by Google

Extract from a letter written by Lieut C. A. F. Fowke, B Company, dated 28th April 1915:—

Last night we paraded at 5.15 p.m., and started for a seven-mile march, with Captain Hammick, of C Company, in command. He was riding, and we had a tool-cart drawn by two horses, so we were making a fair amount of noise. When we had nearly reached the place, he halted us in the road, and ordered us to issue picks and shovels, while he went on to meet an officer of the R.E., who was to show him where the trench was to be dug.

C COMPANY OFFICERS.

In two minutes he was back again, saying, "'A German sniper had the cheek to have three shots at me." Meanwhile a Sapper had arrived and seemed worried. Eventually he said that troops were forbidden to use the road by which we had come up in daylight, but since we were there, we could not go back. All horses, however, must be got rid of at once. Hammick wanted to keep his horse, but, after some discussion, all the horses were sent away, and the men (150) took cover as much as possible. The Sapper asked me and five others to go with him, to see what work

Digitized by Google

was to be done. Just as we stopped to look at a trench, dug correctly on the previous night, the Germans turned a machine-gun on to us, and we dived into that trench like rabbits. Two bullets whizzed between my head and the next man's, but no one was hurt. There we lay until it got darker, when the men were brought up to dig the new trench. We were shot at there, too, but not before we had got some cover, and we finished the job without any casualties. On our way back we met a field-kitchen, sent up to meet us by the Bishop of Khartoum (our Brigade Chaplain), and every one got a cup of hot Oxo or cocoa, for which we were most grateful.

Major Eden's Diary continued.

May 1st.[1]—(Bethune.) Took the Regiment out to some specially prepared trenches about six miles away, to practise getting out of and attacking from them. On the way back General Sir Douglas Haig, commanding the 1st Army, met us. He was pleased to say that the Regiment looked splendid, and called to mind how well they had fought in the woods near Ypres last November.

May 3rd.—We changed our billets to-day, the whole Regiment being now accommodated in the Tobacco Factory, which is an improvement on the Rue d'Aire area. The officers' quarters are also much better. We have had to buy a new mess-cart—the third we have had during the war. We are living fairly sumptuously here, with Sergeant Ward looking after our interests uncommonly well. As each company now has six officers, we have a great number in mess. Opposite our quarters is a large sausage factory, which affords endless interest, especially to a certain very senior officer of the Regiment. Conferences, both at Brigade and Divisional Headquarters, are now very frequent.

May 4th.—(Bethune.) Took the Regiment out for a "peace-time" field-day near the Bois des Dames, and worked in combination with Cotton's 18-pr. battery in practising some of the lessons taught by the recent fighting at Neuve Chapelle. Weather now very close, with some rain.

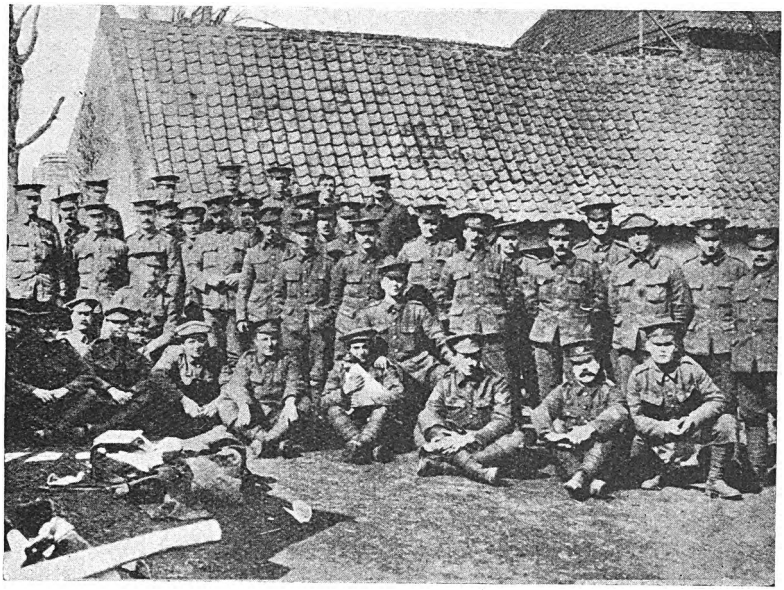
[1] Alterations in Roll of Officers between April 1st and May 1st:—Lieut. E. Scott, R.A.M.C., back at duty as Medical Officer; Captain H. N. Jackson, A Company, away sick; Lieut. C. J. Warner, transferred from A to C Company; Captain H. M. Dillon, commanding B Company; Captain F. H. Beaufort, second in command of B Company; 2nd Lieut. J. B. Solomon, B Company, to R.F.C.

Digitized by Google

May 8th.—(Bethune.) Officers readjusted in Companies as follows :—

A Company : Lieut. Warner rejoins this Company from C.
B Company : Captain Beaufort resumes command.
C Company : Captain Dillon assumes command of this Company, in place of Captain Hammick, who now becomes its 2nd Captain.

May 9th.—2nd Lieut. Pendavis, D.S.O., left, to join the Royal Flying Corps, as a probationer.



A 2ND BATTALION GROUP.

Digitized by Google

BATTLE OF FESTUBERT.

Richebourg l'Avoué.
(9th–26 May 1915.)

Towards the end of April was fought the Second Battle of Ypres, in which the Germans for the first time made use of gas in their attacks, with the result that the Allies were compelled to withdraw and take up a new line. The fighting in this area continued almost without intermission for a month, and gradually spread south, where, in order to assist the French offensive developing to the north of Arras, the British were ordered to advance to the attack, the task allotted to the 2nd Division and the Indian Division being the capture of the enemy's trenches opposite Richebourg L'Avoué and to the south-west in the direction of Givenchy. The Operation Orders, quoted below, give full details of what was intended, and the descriptions which follow show how the Regiment bore itself in endeavouring to fight its way through, between the 15th and 18th May.

Sir John French, in his Dispatch of the 15th June 1915, sums up the general result of the battle: "In the battle of Festubert above described the enemy was driven from a position which was strongly entrenched and fortified, and ground was won on a front of four miles to an average depth of 600 yards. The enemy is known to have suffered very heavy losses, and in the course of the battle 785 prisoners and 10 machine-guns were captured. A number of machine-guns were also destroyed by our fire."

Digitized by Google

MAJOR EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

May 9th.—At 1.30 a.m., as part of the 2nd Division, we moved out from Bethune to the vicinity of Gorre, where we remained behind a line of breastworks, as reserve to the 1st Division, who (in conjunction with the IVth Army Corps and the Indian Corps) had delivered an early morning attack on the enemy's lines near Richebourg St. Vaast. Unfortunately, both this attack and a second one later in the day failed in their object.

At 8 p.m. the Brigade was ordered to march through Le Touret, La Couture, and Richebourg St. Vaast to the relief of the 2nd

2ND BATTALION OFFICERS' QUARTERS.
In the Breastworks.

Brigade, 1st Division. During the afternoon I, with the Company Commanders, had reconnoitred the line which we were to occupy, but it was not until 1 a.m. (10th May) that we got final orders to relieve the Loyal North Lancashire Regiment in breastworks south of the Rue du Bois, near Richebourg l'Avoué. There were only two hours remaining before daylight, so the relief required quick work to carry through. Narrow communication trenches and some unburied dead impeded matters considerably, but the relief was successfully accomplished before daylight.

Digitized by Google

May 10*th*.—A busy day in the trenches organizing the line. Two companies in the front line breastworks; the other two companies in other lines, both north and south of the road. A good deal of shelling, from the effects of which the Regiment suffered considerably less than the other regiments of the Brigade, having only 1 man killed and 3 wounded.

May 11*th*.—Shelled again during the day. 2nd Lieut. C. B. Baker and 3 men were wounded; 2nd Lieut. J. L. Johnston missing and believed wounded. He went out in front of the line to recover wounded men.

FROM CAPTAIN G. BLEWITT'S DIARY.

May 11*th*.—Last night at 8 p.m. D Company moved from support breastworks (Rue du Bois) into the firing line. I was out from 8.30 until midnight bringing in wounded of the 1st Division from between the lines. We found seven (including an officer). A Company got six. A difficult job finding wounded amongst the dead, with German flares continually going up. I stupidly walked into German wire, thinking that it was our own.

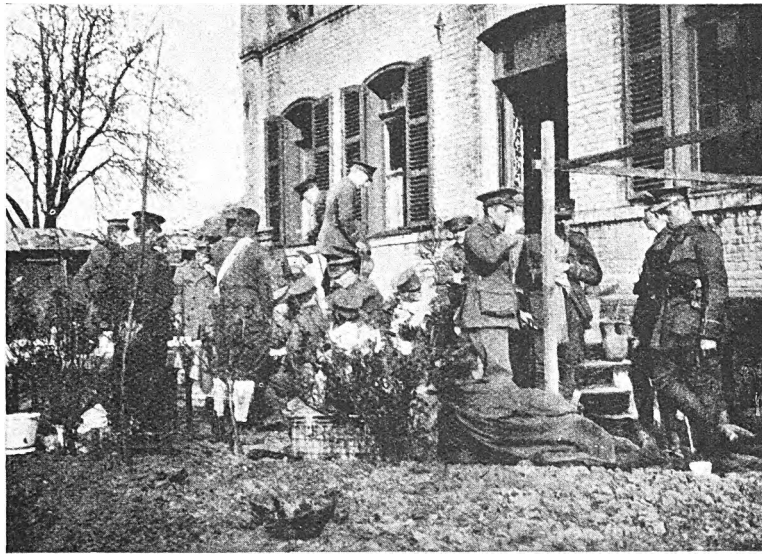
This morning Tolson and Sergeant Ashby kept us very anxious from 5 a.m. to 11.30 a.m., under the following circumstances: At 5 a.m. Sergeant Ashby pointed out to me a living man lying on the edge of a ditch, and asked me if he could go and bring him in. I gave him permission to try. He got to him and carried him back about 30 yards out of the 120 he had to cross; but the man was so heavy that he could get him no farther. Tolson then went out to help him, and after Tolson and Sergeant Ashby had carried him another 30 yards they were fired on. Sergeant Ashby was hit in the back, when Tolson cut his coat off, dressed his wound, and got him more or less under cover. He then shouted to me to sap the remaining 60 yards along the ditch towards them, starting under the parapet. This took longer than we expected, and before we had got through Private Gamble went out to help Tolson. Between them they first carried Sergeant Ashby back, and then returned and carried in the man who had been wounded on the 9th, in spite of being fired on again.

A busy day. Visited by R.A. and R.E. officers and others in connexion with the pending attack. At night "Johno" (Johnston) [1]

[1] "2nd Lieut. J. L. Johnston (3rd Battalion), Senior Dean of Magdalen College, Oxford, when the Prince of Wales was in residence. The Prince came to the Regiment once or twice to see him in the early months of 1915."—A. J. F. E.

Digitized by Google

was wounded and lost while trying to bring in wounded men. He went out with two stretcher-bearers to look for two men whom he had seen during the day. One of the stretcher-bearers, Private Hickman, returned with the information that they had been within 60 yards of the German trenches when they were challenged by a German sentry, who also shouted, "Hands up." While they were crawling away a flare went up, and the sentry shouted to his companions, who opened fire and wounded the other stretcher-bearer (Private Angel) in the side and Johnston in the stomach. Private



2ND BATTALION OFFICERS' MESS.

Richebourg St. Vaast, May 1915.

Hickman spoke to Johnston, who told him to go back and bring a party to fetch them in. Firing continued, and I did not allow the search party (Private Hickman, with Privates Stock and Inglefield) to go out for an hour. They brought in the stretcher-bearer Angel, who had managed to crawl some distance, and then they returned for Johnston, but after a long search came back without him. I decided not to allow further search, as I concluded that the Germans had found him and taken him in, and I was convinced that our men had been very thorough in their search.

Digitized by Google

MAJOR EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

May 12th.—Plenty of shelling again to-day, both on breastworks and communication trenches. Our officers and men have worked most splendidly in bringing in wounded from between the lines. In most cases the men were marked down by day and brought in at night; but both Fowke and Private Jones [1] did exceptionally gallant work in rescuing wounded men in broad daylight.

In the evening we were relieved by the Inniskillings, and returned to billets at Richebourg St. Vaast. We had 4 men wounded to-day.

May 13th.—(Richebourg St. Vaast. In Brigade Reserve.) A very large number of guns around this village keep up a deafening roar all day, which is very distracting. The enemy replied by shelling the village to-day.

May 14th.—Another Divisional Conference this morning, at which it was decided that an attack by night should be made from our present line.

May 15th.—The guns were more deafening and distracting than ever to-day, and all the German trenches opposite our line have been accurately and slowly shelled for three days preparatory to our attack.

The following were the Orders [2] for the attack, issued by the 5th Brigade :—

Secret. Copy No. 3.

OPERATION ORDER No. 29.

By

Brigadier-General A. A. CHICHESTER, D.S.O., Commanding 5th Infantry Brigade.

Reference { 1/10,000 Trench Map. 1/40,000 Squared Map. Sketch showing Trenches.

In the Field, 15th May 1915.

1. (*a*) The 1st Army is resuming its offensive to-night, with the object of pressing forward to Violaines and Beau Puits.

(*b*) The Indian Corps will assault simultaneously with 2nd Division, being on their immediate left, and establish a flank through V. 6 to our present line.

[1] Lieut. C. A. F. Fowke was awarded the Military Cross, and Private Jones the Distinguished Conduct Medal.—A. J. F. E.

[2] The Orders, as well as the description of the action, are given here in very considerable detail, in order to show the method of attack in vogue at this period of the war. See official maps referred to, but not reproduced here.—ED.

Digitized by Google

(*c*) The 7th Division is to assault at 3.15 a.m. to-morrow morning, on the front N. 1–P. 5.

(*d*) The 1st Corps have orders to secure the line of the road Festubert-La Tourelle, from points M. 3 to R. 13.

2. (*a*) The 2nd Division is to assault the German front trenches between R. 1 and the right of the Indian Corps at 11.30 p.m. to-night, and secure the line R. 1–R. 2–R. 5–R. 7–V. 4 under cover of darkness; at 3.15 a.m. to-morrow it is to press its attack simultaneously with the 7th Division to secure the Ferme Cour d'Avoué and the line of the Festubert-La Tourelle road from points P. 14 to R. 13, both inclusive.

(*b*) The 6th Brigade are attacking on the front R. 1 to the bend in the German line between R. 6 and V. 1 inclusive.

3. The 5th Brigade will assault :—

(*a*) The German first line trenches from the bend in the German line between R. 6 and V. 1 (exclusive) to the N.W. corner of the salient between V. 3 and V. 6.

(*b*) The German second line from R. 7 (inclusive) to a point N W. of V. 5, and get into touch with the Meerut Division at that point.

(*c*) At 3.15 a.m. the advance will be continued, with the object of capturing Ferme du Bois, establishing itself on the line Q. 12 (exclusive) to R. 13 (inclusive), maintaining touch with the Indian Corps.

The communication trench running S.E. to N.W. through Q. 15 will be included in the 6th Brigade front.

4. (*a*) The 2nd Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers and the 2nd Worcester Regiment will carry out the assault, as laid down in Special Instructions already sent out.

(*b*) The 2nd Oxfordshire and Bucks Light Infantry and the Glasgow Highlanders will support the Inniskilling Fusiliers and the 2nd Worcestershire Regiment respectively.

(*c*) The 2nd Highland Light Infantry will be in Reserve at S. 9. a. 58.

(*d*) The 5th Field Company R.E. will be in Reserve at S. 9. a. 91.

(*e*) No. 3 Trench Mortar Battery will advance to V. 1 in support, as soon as the German front line has been captured.

(*f*) Centre Section, No. 7 Mountain Battery, will remain in Richebourg ready to move.

Digitized by Google

5. The position when gained must be immediately consolidated. The work of consolidation, except as regards communication trenches, will be continued after daylight. The special working parties detailed for this will therefore not be withdrawn by the battalions.

6. In the event of a partial success, Officers commanding attacking battalions must hold on to and support any portion of the German line gained, organizing further attacks towards the flanks before daylight.

7. The 2nd Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers and the 2nd Worcestershire Regiment will be closed up on the front line breastworks and the two new cover trenches behind by 9 p.m.

The Glasgow Highlanders will pass house S. 9. a. 91 at 9 p.m.. and move to their places of assembly.

The 2nd Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry will pass house S. 9. a. 91 at 9.45 p m.

The 5th Field Company R.E. will arrive at S. 9. a. 91 at 10.15 p.m.

The 2nd Highland Light Infantry will arrive at S. 9. a. 58 at 10.30 p.m.

8. Advance Dressing-station at Cross-roads S. 3. c.

9. Brigade Ammunition Reserve and 1st Line Transport will remain in their present position.

10. Units will each send a representative with at least two watches to get the correct time at Brigade Headquarters about 7 p.m.

11. Brigade Headquarters will be at house S. 9. a. 91 from 10.30 p.m.

G. THORPE, Captain,
Brigade-Major 5th Infantry Brigade.

Issued at 4.30 p.m. :—

Copy No. 1 to Inniskilling Fusiliers.
,, No. 2 to Worcestershire Regiment.
,, No. 3 to Oxford Light Infantry.
,, No. 4 to Highland Light Infantry.
,, No. 5 to Glasgow Highlanders.
,, No. 5 to 5th Field Co. R.E.
,, No. 7 to 5th Field Ambulance.
,, No. 8 to No. 3 Trench Mortar Battery.

Digitized by Google

Copy No. 9 to No. 7 Mountain Battery.
,, No. 10 to Half Troop S. Irish Horse.
,, No. 11 to War Diary.
,, No. 12, 13, 14 Brigade Staff.

MAJOR EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

At 6 p.m. I issued the following orders :—

"The Regiment will parade to-night at 8.45 p.m., and will pass the starting point Auberge de la Mairie at 9 p.m. in order of Companies—Headquarters (less those detailed to follow)—A–C–D–B Companies, and then the rest of Headquarters as detailed.

"Machine-gun sections parade as ordered by their officers.

"Care is to be taken that water-bottles are full. The official time will be given out at Orderly Room at 7.15 p.m.; one N.C.O. per company and all signallers issued with watches will attend."

After mess, and before parading (at 8.45 p.m) to take up our final positions in the breastwork lines, I spoke a few words to all the officers. This was the last opportunity that I ever had of even seeing so many of these excellent fellows.

The troops detailed for the attack were disposed as follows : the 6th Infantry Brigade on the right, then the 5th Infantry Brigade, and then, prolonging the line northwards, 1 or 2 Divisions of the Indian Corps. The frontage was approximately from R. 1, through V. 1, to V. 6 (Allies Map $\frac{1}{10,000}$). The 5th Brigade had on the right the 2nd Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers, supported by ourselves; on the left the 2nd Worcestershire, supported by the Glasgow Highlanders; and the 2nd Highland Light Infantry in reserve.

We and the other supporting battalion had to supply, as working parties, 3 platoons each for the two leading battalions, the men carrying sand-bags and shovels The attack was timed to commence at 11.30 p.m., by which hour the two first lines of the leading battalions were to be outside our front line, lying down ready. There was no preliminary artillery bombardment, and our immediate objectives were the enemy's first line of trenches, and then, if these were successfully carried, the Ferme de Biez.

At 11.28 p.m. the enemy opened rifle and machine-gun fire The night was quite fine, but there was no moon. The Regiment moved out over the breastworks, when companies were so ordered, in

Digitized by Google

4 lines, each company in 2 lines. On the right C Company supported by B, on the left A Company supported by D.

After the Inniskillings had launched all their men, the Regiment was called on to reinforce them. The opposition was considerable, and it was very difficult to ascertain the results of the Inniskillings' onslaught.

At 11.55 p.m. I sent the following message to 5th Brigade Headquarters: "Commanding officer and last line Inniskillings just leaving now. German infantry fire apparently from their second line"; and at 12 midnight I reported: "I believe first line taken."

May 16th.—My next four messages to Brigade Headquarters were:—

12.20 a.m.: "Orderly reports V. 1 taken."

12.45 a.m.: "Half this Battalion is now in first line."

1.8 a.m.: "We are being shelled by field guns from La Tourelle direction. May Heavies be turned on? Have only two companies left in breastwork."

1.15 a.m.: "Worcesters have just reported that they have retired to their breastwork."

At 1 18 a.m. I communicated with the Worcestershire Regiment: "Are you attacking again at 1.30 a.m.? Please reply."

A message was then received from the 5th Brigade Headquarters: "B.M. 11, 1.15 a.m. Can you report further on situation? Do you know where left of Inniskillings rests? Have you sent forward grenadiers?"[1]

To which I replied, at 1.22 a.m.: "Your B.M. 11. Cannot say for certain where left of Inniskillings rests. My grenadiers have gone forward. Shelling of this breastwork now less. Am holding back my last company to co-operate with Worcesters' next attack at 1.30 a.m."

Shortly after this I received the Worcesters' reply, which was "No"; and at 1.49 a.m. I reported to the Brigade: "Worcesters inform me they are not attacking at 1.30 a.m. I have only one company left. Have no further information from our left front. Please instruct."

Two messages from 5th Brigade Headquarters followed, the first having crossed my message to them:—

"B.M. 16, 1.30 a.m. Worcesters will not attack again till 3.15 a.m., after bombardment from 2.45 a.m. Find out definitely

[1] Subsequently called "bombers."—ED.

Digitized by Google

where Inniskillings left rests, so that artillery fire can be arranged. Working party of H.L.I. has gone forward to try to make defensive flanks up ditch leading to V. 2."

"B.M. 19, 2 a.m. It is essential that ample protection be given to left flank of front line in German front line before daylight, as after that fire may be expected from left rear. Warn working party in front about this."

At 2.10 a.m. I sent the following to Brigade Headquarters: "I now feel pretty certain we have not got front of German line from V. 1 eastwards. Shall R.E. therefore dig forward from Cinder Track?"

And at 2.20 a.m. the following: "Inniskilling officer just returned reports we are in occupation of German second line trench about R. 7. Am sending two platoons to reinforce them."

A little later I received the first authentic information as to how the attack had been going in a message from 5th Brigade Headquarters, dispatched at 2.30 a.m.: "Sixth Brigade attack has been successful. Inniskillings have captured front line. Glasgows will carry our assault on the line V. 2 to north-west corner of salient east of V. 3. Gharwal Brigade are assaulting at same time. At 2.45 a.m. artillery will bombard German first and second line trenches. The assault will be delivered at 3.15 a.m. Glasgows must have two lines out in front by that time. Arrangements for attack as for Worcesters to-day." This was followed by the message: "B.M. 22, 2.50 a.m. H.L.I. are moving up behind you."

At 3.5 a.m. I reported to Brigade Headquarters: "Have definitely found out that V. 1 is our left. I believe Maxims still untouched between V. 1 and V. 2. We are still in possession of about R. 7."

The Brigade's next message was "B.M. 23, 3.10 a.m. Are you in touch with the front line? Do they require further support? If so, send forward your remaining troops and call on H.L.I., who are coming up behind you."

To this I replied at 3.21 a.m.: "Your B.M. 23. Not yet in touch by wire with front. H.L.I. must be used if further advance from here is required. I have only two platoons. Heavy shell-fire by enemy now proceeding."

I then communicated with the O.C. 2nd H.L.I.: "3.25 a.m. I have no troops left. Are you ordered to support me in attack? If so, can you come here yourself?"

Digitized by Google

During the next two hours the following messages passed between me and Brigade Headquarters :—

To 5th Brigade, 4.15 a.m. : "Your B.M. 23. Wire broken since 3.20 a.m. Yellow flags are being waved at V. 1. Not much sign of life east of V. 1. Possibly Maxim still hidden. Good line of approach for supporting troops is west of Cinder Track. Considerable shelling still continues."

From 5th Brigade, 4.45 a.m. : "Am out of touch with Glasgows. Please report their situation. Send orderly to find out. Did they attack?"

To 5th Brigade, 4.50 a.m. : "Have handed over breastwork to 2nd H.L.I., and am moving my headquarters forward. Glasgows occupying Worcesters' breastwork. They have not attacked. Am taking with me one company 2nd H.L.I."

To 5th Brigade, 6 a.m. : "Am reading messages of King's Royal Rifles, who appear well consolidated. Am trying to cross west of Cinder Track, but am annoyed by fire from near V. 2."

At 6 a.m. the Brigade sent the following message to the 2nd H.L.I.: "Are there any bombs left in store? If so, try to get them up to left of forward line."

We now knew that the attack by the 6th Brigade had succeeded,[1] as had that on about two-thirds of the 5th Brigade front, but on the left of the Regiment no ground had been gained, and no second attack had been attempted.

It was not until about 7 a.m. that I moved Regimental Headquarters to the captured German lines. We were rather fortunate in crossing the intervening 200 yards when we did, as when we were half-way across the enemy opened with shrapnel, which effectually prevented our Machine-gun Section from crossing, although Southey got over in some lucky way. Crosse and I lost Colvile en route, and it was not until some 20 minutes after our safe arrival that he appeared. He then reported that, as he came along, he got his feet very wet, so he sat down and proceeded to take his boots off, replacing his wet socks by dry ones from a casualty's kit !

Not until now were we really able to ascertain how much line we had captured, or how great our losses had been. The distance

[1] At 3.15 a.m. the 7th Division, about a mile to the right of the 6th Brigade, had made a successful attack, and advanced over at least two lines of German trenches.—A. J. F. E.

Digitized by Google

which our people had to traverse was considerable—between 200 and 300 yards; the night was very dark, which made it extremely difficult to keep direction, and I fear that this resulted in many platoons, or more probably sections, losing their way. From the reports which I now received from those holding the captured line, it was easy to realize how great had been their difficulties.

During the attack Whitfeld and a party of men, by good work, succeeded in capturing a German machine-gun and 3 prisoners, after killing 7 or 8 of the gun detachment, and established a strong post, which marked the extreme left of our success. This point was then most ably held by Kite and a scratch party of bombers throughout the day.

Shortly after I had reached the new line I came across Beaufort, and gave him some orders about the consolidation of the line. The poor fellow had not gone two paces from me when a bullet, fired by a German sniper, passed through his head, and killed him stone dead on the spot.

One of the first things that occurred to me was the vital necessity of everyone setting to work to clean his rifle, as by now they had become choked with dirt. The men, however, were not entirely dependent on their own weapons, as we found a good many German rifles, as well as plenty of ammunition and bombs. The Regiment occupied about 120 yards of front, and the men were very crowded in the trench, there being a far greater number in it than were necessary; but, as long as daylight lasted, there was no possibility of thinning them out. It was only at considerable risk that our runners, who, as always, did admirable service, were able to carry reports to and from the breastwork line. The congestion was presently relieved to a certain extent by making a trench on our side of the original German parapet, and, most mercifully, the enemy, though he plastered our old lines with shells, left us alone throughout the day.

At 8.45 a.m. the 5th Brigade sent the following message to the Highland Light Infantry :—

"B.M. 40. Brigade will form a defensive flank through V. 1 to our present breastworks. Inniskillings and Oxfords will consolidate their present position. H.L.I. will endeavour to join up with V. 1 by digging out the trench begun during the night. If R.E. assistance is wanted it should be asked for. Please pass this to Oxfords and Inniskillings."

Digitized by Google

The morning passed in consolidating our position, and at 2 p.m. I reported to 5th Brigade Headquarters: "We are in a good position in German front line, but rather too crowded. 6th Infantry Brigade is on our right and in German second line. Bombs, Véry pistols, and ammunition very essential. If a pair of machine-guns could reach here it would greatly strengthen our left flank. No wire between first and second lines, or in gap north-east of R. 7. Have been trying to get visual signalling with H.L.I. and Z.E. Station, but failed. My signaller at transmitting station was wounded."

At 3.30 p.m. I received a message which had been sent, by 5th Brigade Headquarters, to the Glasgows at 12.35 p.m., as follows :—

"It is intended to attack the German lines from R. 7 northwards. Oxfords to carry out attack from German first line V. 1 southwards after bombardment. When will Oxfords be ready, and have troops organized for the attack? Pass this message to H.L.I., and for report to Oxfords, so that the bombardment can be arranged. The actual hour of assault will be fixed when I have the information. H.L.I. and Glasgows will support from our trenches and get battalions in depth. H.L.I. and Glasgows will at once send someone to repair telegraph wire."

I acknowledge this at 3.35 p.m.: "Your message to Glasgows, timed 12.35 p.m., just received. Will be ready at 4.45 p.m. There is still considerable shelling. We are very crowded in these trenches. Casualties so far:—Killed: Captain Beaufort, Lieut. Humfrey, Lieut. Bull. Wounded: Captains Dillon, Blewitt, Hammick, Tolson, Lieuts. Baines, Titherington, Sewell, Wyld, Whitfeld, Barnard. Missing and at present unaccounted for: Major Kirkpatrick, Lieut. Warner, Lieut. Rendel, 2nd Lieut. Riddle, 2nd Lieut. Dean, 2nd Lieut. Dashwood. Other ranks cannot now say, but probably 50 per cent, and Inniskillings very similar."

Shortly afterwards I received in succession two notes from the Officer Commanding the 2nd H.L.I.; the first was as follows :—

"I sent you a message received from Brigade through Glasgows. It is not clear if I support by attack or only by fire. Thorpe thinks the latter. I will forward you bombs, ammunition, etc., but do you still want machine-guns, as you will be having an offensive flank, and not defensive? They could get up during the bombardment. If you still require them please semaphore 'Yes.'"

Digitized by Google

Second Note from O.C. 2nd H.L.I. to O.C. Oxfordshire.

"Last instructions changed again. Now we are to consolidate and hold our position. The Brigade wants to know from you the following :—

"1. Can you hold your position with your own battalion alone (allowing the Inniskillings to withdraw) ?

"2. The exact position you occupy, and the Inniskillings, and which side of the parapet.

"3. Have you or they any men in the German 2nd line at R. 7 ?

"4. Do you want any help in the way of working parties, sandbags, tools, etc. ?

"5. He wishes you to get all your men together and reorganize.

"If you will send it to me I will 'phone it on. I take it you will now want your machine-guns ?"

At 4.55 p.m. I answered the above questions :—

"We can hold our position alone, allowing Inniskillings to withdraw, provided our two Maxims, and plenty of bombs, tools, Véry pistols and ammunition, and S.A. ammunition, are sent us. We and Inniskillings occupy from V. 1 to communication trench 100 yards south, occupying both sides of the parados. Only the Sixth Infantry Brigade occupy R. 7. A communication trench to our original first line is very necessary, as is also telephone communication, or failing that, signalling. I have now no operators or instruments available."

Nothing further happened until night, when we were relieved by two companies of the 2nd H.L.I., and returned to our original breastwork line in reserve. Crosse and I went back by a somewhat lengthy route, and made some most unwelcome and cruel discoveries about our unfortunate casualties; at the same time we solved the fate of many poor fellows, who until then had been reported missing.

Our stretcher-bearers did yeoman service throughout the night; but, had there been more available, we could have employed three times the number. Scott, our Medical Officer, was a most indefatigable worker

May 17th.—The night passed without anyone obtaining much rest, and at 6 a.m. orders were received to the effect that the

Digitized by Google

2nd H.L.I. would prepare, in conjunction with the 6th Brigade, to attack the Ferme de Biez, whilst the Regiment was to support them.[1]

In the course of the morning Crosse and I, with Field and about 20 men, went forward to reconnoitre the best line for our advance. Some Indian Pioneers had dug a new communication trench for three parts only of the way. We eventually reached the headquarters of the H.L.I., having had one of the most difficult and trying journeys I have ever experienced. Things were not going well with the projected attack, and the enemy shelled our line everywhere very vigorously.

The bulk of the Regiment remained for the day in the breastwork line, on which the German fire was both accurate and destructive. In spite of the energy displayed by Colvile in disposing of the men in what appeared to be the safest places, we had a considerable number of casualties.

As it grew dark I went down to Brigade Headquarters to make a personal report. The stretcher-bearers continued their good work of bringing in the wounded, and shortly after midnight the Regiment was relieved by the 15th Sikhs, when we returned to temporary billets at Richebourg St. Vaast.

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

Casualties, 15th to 18th May[2]:—

KILLED.

Captain F. H. BEAUFORT.
Lieut. R. E. B. BULL.
Lieut. D. H. W. HUMFREY.
2nd Lieut. L. A. DASHWOOD.
2nd Lieut. F. E. L. RIDDLE.

And 42 other ranks.

Total killed, 47.

WOUNDED.

Captain H. M. DILLON.
Captain G. BLEWITT.
Captain S. F. HAMMICK.

[1] It was intended that the 2nd Division should advance, in order to secure a junction with the 7th Division, on the right.—ED.

[2] Corrected up to 7th June 1915.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. (tempy. Captain) W. G. TOLSON.
Lieut. C. S. BAINES, D.S.O.
Lieut. G. W. TITHERINGTON.
Lieut. D. A. D. SEWELL.
Lieut. J. W. G. WYLD.
Lieut. E. H. WHITFELD.
2nd Lieut. W. J. EIGHTEEN.
2nd Lieut. C. DEAN.
2nd Lieut. W. L. BARNARD.

And 270 other ranks, and 2 men of R.A.M.C. attached.

Total wounded, 284.

MISSING.

Captain and Brevet-Major E. H. KIRKPATRICK.
Lieut. C. J. WARNER.
Lieut. R. D. RENDEL.

And 61 other ranks.

Total missing, 64.

Grand Total, killed, wounded, and missing, 395 all ranks.

Most probably the missing are either killed or wounded, as some of the area fought over was not won, and it was almost impossible to search it even after dark.

All the area also between our original front line and the German line was so shell-swept that it is very probable that many bodies were entirely destroyed by this fire.

The following accounts by wounded officers and N.C.O.'s relate to the fighting on the 15–16th May:—

FROM CAPTAIN G. BLEWITT'S DIARY.

May 15th–16th.—At 11.30 p.m. the attack commenced. The Worcesters, on our left, did not succeed, but the Inniskillings and ourselves, followed by the H.L.I., took and held two lines of German breastworks; the 6th Brigade, on our right, also being successful. The Regiment attacked with A and C in the front line, D and B in the second. When my first platoons went, our breastworks were so full of wounded that we had to file over and form up on the enemy's side of it. As we started to advance across the 400 yards,

Digitized by Google

LIEUT. E. H. WHITFELD AND 2ND LIEUT. L. A. DASHWOOD.
2nd Battalion, 1915.

I was hit in the left shoulder. Robert Bull [1] came to me, and I handed the company over to him at 2 a.m. (16th). I then walked back to Richebourg St. Vaast, a pretty painful and perilous journey. The Rue du Bois was hell.

Extract from a letter, dated 29th May 1915, to Major Eden, from Captain H. M. Dillon (Commanding C Company), then in hospital in London :—

My career was very short after I saw you behind the A barricade. I sent Sewell over as soon as his, the leading platoon, was closed up; and as soon as Humfrey came up I went over the top with him and his platoon, and we all got forward. After about a hundred yards we lay down for a minute, to get our wind and collect, and here poor Humfrey was killed next to, and almost touching, me.

We went on again, and I was blown up by a shell, and have rather an indistinct recollection of what happened afterwards. Eventually I found that I had lost all strength in my left leg, and here I am with a hole 3½ inches deep in it.

[1] 2nd Lieut. Bull, who led D Company across the open when Captain Blewitt was wounded, was checked, in front of the German trenches, at some wire which had not been destroyed, and was killed instantaneously by a bullet in the head.—ED.

Digitized by Google

Our losses again have been dreadful, but it is a great consolation to know that the Regiment got there. I thought the men were splendid, as the fire was fearful, but they all seemed keen to go on, and, in fact, unless Sewell led them, C Company must have gone on under their N.C.O.'s after I was hit.

I suppose A Company got mixed up in the redoubt on the left. I was rather puzzled at first, when I got over our barricade, how to keep direction, as the flanks seemed to come right round in a semi-circle, and I know that I started to go too much to the left; but I corrected the mistake after the first advance. I came to the conclusion that the Germans must have had machine-guns in advance of their barricade to our left front. I wish I had been able to reach their barricade. However, better luck next time.

Letter, dated Cambridge Barracks, Portsmouth, 17th July 1915, from Corporal Maguire (C Company) to Major Eden, Commanding the Regiment:—

I have received your welcome letter dated 13th, and I am very grateful indeed for your kind and thoughtful wishes for myself and comrades I am pleased to say there are a good many men

2ND LIEUT. C. R. HORLEY AND LIEUT. C. J. WARNER,
2nd Battalion, 1915.

Digitized by Google

returned and quite recovered from their wounds, and hope to rejoin the Regiment as soon as possible. Their only fear is that they may be drafted to another regiment. You will excuse me if I did not explain fully in my last letter that I belonged to C Company—Mr. Sewell's Platoon—Number Eleven. I am sorry to say that we lost sight of Mr. Sewell going across to the attack, but Sergeant French and myself managed to keep the men together fairly well, though by the time we got into the left portion of the enemy trench there were only a few left. The right portion was still occupied by the enemy with a machine-gun.

I think Mr. Whitfeld was the officer who took a few men with him and put the gun out of action, and I think accounted for all the Germans with it. I did not see anything more of Mr. Whitfeld, but I believe he went back to the dressing-station. About that time Sergeant French was killed, which left me in charge and in very poor straits for men, with only four and myself—all being wounded—one badly. Private Howard, who I had placed on sentry in the German communication trench, reported that a large body of the enemy had come through and got into an unoccupied portion of the line on our left. Shortly afterwards they tried to bomb us from the trench. I asked for a volunteer to go back and report to you how we were situated, and Private Howard volunteered to go. What I mean by the unoccupied portion is that it was not occupied by our men, but I do not think that it was really ever empty, as the Germans were continually bombing from it, until you sent reinforcements across, when the enemy retired. My idea in sending back Private Howard to you was to explain our exact position, as I could not ascertain if the enemy had any machine-guns with them. I wanted more men to get the enemy out of it and to make it as safe as possible for any future reinforcements coming across to us.

I am very glad to hear from you, Sir, that things turned out the reverse to what I thought. I think the idea of the enemy in trying to bomb us out was to get back to the machine-gun and use it against the supports coming across to us. I am pleased to say that the men with me held on very well, and I think it was only their well-directed rapid fire that kept the enemy back. I can only give you two of the names of my men—Lance-Corporal G. Stokes and Private Howard (E.G. 7176), both of C Company. The other two men belonged to the Inniskilling Fusiliers. Lance-Corporal G. Stokes was wounded again, and, I believe, has since died. Private Howard I have seen here.

Digitized by Google

I think the time was as near as possible between 6 a.m. and 6.30 a.m. when I sent back for reinforcements. I might add that I am almost certain that it was near that time, because I remember asking the officer who came across and took command of the trench, just after I sent back for reinforcements. I do not remember the officer's name, but I believe he belonged to A Company. He told me he had been lying out attending to some wounded during the night.

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR REWARDS.

Lieut. C. A. F. FOWKE.

At Richebourg l'Avoué on the 12th May 1915, crawling out to within 150 yards of the German line, and returning single-handed with a man, wounded on the 9th May, whom he carried in on his back up a wet ditch under constant rifle fire for 150 yards.

Lieut. (Tempy. Captain) W. G. TOLSON.
8145 Sergeant E. ASHBY.
12141 Private E. H. GAMBLE.

At Richebourg l'Avoué, on the 11th May 1915, gallant conduct in bringing in a man wounded on the 9th May. In the first instance Sergeant Ashby (already awarded the D.C.M.) who, while endeavouring to bring the man in, was wounded; and then Captain Tolson and Private Gamble, who succeeded in bringing in safely each wounded man separately.

10053 Private R. JONES.

At Richebourg l'Avoué, on the 11th May 1915, going out alone in daylight and bringing in a man wounded on the 9th May.

Lieut. E. H. WHITFELD.

On the 16th May 1915, at Richebourg l'Avoué, on his arrival with a small party in the German trenches, after being wounded, at once attacking the detachment still working a machine-gun, killing 7 men, capturing the gun, and taking 5 prisoners.

2nd Lieut. R. B. KITE.

At Richebourg l'Avoué, on the 16th May 1915, continuous good work for over 15 hours, when in command of a bombing party, in

Digitized by Google

successfully guarding the entrance (left flank) at V. 17, and keeping the enemy at a safe distance, the supply of bombs being at times very short.

Lieut E. SCOTT (R.A.M.C.).

At Richebourg l'Avoué, on the 16th, 17th, 18th May 1915, specially energetic work in searching for and tending wounded on the battlefield, and organizing stretcher parties for their collection.

9665 Private H. FUZZENS.
9858 Private H. ROWE.

At Richebourg l'Avoué, on the 16th May 1915, on several occasions, under heavy shell-fire, carrying messages back from the captured line of trenches, they being at times the only means of communication.

10021 Private E. ZEACLE.
10063 Private F. WYKES.

At Richebourg l'Avoué, on the 16th May 1915, bringing a box of bombs under heavy shell-fire at a time when these were scarce and communication difficult. Both were wounded when within 30 yards of the captured German line.

7076 Private E. HOWARD.

At Richebourg l'Avoué, on the 16th May 1915, bringing back a report on the situation in the front line when information was very scarce.

Digitized by Google

FURTHER TRENCH WARFARE.

MAY–JULY 1915.

The 52nd came out of action with a total loss of close on four hundred of all ranks. Never before in its history had the Regiment suffered so heavily, except at the storming of Badajoz, when its casualties numbered twenty more. Other regiments of the Division had suffered equally, and it was taken out of the line for a period of rest, reorganization, and training.

For a fortnight the Regiment remained in billets behind the line, and then returned to trench duty, at which it continued until the end of July, having in the meanwhile received from home ample reinforcements of officers and men to make good its losses.

Throughout this period the British Army was engaged in different localities, but principally in the vicinity of Ypres, where the enemy made a determined but vain attack on Hooge on the 2nd June, and a more successful one at the same point on the 30th July, when, with the assistance of burning liquid—his new device—he forced our troops back a short distance, to a new line of trenches.

MAJOR EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

May 18th.—By 5 a.m. Crosse and I returned from Brigade Headquarters, and were back again with the Regiment at Richebourg St. Vaast; but under what sad conditions, and how different the Regiment from what it was when we left the place on the night of the 15th! Our Headquarter Staff had come out of it unscathed, but of the Company Officers only one per company was left—twenty being among the killed, wounded, or missing. Thank goodness we were all left to sleep for a few hours, as the Brigade was not ordered to march until 2 p.m. At that hour we paraded with the Brigade,

Digitized by Google

and, marching through Le Touret, Avelette, and Hinges, reached the small scattered village of Bellerive (10 miles) at 7 p.m. Very poor billets, and much crowded even for our depleted numbers.

The 20th reinforcement of 130 men joined the Regiment in the evening.

May 19th.—Our billets being too small for the strength of the Regiment, we moved after dinner, about half a mile, to the extremely pretty village of Gonnehem. But this is not to be our resting, for we now have orders that the Brigade is moving tomorrow into a fresh area, as the present one is being allotted to the 7th Division.

May 20th.—(Gonnehem to Raimbert, 7½ miles.) We had a good night's rest before parading at 8 a.m. Battalions then moved independently, and we marched through Burbure to Raimbert, which we reached at about noon. This is a curious little mining village, and as there are no barns or other large buildings the men are all billeted by twos and threes in the miners' cottages, built in long rows, and are thoroughly enjoying their comfortable quarters. We are now a considerable way behind the line, and it is a distinct relief to be away from the incessant noise of the guns for a little while.

May 21st.—(Raimbert.) In the afternoon a special parade of the Regiment was held, at which Major-General Horne, Commanding the 2nd Division, thanked all ranks very sincerely for their good services during the past ten days.

May 22nd.—(Raimbert.) The whole Regiment bathed in an excellent washing establishment in one of the mines. Reinforcements of officers [1] commenced to arrive, and it was good to have Higgins, Owen, and Newton-King amongst us once more.

May 23rd.—(Whit Sunday.) The Bishop held an open-air Parade Service for the Regiment, and afterwards administered Holy Communion in an estaminet, the only available building. Every one is now feeling considerably rested.

May 24th.—(Raimbert.) Company Training commenced to-day. During the morning our Corps Commander, Lieut.-General Sir Charles Monro, K.C.B., visited the Regiment. He had no parade, but told me that he considered "that the Regiment had once more behaved as it had always done throughout this campaign—that is,

[1] *Joined on 22nd May* :—Captain C. G. Higgins (wounded, 16th September 1914); Lieut. R. M. Owen (wounded, 14th September 1914); Lieut. P. F. Newton-King (wounded, 21st October 1914); 2nd Lieut. P. C. Webster (3rd Battalion).

Digitized by Google

admirably"—which was nice to hear. He asked me to communicate this to all ranks, so I published it in Regimental Orders.

May 25th.—Not left long in peace. I went in a car to-day with some of the Brigade Staff to view a line of trenches which we are to take over shortly.

A new subaltern (Withington) joined to-day.

The following appeared in Regimental Orders :—

"General Sir Douglas Haig, K.C.B., K.C.I.E., K.C.V.O., A.D.C., Gen. Commanding 1st Army, has desired the Brigadier-General to thank all ranks of the 5th Infantry Brigade for their great gallantry and hard work during the recent operations, and to say that the thanks of General Joffre have also been sent to the 1st Army for the way in which they have drawn the enemy's troops away from other parts, thus enabling the French to carry out plans which could not otherwise have been successful."

May 26th.—(Raimbert.) Companies continued their training in good country close by. In the afternoon, with the Brigadier and some others, to view another set of trenches which we are to take over instead of those which we looked at yesterday. They are near Mazingarbe, considerably farther south than we have ever been in these parts, and at present are occupied by the French. The weather is very hot now.

May 27th.—At 8.15 a.m. I took the four Company Commanders, on horseback, to the vicinity of our new line of trenches. At Philosophe I interviewed the French Brigade Commander, a charming old Colonel, who puzzled us somewhat with conundrums about ministerial changes at home, and particularly with the question as to what Winston Churchill would have to do as Chancellor of the Duchy of Lancaster! Next I interviewed the Colonel of the 281st Regiment, and finally the Commandant (Major) of the Battalion occupying the line which we are to take over. The latter took us a complete tour of his trenches, with the result that we did not return to Raimbert until 8 p.m., having ridden 30 miles in all and walked several more in addition.

May 28th.—(Raimbert.) A large draft (21st reinforcement) of 270 men and 6 officers[1] arrived to-day. This brings the Regiment almost up to strength again in men.

[1] Lieut. J. H. Boardman ; Lieut. (tempy.) C. A. Barran ; 2nd Lieuts. J. W. Meade, S. M. Minifie-Hawkins (3rd Battalion), C. T. Chevallier (3rd Battalion), A. N. Carew Hunt (3rd Battalion).

Digitized by Google

May 29th.—(Raimbert to trenches near Mazingarbe, 14 miles.) Left our pleasant billets at 2 p.m. Halted an hour for tea at Houchin, and arrived at Philosophe in time to commence the relief at 11.30 p.m. We had marched, with the 2nd Highland Light Infantry, through Auchel, Marles-les-Mines, Bruay, Labuissière, Houchin, Nœux-les-Mines, and Mazingarbe.

May 30th.—The relief was not completed until 2.30 a.m The Regiment took over the right half of the Brigade front from the 281st Regiment of French infantry, and was distributed as follows:—

Right Section.—B Company (1 platoon in support).
Centre Section.—D Company (1 platoon in support).
Left Section.—A Company (all 4 platoons in firing line).
Regimental Headquarters and half C Company.—At the *Corons*[1] of Fosse 7.
Half C Company.—At the *Corons* of Fosse 3.
Regimental Transport.—At Houchin.

The trenches are deep, cut out of chalk, and there are many dug-outs, those for the supports being extremely well made.

Some portions of the fire trench are very long stretches without any traverses. The French use wooden loopholes in all their trenches. The communication trenches are sufficiently numerous, but are rather straight and rather broad. Machine-gun emplacements are well made.

The German line runs along a crest-line commanding the greater part of our area, but their trenches are not visible from our left centre. The distance between our trenches and those of the enemy varies from 200 to 300 yards on the flanks to 200 yards in the right centre.

Several saps have been run out, but, with the exception of one captured from the Germans on the extreme right, none of them approach nearer than 120 yards.

Fairly persistent shelling of our extreme right by guns of small calibre all the morning. 2nd Lieut. W. J. Littledale joined for duty.

May 31st.—The Divisional Commander visited the trenches to-day. A very hot walk, and the glare thrown up by the chalk is rather trying.

So far we have been having a very quiet time in these trenches; occasional shelling on the right, but very little sniping. Casualties, 1 killed and 7 wounded.

[1] Miners' cottages.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieuts. A. G. Cardy, J. G. Grant, and J. D. Belgrave joined for duty.

June 1st.—(In trenches near Mazingarbe.) We now have a light Trench Mortar Battery in the line with us. They did some very useful shooting during the morning; but, as their efforts usually bring some form of retaliation, they are not at present very popular with the people in the front line trenches.

The following are the officers now present with the Regiment :—

Major A. J. F. EDEN, Commanding.
Major G. N. COLVILE, D.S.O., Senior Major.
Captain L. F. SCOTT, Transport Officer.
Lieut. J. A. SOUTHEY, Machine-gun Officer.
Lieut. (tempy. Captain) R. B. CROSSE, D.S.O., Adjutant.
Lieut. A. E. WARNOCK, Quartermaster.
Lieut. E. SCOTT, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.

A Company.	*B Company.*
Lieut. R. M. OWEN.	Captain C. G. HIGGINS.
2nd Lieut. R. B. KITE.	Lieut. J. H. BOARDMAN.
2nd Lieut. C. T. CHEVALLIER.	Lieut. C. A. F. FOWKE.
2nd Lieut. A. N. CAREW HUNT.	2nd Lieut. A. G. CARDY (tempy.).
2nd Lieut. T. E. WITHINGTON.	2nd Lieut. W. J LITTLEDALE.
C Company.	*D Company.*
Captain C. FITZGERALD (tempy.).	Lieut. P. F. NEWTON-KING.
Lieut. C. A. BARRAN.	2nd Lieut. G. FIELD.
Lieut. J. W. MEADE.	2nd Lieut. J. B. BELGRAVE.
2nd Lieut. J. G. GRANT.	2nd Lieut. S. M. MINIFIE-HAWKINS.
2nd Lieut. P. C. WEBSTER.	

June 2nd.—In the evening we were relieved by the 2nd Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers, and went into billets at Philosophe, close in rear.

June 3rd.—(In Brigade Reserve.) Philosophe is an absolutely filthy village, and is surrounded by numerous French guns. Consequently, for fear of attracting attention, our companies can scarcely move about in any numbers at all during daylight, as the enemy can see practically everything that goes on.

June 4th.—In the evening I attended one of the short Memorial Services which the Bishop is holding in turn for each company. Close to this village there is a château, containing some very handsome furniture, and with grounds very well laid out. The grass

Digitized by Google

LIEUT. J. H. BOARDMAN.

is still carefully mown, and the garden, which is as good as any that I have ever seen anywhere, is tended by 12 gardeners, while in normal times, I was told, 20 are employed. The possessor of all this is a wealthy mine-owner. The French had the Headquarters of a Division here, but when some of our Divisional Staff arrived the vicinity seemed to receive considerably more attention from the enemy than previously.

June 5th.—(Philosophe.) The 22nd reinforcement of 30 men arrived.

June 7th.—(Philosophe to Verquin.) After a most irritating and valueless five days, during which little or no training could be done, and with shells dropping at very uncertain intervals (1 man killed and 1 wounded), we were glad to get the order to move back into Divisional Reserve with the remainder of the Brigade.

At 8.30 p.m. the 5th Brigade was relieved by the 141st Brigade of the 47th Division, and the Regiment marched to Verquin, where we went into billets at 11.30 p.m. 2nd Lieuts. C. Hurst-Brown and P. M. Ridout joined for duty.

June 8th.—As the Headquarters of the 47th Division is in this village, accommodation is very limited, especially as regards officers. Very warm weather at present.

Digitized by Google

June 14*th*.—(Verquin.) We have had a week in billets here, and have been able to do some training, including night work. On the 10th we received information that the Distinguished Conduct Medal had been awarded to :—

No. 6970 Colour-Sergeant T. HUDSON.
No. 8445 Sergeant P. BREACH.

2nd Lieut. E. R. G. Hughes joined for duty.

To-day I have been, with the Brigade Staff, to reconnoitre trenches near Vermelles, into which we are to move to-morrow.

June 15*th*.—(Verquin to trenches near Vermelles.) I took Company Commanders early this morning to have a look at the trenches. Returned at 1.30 p.m., and at 8 p.m. the Regiment, marching through Sailly-Labourse, relieved the 1st King's Regiment in the right sector of the Vermelles section.

June 16*th*.—I went round the line directly after the relief was complete, and so did not get to bed until 3.30 a.m. Went round again with the Brigadier during the morning.

Regimental Headquarters are at Le Rutoire Farm, and my own quarters are quite the most comfortable I have yet had.

2ND BATTALION HEADQUARTERS AT LE RUTOIRE.

Digitized by Google

This line was taken up by the French after the capture of the village last November, when the Germans withdrew to some high ground which commanded nearly the whole of the country between them and Vermelles. Here the French and Germans settled down comfortably into winter quarters, and kept their respective lines some considerable distance apart. Our 1st Division took over from the French about a month ago, and, in accordance with British policy, put an end to this inactivity by pushing trenches forward; but even now the enemy's line on the left is 250 yards away, whilst at the other end it is 500 or 600 yards.

We have two companies in the front line (made by the 1st Division) and two companies in support occupying the old French first line and reserve trenches.

All the trenches are deep and on the whole well made, with many dug-outs where the French had been in occupation.

June 17th.—Continuing the policy of lessening the distance between the opposing lines, the Brigade commenced at once to make a new trench about 100 yards in front.[1]

June 18th.—Things have been very quiet. Practically no shelling or sniping on the part of the enemy, and we have had no casualties.

Our snipers and observers by day (particularly between 5 p.m. and 7 p.m., when the light is wonderful) and our patrols at night are getting excellent practice here.

The following description of these trenches was given in a letter written by Lieut. C. A. Fowke on the 18th June :—

These trenches were originally made by the Germans, captured by the French, and finally handed over to the British. They are now a complete maze, each set of occupants having altered them to their own liking. They were made in a cornfield, and are six or seven feet deep. Corn growing on the banks gives them the appearance from within of deep Devonshire lanes, while from outside they are quite invisible. If one stands up (at a safe moment) to look at the country the scene is really a wonderful one; there is no

[1] The process of advancing our line towards that of the enemy went on steadily after we left these parts, until, at the time of the Loos offensive, the two lines were only 150 to 200 yards apart.—A. J. F. E.

Digitized by Google

sign of any other trenches, as they are all covered by the self-sown ripe corn; and the whole country is divided up into patches of brilliant yellow, red, and blue—corn which cannot be gathered in, poppies, and cornflowers.

Higgins, Boardman, and I are living in a dug-out, with four or five feet of timber, corrugated iron, and earth on the top of it. Inside it measures about fourteen feet by nine, and is seven feet high. It has a wooden floor, two glass windows (which open), and a door, while the walls and the ceiling are papered. The furniture

VERMELLES TRENCHES.
June 1915.

consists of two tables, four chairs, a bookcase full of French books, two beds of a sort (I prefer the floor), and a stove. Lace curtains adorn the windows, and there are even two flower vases made of old shell-cases. It is quite the smartest dug-out that we have yet come across.

MAJOR EDEN'S DIARY CONTINUED.

June 19th.—(Trenches near Vermelles to billets at Labourse.) At 8.30 p.m. we were relieved in the trenches by the Glasgow Highlanders (an excellent Territorial Battalion), and moved into

Digitized by Google

VERMELLES, JUNE 1915.
2nd Battalion in French trenches.

very good billets at Labourse. Weather still very hot. The country east of Vermelles is now a wonderfully gorgeous expanse of red, white, and blue—poppies, daisies, cornflowers.

June 20th–22nd.—(Labourse, in Brigade Reserve.) Companies were exercised in musketry and drill, and more men were trained as bomb-throwers.

We had always hoped to bring off in some way the celebration of the Centenary of Waterloo, and now the opportunity came. The times were fairly quiet; the weather was good; we were near a large town, where supplies could be bought; and, above all, the ground for our usual Waterloo Sports was at hand, for opposite the farmhouse which we were occupying as a mess was a fine, large, and flat grass-field. So the big show was fixed for the 22nd.

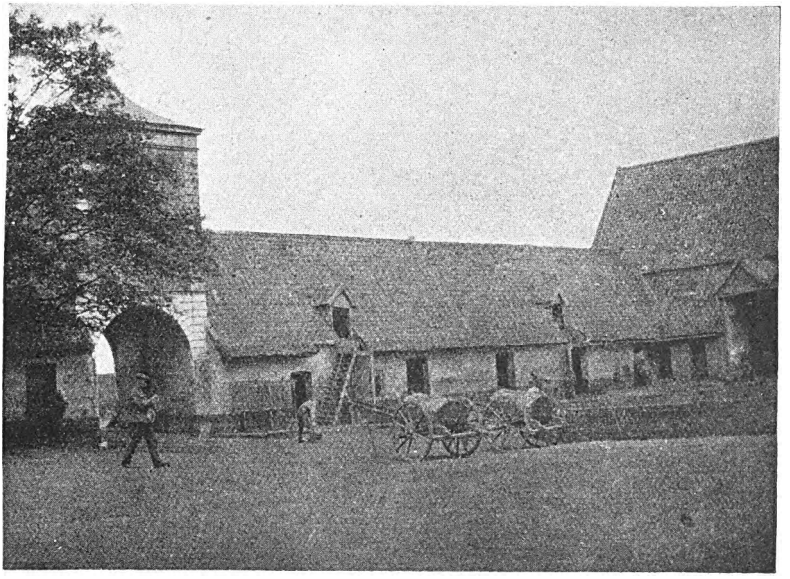
After Church Parade on the 20th, General Horne presented many men of the Brigade with D.C.M.'s, which had been won during the recent fighting. Although the Regiment had marched in quite late on the previous night, the men buckled to, and turned out on parade remarkably clean.

The 22nd was a splendid day, with a cool wind, and the sports were a brilliant success. As we were living in the country of our

Digitized by Google

Waterloo foes, and did not wish to offend our good neighbours and hosts, we avoided having a gaudy programme printed, and contented ourselves with a few copies hectographed in the orderly-room. Everything was carried out on our usual peace-time lines, with an hour's break for tea in the middle of the afternoon, at which the men were regaled with abundance of fruit, and cakes baked by Sergeant Hazel and his cooks in the village baker's oven Both General Haking and General Davies were present, and we were fortunate in securing the services of a band (London Field Ambulance)—a thing not very common out here in these times.

The following were the events: Half Mile; Pack Fighting (teams of 6); 100 Yards; Bomb-throwing (dummies); 220 Yards; Tug of War (teams of 10, won by C Company, B 2nd); Dispatch Riders' Competition (teams of 6); Quarter Mile; Transport Turn-out (1, Pair Horse; 2, Single Horse; 3, Riding Horse); Inter-Company Relay Race (teams of 6); Blindfold Crawl; Stretcher Bearers' Competition (teams of 4 and patient, won by D Company); One Mile; Officers' and Sergeants' Relay Race (teams of 8, won by Sergeants); Band Race for 6th London F.A.; Boat Race (teams of 9, won by C, B 2nd); Employ Race; Machine-gun Competition (Best Gun Team, Private Trussler; Best Section, Corporal Mustoe); Veterans'



FARMYARD OF 2ND BATTALION HEADQUARTERS AT LABOURSE.

Digitized by Google

Race (men over 35 given 18 yards); Open Race; Officers' Chargers (1st prize divided between my mare and Crosse's).

At the foot of the programme was this notice :—

"Should a hostile aeroplane appear, a bugler will sound three G's as a signal to take cover under the wall or the trees."

June 23rd.—(Labourse to Vermelles.) The 23rd reinforcement (25 men) arrived. In the evening we marched to Vermelles, in relief of the Inniskillings, and went into billets. Still in Brigade Reserve. Accommodation is bad here, and the village requires a deal of cleaning.

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

June 25th.—(In billets at Vermelles.) Information received of the granting of the following promotions and honours :—

To be Brevet-Lieut.-Colonel—Major A. J. F. EDEN.
Distinguished Service Order—Captain H. M. DILLON.
Military Cross—Captain W. G. TOLSON.

June 27th.—(Vermelles.) Some shelling in the vicinity of the church.

Casualties : 4 wounded.

June 28th.—During the afternoon Vermelles was shelled a good deal. One shell penetrated a house, killing one man and wounding 8 others.

Information received that the following have been awarded the D C.M. for distinguished service during the period 9th–18th May 1915 :—

No. 10021 Private ZEACLE.
No. 10052 Private JONES.
No. 10063 Private WYKES.

At 10 p.m. the Regiment, on relief by the 2nd Welsh Regiment (3rd Infantry Brigade), marched to Bethune (6½ miles), and went into billets at the École de Jeunes Filles.

June 29th.—(Bethune.) The 5th Brigade in Divisional Reserve.

June 30th.—In the afternoon moved to B 1 section Givenchy, in relief of the 2nd Border Regiment (7th Division).

July 1st–3rd.—(In trenches at Givenchy.) In the section occupied by the Regiment, two companies are in front line, in good first line trenches. The new 2nd line was in course of completion. One company was in support in the vicinity of Orchard X—— Old Keep

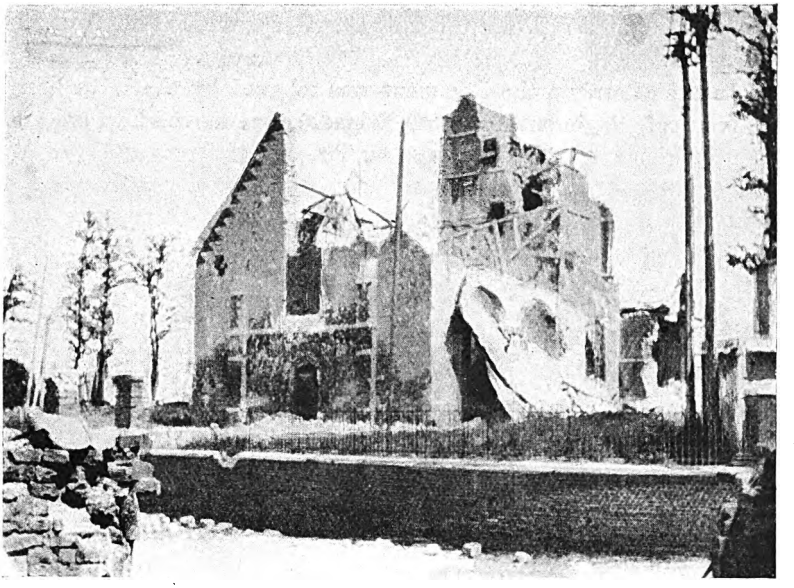
Digitized by Google

Enemy about 200 yards distant on canal bank, but our line just north of the canal forms a large re-entrant; extreme point about 600 yards away, until opposite extreme left, then trenches only 50 yards from the enemy.

Intermittent shelling during these days.

Casualties : On 1st July, 1 killed.
On 4th July, 1 killed, 1 wounded.

July 4th.—The 2nd Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers relieved the Regiment in the trenches in the afternoon, and we went into billets at Le Preol. on the banks of the Beuvry Canal.



RUINS OF VERMELLES CHURCH.
June 1915.

July 5th–7th.—In Billets at Le Preol, in Reserve.

The Regiment found 200 men per day for fatigue parties, in connection with the mines at Givenchy Only one man killed when at this work.

July 8th.—We relieved the Inniskillings in B 1 section of trenches at Givenchy in the afternoon.

Lieut. Boardman proceeded to the Base Depôt for duty.

Digitized by Google

July 9th–12th.—(In trenches at Givenchy.) Very quiet on the whole, though odd shells and rifle-grenades were fired at times—mostly against our front line trenches.

On the 9th Lieut. J. W. Meade was wounded (slightly), and on the 11th Lieut. S. M. Minifie-Hawkins (severely, by trench-mortar bomb).

On the 9th the 24th reinforcement (25 men) arrived, with Captain A. W. N. Ponsonby, from the Base, from being wounded 23rd October 1914.

On the 12th the 25th reinforcement of 8 men (machine-gunners) arrived.

July 13th.—The enemy fired 30 to 40 large shells at Pont Fixe between 8 and 9 a.m. Casualty, 1 man wounded in front line trenches.

In the afternoon the Regiment was relieved by the 1/7th King's (Liverpool) Regiment T.F. (6th Brigade), and moved into billets at Bethune, in the area of the Rue du Tir.

July 14th–20th.—Brigade in Corps Reserve at Bethune, with orders to be ready to move at two hours' notice. Route-marching, musketry, and drills were carried out during this period. The grenadiers were also exercised in throwing Battye bombs.

Lieut.-Colonel Eden's Diary continued.

July 15th.—Brigadier-General Chichester left the Brigade to-day, on transfer to the Staff of the 3rd Corps, and Lieut.-Colonel Corkran, from the Grenadier Guards, has succeeded him.

Bishop Gwynne, of Khartoum, who has done so much for the Regiment during the past six months, has also just left us, on appointment as Acting Chaplain General to the British Expeditionary Force in France. We shall miss him very much.

July 19th.—This has been a very restful period, and we have put in a lot of useful work in the way of training bombers. A short rifle-range was also much in use. In the public baths in the town there was a Brigade Swimming Competition, at which Webster was a great success.

Blewitt has come out to the Brigade as Staff Captain.

July 21st.—(To Cuinchy trenches). Back again this afternoon to A 1 sector, in the southern half of Cuinchy trenches, relieving the 3rd Coldstream Guards, who made excellent arrangements for everything.

Digitized by Google

Trenches and dispositions generally are much as they were when we were here last March. Three companies in the trenches, and one company in reserve in Harley Street. Regimental Headquarters are now in a reconstructed house, officially known as "Woburn Abbey," the walls of which are decorated with a wonderful collection of illustrations from the *Sketch* and other papers.

July 22nd–24th.—Altogether a fairly quiet period in the trenches. Praed Street was shelled rather heavily on the 22nd, when 3 men were wounded, and the enemy's trench-mortars annoyed us at times.

IN CUINCHY TRENCHES.

On the 23rd the 26th reinforcement (30 men) arrived; and on the 24th we had 2 men wounded.

July 25th.—(To Bethune.) During the morning the Regiment was relieved by the 1st Queen's, who have taken the place in the 5th Brigade of the Inniskilling Fusiliers, who have gone to the 3rd Army. We reached Bethune and went into billets at the Tobacco Factory at 2 p.m.

Colvile left us to-day, as he has been given command of the 7th Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry.

July 26th–28th.—In Brigade Reserve at Bethune.

Digitized by Google

July 29th.—(To Cuinchy trenches.) Back to A 1 Cuinchy trenches, as before, in relief of the Queen's. The relief was carried out between 1 p.m. and 5 p.m. Good work.

Some shelling round Regimental Headquarters, when one man was wounded.

July 30th–August 1st.—(In Cuinchy trenches). Very quiet period, though some bombardment by trench-mortar bombs and rifle-grenades at intervals. Casualties, 5 men wounded.

Weather very hot and mosquitoes in my dug-out a nuisance. All headquarters sleep in dug-outs here, a series of them having been cut into the bank on the side of the road, as the "Abbey" has only a messroom.

The following officers were present with the Regiment on the 31st July :—

Brevet-Lieut.-Colonel A. J. F. EDEN, Commanding.
Captain L. F. SCOTT, Transport Officer.
Lieut. J. A. SOUTHEY, Machine-gun Officer.
Captain R. B. CROSSE, D.S.O., Adjutant.
Lieut. A. E. WARNOCK, Quartermaster.
Lieut. E. SCOTT, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer.

A Company.

Lieut. R. M. OWEN.
2nd Lieut. R. B. KITE.
2nd Lieut. C. T. CHEVALLIER.
2nd Lieut. A. W. CAREW HUNT.
2nd Lieut. T. E. WITHINGTON.

B Company.

Captain C. G. HIGGINS.
Lieut. C. A. FOWKE.
2nd Lieut. A. G CARDY.
2nd Lieut. W. J. LITTLEDALE.
2nd Lieut. P. M. RIDOUT.

C Company.

Captain A. W. N. PONSONBY.
Captain C. FITZGERALD.
Lieut. C. A. BARRAN.
2nd Lieut. J. G. GRANT.
2nd Lieut. P. C. WEBSTER.
2nd Lieut. E. R. G. HUGHES.

Digitized by Google

D Company.

Lieut. P. F. NEWTON-KING.
2nd Lieut. G. FIELD.
2nd Lieut. J. D. BELGRAVE.
2nd Lieut. C. HURST-BROWN.

CAPTAIN G. BLEWITT, M.C.
2nd Battalion.
Staff Captain, 5th Infantry Brigade.

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS WHO SERVED WITH THE 2ND BATTALION IN FRANCE AND FLANDERS BETWEEN AUGUST 1914 AND AUGUST 1915.

I.

PROCEEDED ABROAD WITH THE EXPEDITIONARY FORCE.

Lieut.-Colonel H. R. DAVIES, Commanding Battalion; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, and North of France; mentioned in Dispatches, October 1914 and January 1915; in temporary command 5th Infantry Brigade, 20th–31st December 1914; Bt.-Colonel, 18th February 1915; appointed Brigadier-General, 3rd Infantry Brigade, 23rd February 1915.

Major A. J. F. EDEN, C Company Commander to 8th September 1914; Battalion Second in Command from that date; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, and North of France; *wounded* at Langemarck (Poelcappelle), 21st October 1914; to England; rejoined 5th January 1915; commanding Battalion since 23rd February 1915; mentioned in Dispatches; Brevet-Lieut. Colonel, 3rd June 1915.

[Captain E. F. VILLIERS, D.S.O. (1st Royal Sussex Regiment, attached) A Company until 5th October 1914, when rejoined Royal Sussex Regiment; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne.]

Captain H. L. WOOD, B Company Commander; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders; *wounded* at Langemarck (Poelcappelle), 21st October 1914; to England; employed on Staff at home as Brigade-Major, 8th January 1915.

Captain A. H. HARDEN, D Company Commander; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders; *killed* at Langemarck (Poelcappelle), 21st October 1914; mentioned in Dispatches, January 1915.

Captain H. M. DILLON, A Company Commander; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, and North of France; invalided December 1914; mentioned in Dispatches, January 1915;

Digitized by Google

rejoined, 7th April 1915; C Company Commander; *wounded* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; to England; mentioned in Dispatches; awarded D.S.O., June 1915.

Captain R. C. EVELEGH, C Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne; *wounded*, 16th September, returned to duty, 18th; *killed* at Soupir, 19th September 1914.

Captain G. BLEWITT, D Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, and North of France; *wounded* at Soupir, 19th September 1914; to England; mentioned in Dispatches, October 1914; rejoined, 26th December 1914; *wounded* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; to England; rejoined 5th Infantry Brigade as Staff Captain, July 1915; awarded the Military Cross, 1st January 1915.

Captain P. GODSAL (3rd Battalion, Captain, 7th June 1902), B Company; Retreat from Mons; injured by the blowing up of the bridge at Berlaimont, 26th August 1914; captured in Avesnes Hospital the same day; prisoner of war in Germany.

Lieut. R. B. CROSSE, Adjutant; tempy. Captain, 15th November 1914; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, and North of France; awarded the D.S.O; mentioned in Dispatches, January 1915; Captain, 17th May 1915.

Lieut. W. G. TOLSON, D Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, and North of France; tempy. Captain, 15th November 1914; *wounded* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; to England; employed at home; mentioned in Dispatches; awarded Military Cross; Captain, 10th June 1915.

Lieut. R. G. WORTHINGTON, Scout Officer; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne; *killed* at Soupir, 16th September 1914; awarded the Cross of Chevalier of the Legion of Honour.

Lieut. J. A. SOUTHEY, Machine-gun Officer; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, and North of France.

Lieut. C. S. BAINES, B Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, and North of France; *wounded* at Nonne Bosschen Wood, 11th November 1914; to England; rejoined, 24th March 1915; *wounded* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; to England; employed at home; awarded the D.S.O.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. R. J. BRETT, Transport Officer; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders; *wounded* near Ypres, 3rd November 1914; to England; rejoined, 25th January 1915; invalided to England, February 1915.

Lieut. R. M. OWEN, A Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne; *wounded* at the Aisne, 14th September 1914; to England; rejoined, 22nd May 1915; North of France; tempy. Captain, 22nd June 1915.

Lieut. H. MOCKLER-FERRYMAN, C Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne; *killed* at Soupir, 16th September 1914.

Lieut. A. V. SPENCER (3rd Battalion, Lieutenant, 5th March 1910), D Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders; *wounded* near Wytschaete, 26th November 1914; to England; awarded the D.S.O. (1st December 1914); mentioned in Dispatches, January 1915; Adjutant, 3rd Battalion.

2nd Lieut. F. PEPYS, A Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders; *killed* at Polygone Wood, 12th November 1914; awarded the D.S.O., and mentioned in Dispatches after his death.

2nd Lieut. J. S. C. MARSHALL, B Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders; *wounded* at Langemarck (Poelcappelle), 21st October; *died of his wounds*, 23rd October 1914.

2nd Lieut. A. D. TYLDEN-PATTENSON, C Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, and North of France; *wounded* at Soupir, 16th September 1914; returned to duty 18th September; Lieutenant, 15th November 1914; *killed* at Richebourg, St. Vaast, 5th January 1915.

2nd Lieut. P. F. NEWTON-KING, D Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, and North of France; *wounded* at Langemarck (Poelcappelle), 21st October 1914; Lieutenant, 15th November 1914; to England; rejoined, 22nd May 1915.

2nd Lieut. P. C. GIRARDOT, C Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne; *killed* at Soupir, 16th September 1914.

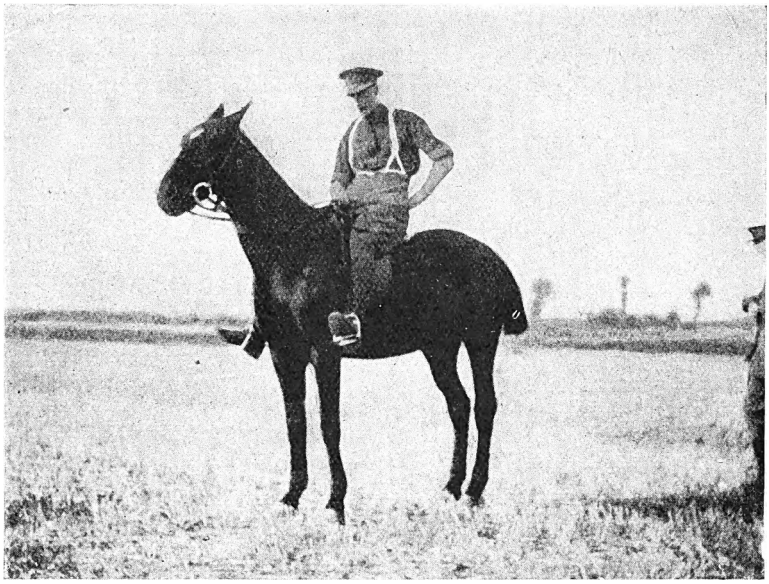
2nd Lieut. G. T. BUTTON (Supplementary List), B Company; Retreat from Mons; injured by the blowing up of the bridge at Berlaimont, 26th August 1914; captured in Avesnes Hospital the same day; prisoner of war in Germany.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. A. H. BARRINGTON-KENNETT (Supplementary List), C Company; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne; *wounded* at Soupir, 19th September, and *died of his wounds*, 21st September 1914.

Captain and Quartermaster A. S. FIELD, Quartermaster throughout the operations of 1914 and beginning of 1915; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, North of France; invalided; retired, on account of ill-health, 18th March 1915.

Captain L. V. THURSTON, R.A.M.C., Medical Officer; Retreat from Mons. Marne, Aisne.



LIEUT. P. F. NEWTON-KING.
Starting for an Officers' Point-to-Point.

II.

JOINED THE BATTALION IN FRANCE.

Lieut. G. M. R. TURBUTT (3rd Battalion), Lieutenant, 5th March 1910; joined with 1st reinforcement, 4th September 1914; Marne, Aisne, Flanders; *killed* at Langemarck (Poelcappelle), 21st October 1914.

Captain C. G. HIGGINS, joined with 2nd reinforcement, 8th September 1914; C Company Commander; Marne, Aisne; *wounded*

Digitized by Google

at Soupir, 16th September 1914; to England; rejoined, 22nd May 1915; North of France.

2nd Lieut. D. H. W. HUMFREY (3rd Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, 2nd December 1911); joined with 3rd reinforcement, 21st September 1914; Aisne, Flanders, North of France; *wounded* at the Haanixbeck, 23rd October 1914; to England; rejoined, 8th February 1915; *killed* at Richebourg, 15th/16th May 1915.

2nd Lieut. F. W. C. CHIPPINDALE (Spec. Res., Supplementary from Oxford University O.T.C., 5th August 1914); joined 24th September 1914; C Company; Aisne, Flanders; *wounded* at Langemarck (Poelcappelle), 21st October 1914; to England.

Captain A. W. N. PONSONBY, joined (from employment on the Staff), 27th September 1914; C Company Commander; Aisne, Flanders, North of France; *wounded*, 23rd October 1914; to England; rejoined, 9th July 1915.

Captain E. H. KIRKPATRICK, joined 8th October 1914; A Company; Aisne, Flanders, North of France; *wounded* at Langemarck (Poelcappelle), 21st October 1914; to England; mentioned in Dispatches, January 1915; rejoined, 4th February 1915; Brevet-Major, 18th February 1915; *missing* (*killed*) at Richebourg, 15th/16th May 1915.

Lieut. C. F. MURPHY (from half-pay, late 1st Battalion), joined 8th October 1914; C Company; Aisne, Flanders; *killed* at Langemarck (Poelcappelle), 21st October 1914.

Lieut. M. ff. R. WINGFIELD (3rd, formerly 2nd, Battalion), joined 8th October 1914; D Company; Aisne, Flanders; *wounded* at Polygone Wood, 28th October 1914; to England.

2nd Lieut. G. W. TITHERINGTON (from University, 26th August 1914, antedated 2nd September 1913), joined 8th October 1914; tempy. Lieutenant, 15th November 1914; C Company; Aisne, Flanders, North of France; Lieutenant, 8th January 1915; *wounded* at Richebourg, 15th/16th May 1915; to England

2nd Lieut. H. V. PENDAVIS (3rd Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, 26th April 1913), joined 8th October 1914; A Company; Aisne, Flanders, North of France; invalided to England; appointed 2nd Lieutenant 2nd Battalion, 31st January, 1915; mentioned in Dispatches; rejoined 23rd March 1915; A Company; awarded the D.S.O.; to Royal Flying Corps, 9th May 1915.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. L. A. FILLEUL (attached from 3rd Somerset Light Infantry), joined 8th October 1914; B Company; *killed* at Langemarck (Poelcappelle), 21st October 1914.

2nd Lieut. J. M. B. WARD (2nd Lieutenant, from R.M. College, 8th August 1914), joined 4th November 1914, with 4th reinforcement; Flanders; *killed* near Klein Zillebeke, 6th November 1914.

2nd Lieut. J. JONES, served in the ranks of the Battalion during the campaign of 1914; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders; promoted from Company-Sergeant-Major, but information of

LIEUT. D. H. W. HUMFREY.
2nd Battalion 1915.

the promotion had not reached him when he was *killed* at Polygone Wood, 11th November 1914; gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 9th November 1914.

Captain C. O. CHICHESTER (Retired Pay, formerly 2nd Battalion), joined with 5th reinforcement, 13th November 1914; C Company; Flanders and North of France; transferred to the Base for duty, 29th March 1915.

Captain S. F. HAMMICK (Res. of Officers, formerly 1st Battalion), joined with 7th reinforcement, 30th November 1914; C Company

Digitized by Google

Commander; to 2nd Captain of C Company, 8th May 1915; *wounded* at Richebourg, 15th/16th May 1915; to England.

[Lieut. T. C. TANNER (attached from King's Shropshire Light Infantry), joined, with 7th reinforcement, 30th November 1914; D Company; Flanders and North of France; rejoined his own regiment, 6th February 1915.]

Captain A. K. NORTH (3rd Battalion, Captain, 4th June 1902; late Lieutenant A.S.C.), joined 1st December 1914; A Company; Flanders and North of France.

2nd Lieut. G. FIELD, promoted (9th November 1914) from Colour-Sergeant 2nd Battalion, and assumed duties of 2nd Lieutenant, 1st December 1914; served throughout the campaign of 1914–15; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, North of France; D Company.

2nd Lieut. C. DEAN, promoted (9th November 1914) from Colour-Sergeant, 2nd Battalion, and assumed duties of 2nd Lieutenant, 1st December 1914; served throughout the campaign of 1914–15; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, North of France; B Company; *wounded* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; to England.

CAPTAIN S. F. HAMMICK.
Cuinchy Trenches, March 1915.

Digitized by Google

LIEUT. F. E. L. RIDDLE.
2nd Battalion.

Captain F. H. BEAUFORT, joined, with 8th reinforcement, 3rd December 1914; 2nd Captain of B Company; Flanders and North of France; B Company Commander, 8th May 1915; *killed* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915.

Captain H. N. JACKSON (3rd Battalion, Captain, 13th August 1913; Lieutenant, retired, Royal Welsh Fusiliers), joined, with 8th reinforcement, 3rd December 1914; North of France; A Company; invalided to England, January 1915.

2nd Lieut. R. D. RENDEL (2nd Lieutenant, from R.M. College, 11th August 1914), temporary Lieutenant; joined, with 8th reinforcement, 3rd December 1914; C Company; North of France; *missing* (*killed*) at Richebourg, 16th May 1915.

2nd Lieut. J. W. G. WYLD (2nd Lieutenant, from R. M. College, 15th August 1914); temporary Lieutenant; joined, with 8th reinforcement, 3rd December 1914; D Company; North of France; *wounded* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. F. E. L. RIDDLE (2nd Lieutenant, from 3rd Battalion, 1st September 1914), joined 4th December 1914; A Company; North of France; *killed* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; had served in 3rd Battalion from 1st October 1913.

Digitized by Google

Captain L. F. Scott (Res. of Officers, formerly 1st Battalion), joined, from the Staff, 13th December 1914; D Company Commander; Transport Officer, January 1915; North of France.

Lieut. C. J. Warner (3rd Battalion, re-entered as 2nd Lieutenant, 26th September 1914), joined 26th December 1914; A Company; North of France; *missing* (*killed*) at Richebourg 16th May 1915.

Captain C. Fitzgerald (3rd, formerly 2nd, Battalion), joined 29th December 1914; C Company; employed with Machine-gun Section; North of France.

Lieut. T. L. Hardy (R.A.M.C.), Medical Officer, 1st November 1914 until 11th January 1915, when he was admitted to hospital

Lieut. E. Scott (R.A.M.C.), Medical Officer, 11th January 1915.

2nd Lieut. C. B. Baker, joined, from the ranks of the Artists' Rifles, 16th January 1915; C Company; North of France; *wounded* at Richebourg l'Avoué, 11th May 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. V. C. Martin, joined, from the ranks of the Artists' Rifles, 16th January 1915; North of France.

2nd Lieut. E. H. Whitfeld (2nd Lieutenant, from R.M. College, 15th August 1914), temporary Lieutenant; joined 14th February 1915; A Company; North of France; *wounded* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; to England; awarded Military Cross (*Gazette*, 24th July 1915).

Major G. N. Colvile, D.S.O. (Res. of Officers, late 1st Battalion), joined, 5th February 1915; Second in Command; North of France; appointed to command 7th Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry, 27th July 1915 (temporary Lieut.-Colonel).

2nd Lieut. R. E. B. Bull (2nd Lieutenant, from R. M. College, 15th August 1914); temporary Lieutenant; joined 8th February 1915; D Company; North of France; *killed* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915.

2nd Lieut J. L. Johnston (3rd Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, from O.T.C., 15th August 1914), joined, 21st February 1915; D Company; North of France; *missing and believed wounded* (supposed *killed*), at Richebourg l'Avoué, 11th May 1915.

2nd Lieut. L. A. Dashwood, promoted into the Regiment from Corporal, R.E. Motor Cyclists; joined 15th March 1915; A Company; North of France; *killed* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. A. E. WARNOCK, from Sergeant-Major of the Battalion, promoted Quartermaster, and assumed the duties, 19th March 1915; served throughout the campaign of 1914–15; Retreat from Mons, Marne, Aisne, Flanders, North of France.

2nd Lieut. R. B. KITE (from R.M. College, 11th November 1914); joined 23rd March 1915; A Company; North of France.

2nd Lieut. W. L. BARNARD (from R.M. College, 11th November 1914), joined, 23rd March 1915; D Company; North of France; *wounded* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. J. B. SOLOMON, promoted from ranks of Artists' Rifles; joined 17th February 1915; to Royal Flying Corps, 18th April 1915.

2nd Lieut. C. R. HORLEY, promoted from ranks of Artists' Rifles; joined, 17th February 1915; *wounded* at Le Plantin, 25th March 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. W. J. EIGHTEEN, promoted from the ranks of the Suffolk Regiment, 4th November 1914; joined 18th February 1915; B Company; *wounded* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; to England.

Lieut. C. A. F. FOWKE (3rd Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, 1st March 1912), joined 25th March 1915; B Company; North of France; *wounded* 15th May 1915, but returned to duty next day; awarded the Military Cross.

2nd Lieut. D. A. D. SEWELL (2nd Lieutenant, from R.M. College, 12th August 1914); Adjutant, 7th (Service) Battalion, 26th October 1914; joined 2nd Battalion in France, 25th March 1915; C Company; North of France; *wounded* at Richebourg, 16th May 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. P. C. WEBSTER (3rd Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, from O.T.C., 15th August 1914), joined 22nd May 1915; C Company; North of France.

2nd Lieut. T. E. WITHINGTON (from University, 4th May 1915; antedated 23rd January 1914), joined 25th May 1915; A Company; North of France.

Lieut. J. H. BOARDMAN (2nd Lieutenant, from University, 5th August 1914, antedated 21st January 1913); Lieutenant, 17th September 1914, joined 28th May 1915; B Company; North of France.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. C. A. BARRAN (2nd Lieutenant, from University, 23rd October 1914, antedated 23rd January 1914), temporary Lieutenant; joined 28th May 1915; C Company; North of France; promoted Lieutenant, 8th January 1915.

2nd Lieut J. W. MEADE (2nd Lieutenant, from R.M. College, 1st October 1914), joined 28th May 1915; C Company; North of France; *wounded* at Givenchy, 9th July 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. S. M. MINIFIE-HAWKINS (3rd Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, 15th August 1914), joined 28th May 1915; D Company; North of France; *wounded* at Givenchy, 11th July 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. C. T. CHEVALLIER (3rd Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, from O.T.C., 15th August 1914), joined 28th May 1915; A Company; North of France.

2nd Lieut. A. N. CAREW-HUNT (3rd Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, from O.T.C., 15th August 1914), joined 28th May 1915; A Company; North of France.

2nd Lieut. W. J. LITTLEDALE (2nd Lieutenant, from R.M. College, 16th December 1914), joined 30th May 1915; B Company; North of France.

2nd Lieut. A. G. CARDY (promoted from ranks of Royal Warwick Regiment, 17th October 1914), joined 31st May 1915; B Company; North of France.

2nd Lieut. J. G. GRANT (from Company-Quartermaster-Sergeant, 6th March 1915), joined 31st May 1915; C Company; North of France.

2nd Lieut. J. D. BELGRAVE (2nd Lieutenant, from R.M. College, 16th December 1914), joined 31st May 1915; D Company; North of France.

2nd Lieut. C. HURST-BROWN (2nd Lieutenant, from R.M. College, 18th December 1914), joined 7th June 1915; D Company; North of France.

2nd Lieut. P. M. RIDOUT (3rd Battalion, 2nd Lieutenant, from O.T.C., 15th August 1914), joined 7th June 1915; B Company; North of France.

2nd Lieut. E. R. G. HUGHES (2nd Lieutenant, from R.M. College, 23rd December 1914), joined 10th June 1915; C Company; North of France.

Digitized by Google

2ND BATTALION.

SUMMARY OF CASUALTIES.[1] FROM THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR TO 31ST JULY 1915.

——	Killed.	Wounded.	Unwounded Prisoner.	Total.
Officers – –	23	35	—	58
Other ranks –	268	810	1	1079
Total –	291	845	1	1137

REINFORCEMENTS RECEIVED FROM THE COMMENCEMENT OF THE WAR TO 31ST JULY 1915.

Officers.—66 (of whom 3 were promoted from the ranks of the Regiment, and 14 returned from being wounded or sick).

Other Ranks.—1,954, in 26 reinforcements, including those returned from being wounded.

HONOURS BESTOWED BETWEEN 1ST JANUARY AND 31ST JULY 1915.[2]

DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER.

Captain H. M. DILLON.

MILITARY CROSS.

Captain G. BLEWITT.

Captain W. G. TOLSON.

Lieut. E. H. WHITFELD.

Lieut. C. A. F. FOWKE.

[1] It will be noticed that, during the first year of the War, the number of casualties exceeded the strength of the Battalion on arrival in France. And this does not include wastage from sickness and other causes. Reckoning as fresh soldiers those officers and men who rejoined from being wounded or sick, approximately 100 officers and 3,000 men served with the Battalion during the period, and the losses (killed, wounded, and missing) amounted to about 50 per cent. of officers and 34 per cent. of men. Detailed statistics will be furnished in a later volume.—ED.

[2] For 1914 Honours, see page 214.

Digitized by Google

BREVET PROMOTION.

Brevet-Colonel.—Lieut.-Colonel H. R. DAVIES.
Brevet-Lieut.-Colonel.—Major A. J. F. EDEN.
Brevet-Major.—Captain E. H. KIRKPATRICK

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

No 6970 Colour-Sergeant T. HUDSON.
No. 8445 Sergeant P. BREACH.
No. 10021 Private ZEACLE.
No. 10052 Private JONES.
No. 10063 Private WYKES

PROMOTED FROM THE RANKS OF THE REGIMENT.

Regimental-Sergeant-Major A. E. WARNOCK.
(Quartermaster and Honorary Lieutenant.)

SUMMARY OF HONOURS AND REWARDS FOR SERVICES DURING THE WAR TO 31ST JULY 1915.

Officers.—Distinguished Service Order, 6; Military Cross, 4; Foreign Decoration, 1; Brevet-Promotion, 3.

Other Ranks.—Distinguished Conduct Medal, 13; Foreign Decoration, 1; Promotion to Commissions, 5.

REWARDS FOR SERVICES IN THE FIELD.

(From the *London Gazette*, January 1915.)

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

No. 8545 Acting-Sergeant E. ASHBY.

For conspicuous gallantry and ability from November 1 to 8 in reconnoitring on numerous occasions quite close to the enemy's position. Has constantly undertaken dangerous work and always successfully accomplished it.

No. 4654 Private A. J. TYRRELL.

For gallant conduct on November 3 and 4, when he voluntarily carried messages on four occasions over a distance of half a mile under heavy shell-fire. Was previously noted for his distinguished conduct.

Digitized by Google

No. 7380 Acting-Sergeant H. EDWARDS.

For gallantry and ability on November 11. In a counter-attack he captured a house which enabled the enemy's trenches to be enfiladed. Has been previously noted as a very capable leader in the field.

MENTIONED IN DISPATCHES.

(*January* 1915.)

Lieut.-Colonel H. R. DAVIES.
Captain H. M. DILLON.
Captain A. H. HARDEN (killed in action).
Captain E. H. KIRKPATRICK (killed in action).
Lieut. (tempy. Captain) and Adjutant R. B. CROSSE, D.S.O.
Lieut. H. V. PENDAVIS, D.S.O
Lieut. A. V. SPENCER, D.S.O.
2nd Lieut. F. PEPYS, D.S.O. (killed in action).
2nd Lieut. J. M. B. WARD (killed in action).
4609 Sergeant W. H. FOSSEY (killed in action.)
4341 Sergeant A. G. WATERS.
6753 Sergeant R. L. WOOD (killed in action).
7816 Lance-Corporal W. J. DOBSON.[1]
7548 Lance-Corporal R. KERSWELL.
8085 Lance-Corporal E RADLEY.
9687 Private G. W. ATKINS.
8877 Private F. W. HART.
8628 Private J. SALMON.
9912 Private W. A. WHEELER.

REWARDS FOR SERVICE IN THE FIELD.

(Statements in the *London Gazette*.)

DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER.

(*Dated 1st January* 1914.)

Lieut. CUTHBERT SAVILE BAINES.

Did good work on 21st October, pushing on when all his Company Officers were killed or wounded; also good work in repelling attacks on 22nd and 23rd October.

[1] Subsequently awarded the Russian Honour of the *Cross of the Order of St. George, 4th Class.*—ED.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. RICHARD BANASTRE CROSSE.

As Adjutant, for consistent good work throughout the campaign.

2nd Lieut. HUGH VALENTINE PENDAVIS.

On 3rd November conspicuous good work in advancing from his trench and assisting in driving away a party of the enemy, who were commencing to dig a new trench within 30 yards of his own. Thirty of the enemy were shot down on this occasion.

2nd Lieut. FRANCIS PEPYS.

On 3rd November conspicuous good work in advancing from his trench and assisting in driving away a party of the enemy, who were commencing to dig a new trench within 30 yards of his own. Thirty of the enemy were shot down on this occasion. (Since killed in action.)

Lieut. AUBREY VERE SPENCER.

Good work in attack on 21st October, and in repelling night attacks on 21st, 22nd, and 23rd October.

(*Dated* 18*th February* 1915.)

DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER.

Captain FELTON VESEY HOLT (attached R.F.C.).

For gallantry on 22nd January 1915 in engaging single-handed a group of twelve German aeroplanes which were attacking the town of Dunkirk. He was subsequently joined by two of our own biplanes, which resulted in one of the German machines being brought down, and its pilot and observer being captured.

(*Dated* 24*th July* 1915.)

MILITARY CROSS.

2nd Lieut. (tempy. Lieutenant) ERNEST HAMILTON WHITFELD.

For conspicuous gallantry on 16th May 1915, at Richebourg l'Avoué, when, with a small party, he entered the German trenches, and, after being wounded, attacked a detachment still working a machine-gun, killing seven men, taking three prisoners, and capturing the gun.

Digitized by Google

(*Dated 23rd June* 1915.)

DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.

No. 6970 Acting-Colour-Sergeant T. HUDSON.

For conspicuous gallantry on 4th October 1914 on the Aisne, when, the telephone wire having been cut, he volunteered to carry a message under heavy shell-fire, and subsequently removed a severely wounded man from the trenches under the same fire.

CAPTAIN AND ADJUTANT R. B. CROSSE, D.S.O., LEAVING HIS BILLET FOR THE TRENCHES.
July 1915.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE DEPÔT

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

COWLEY BARRACKS, OXFORD

1 AUGUST 1914 to 31 JULY 1915

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE DEPÔT.

1 AUGUST 1914 to 31 JULY 1915.

On the 1st August 1914 the following officers of the 1st and 2nd Battalions were doing duty at the Depôt :—

Major H. F. Darell-Brown (2nd), Commanding.
Captain E. H. Kirkpatrick (2nd).
Captain C. G. Higgins (1st).
Captain R. O. Logan (1st).
Lieut. A. E. Sanderson (1st).
Lieut. C. F. K. Carfrae (2nd).
Captain C. H. Frith (2nd), Adjutant.
Major T. King, Quartermaster.

All the above officers were also on the strength of the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion.

Strength of the Depôt.

Warrant Officer, 1; N.C.O.'s, 19; Rank and File, 90.

DIARY OF PRINCIPAL EVENTS.

On the *5th August* the men of the Army Reserve began to come up, and between this date and the 7th August 956 N.C.O.'s and men were armed, clothed, and equipped, and 581 were dispatched to join the 2nd Battalion at Aldershot. The reservists were medically examined at the Depôt, and those found medically unfit for active service were relegated to the Army Reserve.

On the *8th August* the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion mobilized at the Depôt, received arms, clothing, and equipment, and on the same date proceeded to Portsmouth, together with the balance of the Army Reservists, less 24 men of Section D left at the Depôt for permanent duty. The 3rd Battalion now became responsible for the training and preparation of drafts, to make good the wastage in the 1st and 2nd Battalions as required.

Digitized by Google

All the before-named officers accompanied the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion.

In the meanwhile the following, belonging to the Reserve of Officers of the Regiment, had been appointed to the Depôt :—

Major Sir C. CUYLER, Bart., to Command.
Major C. C. PEARSON, Second in Command and Adjutant.
Captain W. OWEN, Recruiting Officer.

The duties of Quartermaster were taken over by Captain and Quartermaster C. Carnell (Res. of Off., K O.Y.L.I.).

From this time the work at the Depôt consisted principally of recruiting and passing on the recruits to the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion, and to the Service, or New Army, Battalions, as these were raised.

August 8th.—Captain S. F. Hammick (Res. of Off.), and Lieut. R. H. S. Tatton (3rd Batt.) joined the Depôt for duty.

August 9th.—G and H Companies were formed, Captain Hammick being appointed to command the former, and Lieut. Tatton the latter.

Sergeant A. East appointed Acting Sergeant-Major of the Depôt.

August 12th.—Lieut. C. F. Murphy joined the Depôt for duty.

August 15th.—Captain R. O. Logan and C. F. K. Carfrae rejoined the Depôt for duty.

Captain Hammick proceeded to High Wycombe, on recruiting duties, and Captain Logan took over command of G Company.

August 18th.—H and G Companies re-lettered A and B respectively.

August 19th.—2nd Lieut. C. F. R. Hanbury-Williams arrived for duty at the Depôt.

Lieut. C. F. Murphy was appointed Acting Adjutant of the 5th (Service) Battalion on formation.

August 24th.—Captain R. O. Logan, Lieut. C. F. Murphy, and 115 N.C.O.'s and men of A Company proceeded to Deepcut, on formation of the 5th (Service) Battalion.

September 1st.—Captain C. F. K. Carfrae and Captain Webb proceeded from Oxford to Camberley in command of 469 N.C.O.'s and men, for posting to the 5th (Service) Battalion

September 14th.—Colour-Sergeant H. Weatherhead was appointed Acting Sergeant-Major of the Depôt, vice Sergeant East.

Digitized by Google

September 25th.—Lieut.-Colonel G. F. Paske proceeded from Oxford to Codford with a party of 16 N.C.O.'s and men, on formation of the 7th (Service) Battalion.

September 26th.—Lieut.-Colonel R. G. H. Hughes, commanding, and a party consisting of 4 Officers, 1 W.O., and 646 N.C.O.'s and men, proceeded from Oxford to Codford, on formation of the 7th (Service) Battalion.

October 12th.—Captain F. Llewellyn was appointed Acting Adjutant of the 8th (Service) Battalion, on formation, and Colour-Sergeant C. E. Clarke Acting Sergeant-Major.

1915.

January 11th.—Captain H. V. Knox joined the Depôt for duty from the 5th (Service) Battalion.

February 15th.—Sergeant-Major J. Guise was appointed to a commission in the 7th (Service) Battalion.

Colour-Sergeant W. Hone was appointed Sergeant-Major of the Depôt, vice Guise.

March 6th.—The Depôt was inspected by the G.O.C.-in-Chief, Southern Command.

March 15th.—Major H. C. Maul joined the Depôt for duty.

May 22nd.—Bandmaster C. Neville, 1 sergeant, 1 corporal, 5 lance-corporals, 1 bugler, 18 privates, and 10 boys arrived from the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion, to take part in the County Recruiting March, and rejoined their Battalion on 23rd June.

July 6th.—The Brigadier-General Commanding No. 7 District inspected the Depôt.

The following officers, not mentioned above, were doing duty at the Depôt at different times, chiefly in conducting drafts :—
Captain E. H. Kirkpatrick, Captain Hon. G. W. F. S. Foljambe. Lieut. J. H. Boardman, Lieut. Bailey, Lieut. F. E. L. Riddle, Captain C. Fitzgerald, Lieut. R. Bull, Lieut. H.
Lieut. Cook, Lieut. Tuck, 2nd Lieut. E. J. Anderson, 2nd Lieut. Chevallier, Lieut. Barwell, 2nd Lieut. Hughes, 2nd Lieut. Jury, Captain C. B. Benson, D.S.O., 2nd Lieut. Whitlock, 2nd Lieut. A. O. Williams, 2nd Lieut. P. L. C. Webster, 2nd Lieut. C. W. H. Bailie, Lieut. H. G. Clarke.

Digitized by Google

DRAFTS, DESPATCHED FROM THE DEPÔT TO UNITS, FROM AUGUST 1914, TO 31ST JULY 1915.

Month.	3rd Bn.	5th Bn.	6th Bn.	7th Bn.	8th Bn.	9th Bn.	Other Corps.	Total.
1914.								
August	142	166	--	—	—	—	—	308
September ...	1485	2061	76	1030	—	—	150	4802
October	97	15	86	221	200	—	1010	1629
November ...	253	78	78	—	501	—	—	910
December ...	242	120	59	103	73	4	—	601
1915.								
January	135	3	40	—	30	525	—	733
February ...	298	—	12	—	6	—	—	316
March	197	—	—	—	—	—	—	197
April	190	—	—	—	—	—	—	190
May	252	—	15	—	—	—	—	267
June	303	—	—	—	—	—	—	303
July	273	—	—	—	8	--	—	281
TOTAL ...	3867	2443	366	1354	818	529	1160	10537

NOTE.—During the above period 1,335 N.C.O's. and men arrived at the Depôt, sick and wounded, from the Expeditionary Force.

The 3rd (Reserve) Battalion was responsible for the training and preparation of drafts, to make good wastage in the 1st and 2nd Battalions.

The 6th (Service) Battalion was formed by drafts from the 5th Battalion.

The 9th (2nd Reserve) Battalion was formed by drafts from the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion.

The Depôt was not responsible for the Territorial Force Battalions of the Regiment, they being administered by their respective Territorial Force Associations.

Digitized by Google

THE RECORD OFFICES.

RECORD OFFICES for Infantry Regiments are a comparatively modern innovation, and previous to 1905 the records of Regular Battalions were dealt with at the Regimental Depôts. On the 6th January 1905 the Grouped Regimental District System was introduced, and a Colonel in charge of Records was appointed, with headquarters at Warwick, to look after the records of the Group of Districts of which the 43rd Regimental District (Cowley Barracks) was one. The other Districts in the group were those of the Warwickshire, Gloucestershire, Worcestershire, and Berkshire. Full details of this new system will be found in the CHRONICLE, 1905.

At the outbreak of war arrangements were made for a similar Record Office to be formed at Warwick, entitled "The Territorial Force Record Office," to deal with the Territorial Force Battalions of the five regiments mentioned above, Colonel P. R. Mockler (late R. Warwickshire Regiment) being appointed Officer in Charge.

As the Army expanded the work of these Record Offices increased rapidly, and by the middle of 1915 the Regular Record Office at Warwick had become responsible for no fewer than 54 Battalions, and the T.F. Record Office for 40. What their responsibilities consisted of will now be explained :—

1. *Attestations and Records of Service.*—These are entered up daily for every man of every battalion, and include such entries as promotions, duration of service at home and abroad, punishments, courses of instruction, transfers to Reserve or other Corps, posting between units of a Corps, bounties, medals, marriages, births of children, addresses of next-of-kin (constantly changing), wounds, deaths, etc., etc.

Digitized by Google

2. *Casualties.*—Every case of sickness, wounds (however slight), killed in action, missing, prisoners of war, is reported at once to the soldier's next-of-kin, to whom also progress reports of sick and wounded are made from time to time. Arrangements for relatives visiting soldiers in dangerous cases. Notification to relatives of places of burial abroad. Receiving from overseas, checking, repacking, and dispatching to next-of-kin all effects of dead soldiers.

3. *Discharges out of the Service.*—All these are carried out by the Record Offices, who grant discharge papers, notify various departments, and remit to Chelsea all documents of men entitled to pensions or gratuities.

4. *Hospital Cases.*—The posting to various units of all sick and wounded discharged from hospitals. Medical History Sheets.

5. *Medals.*—Receipt and custody of all medals bestowed by the British or Foreign Governments on men who are serving with Overseas Forces.

6. *Inquiries.*—Dealing with a large number of inquiries from Area Commanders, recruiting and pay officers and others, as to the recall and enlistment of men liable to be required for service, and registering their private addresses, as well as settling up pay, etc.

7. *War Diaries.*—Receiving and keeping in safe custody the War Diaries of all battalions.

8. *Various.*—All matters connected with the arrest of deserters; investigations in cases of fraudulent enlistment; transfer and recalling of men from and to munition work; contracts with employers; widows' pensions; forwarding letters; tracing whereabouts of N.C.O.'s and men, etc.

R. E. W.

Digitized by Google

THE

TERRITORIAL FORCE BATTALIONS

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

AUGUST 1914 to 31st JULY 1915

Digitized by Google

THE TERRITORIAL FORCE BATTALIONS.

4th Battalion - - - Headquarters, Oxford.
Buckinghamshire Battalion - Headquarters, Aylesbury.

On the outbreak of war companies mobilized at their peace-headquarters, and Battalions then proceeded to their war stations, subsequently being assembled in the neighbourhood of Chelmsford for training. The two Battalions belonged to the South Midland Infantry Brigade of the South Midland Division, the other Battalions of the Brigade being the 5th Gloucestershire Regiment and the 4th Royal Berkshire Regiment. The diaries, etc., which follow, give particulars of the work carried out during training preliminary to proceeding overseas, and, later on, of work in the field; but it may be of interest to explain here how it came about that Battalions of the Territorial Force took their places in the fighting line abroad, and how they increased threefold.

When the Territorial Force came into being it was intended solely for Home Defence, and officers and men engaged only for Home Service. Shortly after mobilization, however, it became evident that the Expeditionary Force alone would be insufficient to carry on a war in Europe, and it was immediately decided to bring home, from India and elsewhere, all British units which could possibly be spared, to reinforce the Expeditionary Force. In order to release these troops, therefore, it became essential to replace them by others, not necessarily fully trained, but

Digitized by Google

sufficiently trained to perform ordinary garrison duty abroad, while at the same time continuing their training. The officers and men of the Territorial Force were invited to volunteer for Foreign Service, and the response was so satisfactory that it was found possible to send abroad at once a sufficient number of complete Battalions to carry on garrison duty in Egypt, India, etc.

This took only a comparatively small number of Battalions of the Territorial Force, and the others, remaining at home for training, were each divided into two Battalions, consisting of Foreign Service men, and of Home Service men and Recruits. The 1st Line (or Foreign Service) Battalion was rapidly brought up to war strength by the enlistment of recruits, and was then trained for war abroad. The Reserve (or 2nd Line) Battalion contained, for some time only, Home Service men and men under age for service abroad, but when the 1st Line Battalion was up to strength, recruits were posted to the Reserve Battalion, to be trained and eventually drafted overseas to the 1st Line Battalion. In the meanwhile these recruits were available for Home Defence.

As recruiting became brisk and the Reserve Battalions filled up, it was decided to separate the Home Service men from the Foreign Service men, drafting the former into Home Service Provisional Battalions, and training the latter for service overseas. The terms 1st Line and 2nd Line were then abolished, and a new system of numbering established; thus the Foreign Service Territorial Force Battalions of the Regiment were described as the 1/4th and 2/4th [1] Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry, and the 1/1st Buckinghamshire Battalion and 2/1st Buckinghamshire

[1] Officially spoken of as the "One Fourth" and "Two Fourth."

Digitized by Google

Battalion of the Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry. The Home Service men of the original two Battalions went to form the 83rd Provisional Battalion.

When the 1st Battalions proceeded on service to France, their 2nd Battalions prepared to furnish them with reinforcements, and for a time this was their sole duty. Subsequently, however, the Brigades and Divisions to which these 2nd Battalions belonged were themselves ordered to prepare for service overseas as complete units. They, therefore, ceased to be draft-finding units, and for the purpose of feeding the 1st and 2nd Battalions a 3rd (or Reserve) Battalion was formed.

The above explains briefly how the two original Territorial Force Battalions of the Regiment gradually expanded into six, or, with the Home Service Provisional Battalion, into seven Battalions.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 4TH (T.F.) BATTALION FOR 1914–1915.

THE 4th Battalion went into camp for its annual training at Marlow on Sunday, 2nd August, leaving Oxford about midday, and picking up detachments at stations on the line. Next morning, between 2.30 and 3 o'clock, to every one's surprise, Reveille sounded, and orders were issued for the Battalion to parade and return to Oxford. By 9 a.m. headquarters were reached, and three hours later the men were dismissed, with orders to hold themselves in readiness to mobilize at a moment's notice.

The order for the mobilization of the Territorials reached Oxford at 5 p.m. on Tuesday, 4th August, and the men assembled at headquarters at 7 next morning, when they were told off to their respective billets in the following colleges: Christ Church, New College, Keble, and Balliol. By the evening of the 5th August, therefore, the Battalion was completely mobilized and ready to move if required. Matters were made easier for a rapid mobilization by its having come at the moment at which the Battalion had assembled for its annual training; and billeting was simplified by the fact that it was vacation time and the colleges empty.

August 6th.—The Colours of the Battalion were deposited in Christ Church Cathedral, being taken from headquarters by Lieuts. Vyner and Grisewood, with a Colour-party of three Sergeants. They were received by the Dean of Christ Church, who delivered a short address, the ceremony concluding with special prayers.

August 7th–8th.—Various parades and drills were held.

August 9th.—(Sunday.) Parade Services were held in the morning for D and A Companies at New College, for B and H at Keble, and C, E, F, and G Companies at Christ Church Cathedral. In the

Digitized by Google

evening the Battalion left Oxford, marching to the station by Companies,[1] and entraining between 7 p.m. and 11 p.m. for Swindon.

The following officers belonged to the Battalion at this date :—

Lieut.-Colonel A. Stockton, I.D. (*Commanding*); Major F. W. Schofield (*Senior Major*); Captain J. A. Ballard (*Adjutant*); Major A. A. Bridgewater (*Quartermaster*); Lieut. J. O. Summerhayes (R.A.M.C., T.F.); Lieut. H. L. Gauntlett (R.A.M.C., T.F.); Major R. L. Ovey; Captains R. R. S. Rowell, D. M. Rose, E. C. Fortescue, T. S. W. Fox; Lieuts. E. G. Dashwood, E W. R. Hadden, the Hon. L. J. E. Twistleton-Wykeham-Fiennes, F. B. Jones, B. Long, P Pickford, J. N. Treble; 2nd Lieuts. F. W. Taylor (*employed in Nigeria*), A. C. Jee, W. H. Spikes, C. J. S. Vyner, A. A. Grisewood, C. J. Barton.

Early in September upwards of 80 per cent. of the men having volunteered for Foreign Service, the Battalion became a Foreign Service Battalion ; and a recruiting campaign, carried out in the county, soon produced the requisite number of men to bring it up to war strength.

The training of the Battalion at Writtle Camp, near Chelmsford, was now in full swing, and a Reserve Battalion was established, under the command of Colonel Ames, with headquarters at Exeter College, Oxford, the men being billeted, some at their homes in the City, and others in various colleges.

By the end of September the strength of the original Battalion had reached 1,300, but the surplus men were shortly afterwards transferred to the Reserve Battalion, which soon had a strength of over 500, with the following officers :—

Colonel W. H. Ames, V.D., Commanding.
Captain T. S. W. Fox,
Lieut. A. C. Jee.

2nd Lieuts. A. H. Brucker, W T. Gray, H. N. Davenport, R. F. Cuthbert, P. U. Doyne, H. T. T. Harris, J. C. L. Barnett, M. C. Richardson, A. G. A. Davis, R. F. R. P. Boyle, R. L. Abraham, J. G Stockton, C. S. W. Mareon, A. L. S. Harris, E. E. Bridges, K. E. Brown, J. F. B. Sanderson.

Lieut. and Quartermaster W. A. Hobbs.

[1] The Peace Headquarters of the various Companies are as follows: A, B, and H Companies, City of Oxford; D Company, Henley and Culham; C, G, E, F, Banbury, Witney, and Chipping Norton.

Digitized by Google

On the 14th *October* the Foreign Service Battalion paraded in full marching order, with the remainder of the South Midland Division, in Hylands Park, for inspection by His Majesty the King.

During the last week of October the Home Service men were transferred to the Reserve Battalion at Oxford.

In order to improve the physique of the men, all spare time during the winter was set aside for football, hockey, cross-country running, boxing, etc. The first cross-country run of the season was held on the 29th November, when about 800 men started. The Companies finished in the following order: F, H, C, G, A, D, B, E, and the individual winners were Private Peddar (D), 1st; Private Atkins (D), 2nd; Private Grant (G), 3rd; Lance-Corporal Webb (G), 4th

In the Brigade run at the end of December the 4th Battalion was placed third, although they had the first man home, and four men in the first seven. The race was won by the 4th R. Berks, with the Bucks Battalion second.

In December Colonel Stockton gave up command of the Battalion, and was succeeded by Colonel Schofield, when Captain R. R. S. Rowell was promoted Major.

1915.

In January the Battalion adopted the Four-Company organization, and thus came into line with Regular and New Army Battalions, the change being brought about as follows:—

A and B Companies became A Company (Captain Conybeare).
C and G became B (Captain Fortescue).
F and H became C (Captain Rose).
D and E became D (Captain Hadden).

During this month Brigade Training commenced, and great strides were made with the General Course of Musketry and night-entrenching.

Early in February General Sir Ian Hamilton inspected the South Midland Division, which was now approaching the end of its training at home. The following Infantry belonged to the Division:—

Warwickshire Infantry Brigade.—5th, 6th, 7th, 8th R. Warwicks.

Gloucester and Worcester Infantry Brigade.—4th and 6th Gloucesters; 7th and 8th Worcesters.

South Midland Infantry Brigade.—5th Gloucesters; 4th Oxford and Bucks; Bucks Battalion, Oxford and Bucks; 4th R. Berks.

Digitized by Google

1/4th (T.F.) BATTALION
ON
ACTIVE SERVICE IN FRANCE AND FLANDERS.
MARCH–JULY 1915.

Regimental Diary.

See Map 4.

March 27th. — Orders received that Transport, 2 officers, and 84 other ranks would entrain for embarkation at 6.35 a.m. to-morrow, and that the Battalion would entrain at Chelmsford in two detachments, the first at 6.35 p.m., the second at 7.5 p.m. on March 29th for embarkation.

March 28th.—Transport paraded, under Lieut. Long, at 3.45, marched from Writtle to Chelmsford, where it entrained at 6.35 a.m.

March 29th.—The Battalion marched from Writtle to Chelmsford, entrained in accordance with the above orders, and embarked at Folkestone on S.S. "Onward" at 11 p.m. Disembarked at Boulogne a little after midnight and went into Rest Camp.

March 30th.—At 11.15 a.m. marched to Pont de Briques Station and entrained for St. Omer at 1.15. Detrained at Cassel at 6.50 p.m. Our transport were on the same train, having come from Havre, where they had disembarked. Marched from Cassel to Steenvoorde (6½ miles), and billeted late at night in scattered farms.

April 2nd.—The Battalion, as part of the Brigade, was inspected by Sir Horace Smith-Dorrien.

April 4th.—Marched from Steenvoorde at 1.40 p.m., following the 5th Glosters. Passing through Eecke, Cæstre, and Fletre, arrived at Moolenacher (8 miles) at 4.45 p.m., and went into billets in farms.

April 6th.—(Moolenacher.) Company Training; also training of 2nd Reserve Machine-gun Section and Range Finders continued.

April 7th.—The Battalion paraded at 2 p.m., joined the Brigade at the cross-roads one mile west of Bailleul, and marched viâ Bailleul to one mile short of Nieppe. Got into billets at Oosthove Farm about 7 p.m.—very crowded. The Battalion is to be attached to the East Lancashire and London Rifle Brigade for instruction in trench work.

Digitized by Google

April 8th.—A Company on fatigue in Ploegsteert[1] Wood. Remaining companies under instruction in the morning. A Company and Machine-gun Section went into trenches, attached to E. Lancs D Company night work in Ploegsteert Wood.

April 9th.—Duties similar to yesterday, companies relieving one another

April 10th.—Trench instruction continued. C and D Companies in the trenches.

April 11th.—Trench instruction continued. 1 man killed.

April 12th.—The Battalion marched from Oosthove, at 8.45 a.m., to new billets one mile south of Bailleul Station.

April 13th.—Bomb-throwing instruction.

April 14th.—Orders received that the Brigade would take over trenches from the 11th Infantry Brigade. The Battalion is to be in reserve at Nieppe.

April 15th.—Marched to billets at Nieppe and Pont de Nieppe.

April 16th.—Major Ovey, with 1 officer and 2 N.C.O.'s per company, were attached to the 7th Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders, to become acquainted with trenches and act as guides.

April 17th.—Marched from Nieppe to Romarin, arriving at 10.30 a.m. Thence marched to the Piggery (T. 24. d. Sheet 28, Map $\frac{1}{40,000}$). At night we took over trenches from the 5th Glosters and 7th Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders. The South Midland Division is now holding the line from the Warnave River to the Messines-Wulverghem Road. Gloster and Worcester Brigade, Right Sector; South Midland Brigade, Centre Sector; Warwick Brigade, Left Sector. The Battalion took over two machine-guns from the R. Berks.

April 18th.—The section held by the Battalion is named Prowse Corner. Received orders that we would be relieved to-morrow by the R. Berks, and would then take over support trenches held by the Bucks Battalion. At work on communication trenches and dug-outs. A little sniping.

April 19th.—In the evening we were relieved by the 4th Berks, and moved to the support line. Nearly the whole Battalion on fatigue at night. One man wounded.

April 20th.—Most of the Battalion on fatigue day and night.

[1] Popularly known as "Plug Street."—ED.

Digitized by Google

April 21*st*.—Fatigues on 2nd Line by day, and on 1st Line by night.

April 23*rd*.—The Battalion relieved the 4th Berks in Prowse Point Section of trenches. B Company in Oxford Trench; D Company in Argyll and Sutherland Trenches; Lieut. Pickford's Platoon of C Company in Berkshire Trench; 2nd Lieut. Craig's Platoon of C Company in support in Park Avenue Dug-outs; A Company and Regimental H.Q. at the Piggery; 2 platoons of C Company at Grande Manque Farm.

April 24*th*.—2nd Lieut. Edmund's Platoon took over huts and dug-outs just south of Prowse Point from the Glosters, but as there was not room for the whole platoon, part went into Berkshire Trench.

Information received that Lieut.-Colonel Schofield has been appointed to command No. 8 Infantry Depôt at Havre. Major R. L. Ovey assumed command of the Battalion.

April 25*th*.—Lieut.-Colonel Schofield left the Battalion, to take up his appointment. Our section of trenches was extended towards the right, and a platoon of C Company took over a new trench known as Grouse Butt.

April 26*th*.—Very quiet in the trenches.

April 27*th*.—A man of B Company was killed. The Battalion was relieved by the 4th Berks, and moved to billets at Romarin.

Information received at 10.30 p.m. that the line held by the Brigade had been redistributed, and that the Battalion would take over the portion of line held by the 8th Worcesters from the right of the Bucks Battalion to German House, with two companies holding this line, one at Hunterston South, and one at Ploegsteert.

April 28*th*.—At 1 p.m. the Battalion took over the above trenches in Ploegsteert Wood. The Brigade area is now divided into three sections, viz., Right Section, Birdcage; Centre Section, St. Ives; Left Section, Prowse Point.

April 29*th*.—Our present line forms a sort of horse-shoe. Two men were wounded to-day.

April 30*th*.—About 30 shells fell near Battalion H.Q., but did no damage.

May 1*st*.—In the afternoon Essex Farm was set on fire, and it proved impossible to put the fire out. The enemy shelled the wood heavily; 2 men wounded.

Information received that Captain Dugmore has been appointed to command the Battalion

Digitized by Google

May 2nd.—A quiet day in the trenches, but a good deal of firing at night.

May 3rd.—Very little shelling to-day, and a quieter night.

May 4th.—A certain amount of shelling. Orders received that all ranks are to wear a respirator on the forehead when sleeping in the front line trenches.

Lieut. G. K. Rose wounded.

May 5th.—Wet and hot. Fired trench-mortars and rifle-grenades; enemy replied with the same and some heavy shells; 1 man wounded.

May 6th.—A few shells round Rifle House; 1 man wounded.

From the Diary of Captain J. J. Conybeare, Commanding A Company.

May 7th.—After breakfast I had a look through loopholes. I saw an enormous periscope, which must have had a glass nearly 8 inches square, and with my telescope I could see the faces of two Germans looking into it. They did not seem to be wearing red bands round their caps, like the man I saw yesterday. I wonder if the regiments opposite to us have changed?

During the night we fired off two trench-mortars and two rifle-grenades I do not think that any of them landed actually in the German trench. Two grenades were fired at us in reply, bursting, as they did yesterday, just behind our trench, but not hurting anyone.

May 8th.—Did my daily bit of shooting at periscopes, but I know I did not hit any, as the Germans signalled back a miss each time. Heard this evening that we are to have a bit of a show here to-morrow. It appears that our people are attacking further down the line, and we are to make a demonstration.

Casualties in the Battalion to-day, 1 man killed, and 1 wounded.

May 9th.—A good deal of heavy firing away to our left at 4.30 a.m., at which hour a mine at Le Touquet was due to explode. Things were then fairly quiet until about 10.30 a.m., when our part of the programme commenced with 3 minutes' rapid fire over the parapet. I went out half-way up the communication trench to C Company to observe, and saw a lot of rifle-grenades fired into our trenches while our firing was going on.

When I got back to the trench I found that a rifle-grenade had fallen right into one of our trenches and had burst an ammunition

Digitized by Google

box, exploding 300 or 400 rounds. One man, Private Partridge,[1] had two bad abdominal wounds and a bullet through his arm. I saw at once that it was hopeless, and gave him a big dose of morphia. Another man had received a small scalp wound. We (A Company) really got off marvellously cheap. I cannot understand why a dozen or more were not hurt. Probably the unfortunate Partridge caught most of the bullets.

We went on giving occasional bursts of rapid fire during the rest of the day, the Germans gradually replying with rifle-grenades, which mostly fell unpleasantly close, but did not cause any further casualties in the company.

During the afternoon we fired a number of rounds with the trench-mortar without any success. The same applied to our efforts with rifle-grenades. The Germans did not even trouble to reply, but occasionally signalled a miss. They seem to have taken the whole performance in a rather light-hearted spirit.

At about 7 p.m. we shelled their trenches with a mountain battery, and, as far as one could see, really did do a little damage.

After dark everything was quiet. Jones, Mason, and I, who were up in the firing line, all had violent headaches, so retired to bed, Vyner and Rowell sharing the duties between them.

THE REGIMENTAL DIARY GIVES THE FOLLOWING DETAILS OF THE ABOVE.

Our machine-guns were laid to bear on the roads in squares U. 22. a. b., U. 23. a. b., U. 16, U. 17.; also bursts of rifle fire were brought to bear on the same squares.

8 *a.m.*—Infantry rifle-grenade and mortar fire, accompanied by bursts of rifle and machine-gun fire opened.

8.15 *a.m.*—Orders received that in addition to the above squares, burst of rifle and machine-gun fire were to be brought to bear on the La Basseville-Pont Rouge Road, and bridges over the River Lys.

10.30 *a.m.*—Three minutes' burst of rapid infantry fire. Enemy replied with rifle-grenades; 2 men in A Company wounded, one of whom died shortly afterwards.

11.30 *a.m.*—Artillery opened slow fire all along the Divisional line.

1 *p.m.*—Machine-gun fire on enemy's support and communication trenches.

[1] Private H. Partridge had been employed at the Clarendon Press for some years prior to the War.—ED.

Digitized by Google

3.30 *p.m.*—Trench-mortar and rifle-grenade fire. Enemy replied with rifle-grenades.

4.30 *p.m.*—Telephone wire cut in C Company's communication trench.

5 *p.m.*—Lance-Corporal Liebermann and Private Senior went up to examine the telephone wires, found them cut in three places, and mended them under rather hot rifle-grenade fire.

6 *p.m.*—Slow fire and artillery fire all long the line. Very noisy.

7.30 *p.m.*—Onward through the night bursts of machine-gun fire and rifle fire on communication trenches and roads behind enemy's position. Battalion H.Q. had a very quiet time. No shells came anywhere near. The casualties in the Battalion during the day were 1 killed and 3 wounded.

REGIMENTAL DIARY CONTINUED.

May 10*th*.—Weather very hot. Quiet day. A few shells in Ploegsteert. Nothing happened in the line. Reliefs carried out, one platoon of A Company going into tents at Hunterston South.

May 11*th*.—Lieut.-Colonel Dugmore joined and took over command of the Battalion. A quiet day. The mountain battery mounted a gun in No. 31 Trench, to knock down a tower in the German trenches.

Captain D. M. Rose wounded. Captain Dashwood took over command of his Company (B).

May 12*th*.—At 3.30 a.m. the mountain gun opened and knocked down the tower. Machine-guns and Trench No. 32 also kept up rapid fire on the same point. Enemy replied with rifle-grenades, one landing in No. 31 Trench.

Casualties.—Captain E. G. DASHWOOD killed; 2nd Lieut. Cranmer and 3 men wounded. Captain Conybeare transferred to the command of B Company.

May 13*th*.—The Germans started at 4.20 a.m. on a rather severe "morning hate," with mortars, rifle-grenades, and shrapnel, chiefly on the 6th Glosters on our right, accompanied by machine-gun and rifle fire. It lasted about 20 minutes but did no harm. The day passed quietly. At about 4.30 p.m. four shrapnel came over our support trenches and wounded 2 men filling sandbags.

The following telegram was received from the Brigade :—

"The Corps Commander has directed that his appreciation of the work carried out yesterday morning be conveyed to your unit. He

Digitized by Google

considers that work of this character goes far to enable us to obtain that moral superiority over the enemy which alone will enable us to bring the war to a successful conclusion."

May 14th.—A quiet night, but very wet. Ploegsteert Wood in a dreadfully messy condition. Reliefs carried out. B Company to camp and D to huts.

May 15th.—Quiet day in trenches; 1 man wounded (slightly).

May 16th.—Owing to the success of the 1st Army, orders were issued that sniping was to be particularly active to-day. The enemy made very little reply. A few rifle-grenades were fired, but no damage done. No. 31 Trench replied with rifle-grenades, several of which fell in the enemy's trench.

FROM THE DIARY OF CAPTAIN J. J. CONYBEARE, COMMANDING B COMPANY.

May 17th.—A wet day again. The place is rapidly becoming a sea of mud. Instead of feeding in our tents, we have occupied a fortified farm, which forms part of the second line. It is really fairly comfortable, and apparently free from rats.

A perfect deluge during the evening. At 11 p.m. a fatigue party of 100 men had to go out to work for the R.E. They returned at 3.30 a.m. soaked to the skin. It was pitch dark, and the corduroy paths through the wood were so slippery that most people fell at least once. We lit two big fires in our house to dry clothes, as the men have no change of clothing. On the whole they kept remarkably cheerful under the very trying circumstances.

May 18th.—Rested during the morning. At 5 p.m. the company went into the trenches, which we found very wet and muddy.

May 19th.—In the morning went round trenches with the C.O. and a Sapper Officer to decide on the position of loopholes. We settled on a somewhat ambitious scheme, whereby all the breastworks will be united by sand-bag barricades.

At 10.30 we had two shrapnel over, but no damage done. No other excitement.

May 20th.—No rain to-day. The place is beginning to get quite dry and pleasant again. The leaves on the trees are now very thick, and outside the trench the grass is growing quite long. There is also a good deal of mustard—tall, and with a lot of yellow blossom.

The Germans were quiet and hardly fired a shot all day.

Digitized by Google

May 21*st*.—Spent the morning going round with my telescope, but saw nothing except periscopes.

Last night we found a German rifle, which must have been buried for at least 4 months; but, after cleaning it up, it shot quite well with some German ammunition, which we had also found. We also unearthed a British L.E. short rifle, lost probably about January. It was in fairly good condition, except that the safety-catch would not work. The latter fact was only discovered by its going off by mistake and sending a bullet straight through another rifle.

Both sides very peaceful to-day.

May 22*nd*.—Nothing much doing. An officer of the Gordons came down to look for a grave near German House. After some trouble we found it, marked with a piece of wood. I have promised to have a proper cross put up.

Later we were relieved by A Company, and came back to the tents and breastworks again. I met Landon this afternoon. He used to be in this Battalion, and is now A.D.C. to the General of one of the Divisions of K.'s Army which has just come out, and has its H.Q. at Nieppe, about 3 miles from here. It is a Scottish division (9th), and is apparently the first of the K.'s Army divisions to come out.

Back to the breastworks at night, as usual. Luckily it was quite warm and dry.

REGIMENTAL DIARY CONTINUED.

May 23*rd*.—At 3.30 a.m. our Field Artillery shelled Birdcage with 150 shells, preceded by 5 minutes' rapid fire and machine-gun fire from our trenches. The enemy replied with shrapnel and H.E. Four large shells came over Battalion H.Q., at least "Black Marias," and possibly bigger.

One man killed and 1 wounded.

At 11.15 p.m. the Germans started cheering, and stood on their parapet opposite the Bucks Battalion (St. Ives Section), who opened rapid. No. 32 Trench (C Company) took it up, and fired a lot of ammunition.

May 24*th*.—Everything very quiet. 2nd Lieut. G. H. Greenwell rejoined the Battalion from Havre and was posted to B Company, in place of Cranmer, wounded.

May 25th–26th.—Usual trench routine. Companies relieved.

Digitized by Google

May 27th.—Very hot. Although a quiet day, we had 1 man killed and 3 men wounded.

May 28th.—Hot, and comparatively quiet, except for sniping.

2nd Lieut. J. P. HERMON-HODGE killed, and 2 men wounded.

FROM CAPTAIN J. J. CONYBEARE'S DIARY.

May 28th.—Wakened at 7.30 a.m. by a telephone message, asking me to go and see Hermon-Hodge in D Company trench, as he had been shot. Before I could start they telephoned through that he was dead. A very great loss to the Regiment. He was quite one of the best subalterns and a most excellent fellow.

During the morning we discovered that the new machine-gun emplacement was built on the body of a soldier. It took nearly three hours to get it out. He must have sunk into the mud where he fell months ago, for he had on his full equipment with his rifle under him. Curiously enough, as soon as the latter was pulled out of the mud, it went off without any apparent reason. Luckily, no damage was done. We found that the man belonged to the Inniskillings.

One of our stretcher-bearers had a marvellous escape to-day: a bullet went through his left-hand breast pocket, and cut his knife in half without touching him.

The Germans were very aggressive during the night, but only succeeded in wounding slightly one man in our company. I hear that two men were hit, further back in the wood, by strays. We fired two rifle-grenades, but I think that they must have gone into a pond or something of the kind, for they did not explode.

May 29th.—More bad news. Regimental-Sergeant-Major ADAMS was moving some hand-grenades (Blastine) at H.Q. this morning, when, for some unknown reason, one of them exploded, and set off nearly a dozen more. I cannot conceive why he was not blown to atoms. Fortunately he survived, with badly-lacerated legs and one thigh, and rather serious wounds in his face and arm. I am afraid he will be more or less incapacitated.[1]

Casualty, 1 man wounded.

REGIMENTAL DIARY CONTINUED.

May 30th.—Very hot, but a quiet day. C and A Companies relieved by D and B. H.Q. moved back yesterday to west of

[1] He died in hospital at Boulogne on the 13th June.—ED.

Digitized by Google

Hunterston. The sentry on the water-tank in Hunter's Avenue was wounded to-day.

May 31*st.*—Two platoons of a Battalion of the Cameronians (9th Division) were attached to us for trench instruction.

June 1*st.*—(Ploegsteert.) Three men in C Company wounded.

June 2nd.—Orders received that only 2 platoons need occupy the Subsidiary Line at night.

June 3*rd.*—B and D Companies relieved A and C. One man of B Company was slightly wounded by a premature.

June 4*th.*—Still in Ploegsteert Wood. Very hot.

June 5*th.*—The R.E. Mining Officer reported Germans to be mining very close indeed to our mine under Birdcage, and that it might be necessary to fire our mine at any moment. We found a fatigue party to carry five tons of gunpowder from Essex Farm to the minehead. Several orders received during the night as to the procedure when the mine was fired. All men in the Subsidiary Line had to sleep in their boots, and as much noise as possible was to be made on the corduroy in rear of the fire trenches, to endeavour to persuade the enemy that reinforcements had come up to make an attack.

FROM CAPTAIN J. J. CONYBEARE'S DIARY.

June 6*th.*—Went up to see the R.E. Officer at about 7 a.m. to get the latest news. He said that the mine was ready, but that he had been ordered to await instructions before firing it. He was somewhat nervous lest the Germans might have already reached it and cut the firing wires.

At 10 a.m. we got a telephone message saying that the mine was going up at 10.10. Everything was ready, and we waited anxiously. There was a perfect stillness, save for an occasional shot from the Germans.

At 10.20 a.m. the ground 150 yards in front of us gave a steady heave, and then suddenly rose something between 120 and 150 feet into the air. There was very little noise—only a sort of swishing sound—made by the earth as it rose and fell. Our own parapet, on the other hand, rocked as if there was an earthquake. As soon as the mine had exploded we fired 10 rounds rapid in the direction of the crater. The mountain gun also began to fire rapid, and got off 40 rounds. This was the most noisy and terrifying part of the performance. Their first shot hit a tree 10 yards in front of our trench and burst. For a moment I thought that the Germans had put a shell right into the trench.

Digitized by Google

However, we were not left unmolested for long. The Germans recovered from their unpleasant shock, and within three minutes were blazing at us with machine-guns and shrapnel. By this time we were all in our dug-outs, so no damage was done. Meanwhile our howitzers were giving a display. They fired about 30 rounds into the German front and second lines, and made excellent shooting.

Not content with putting shrapnel over our trench and supports, the Germans fired a lot of really heavy shells into the wood and the unfortunate Ploegsteert. In many ways the people behind were worse off than ourselves, for in a dug-out no amount of shrapnel will do one any harm, whereas against H.E. no cover is of any use whatever. A Company had a lucky escape: a "Black Maria" fell in the wood within 3 yards of their guard-room, but by great good fortune it did not burst.

The bombardment went on intermittently all day, and within half an hour the German working parties, nothing daunted, were at work rebuilding a parapet in the crater of the mine.

During the evening I had a walk round Hadden's Trench, and got a good view of the damage done. About 70 yards of the German parapet had vanished, and was replaced by a crater between 30 and 40 feet deep.

One man was slightly wounded to-day.

REGIMENTAL DIARY CONTINUED.

June 7th.—Orders received for the Battalion to move to billets in Pont de Nieppe; No. 32 Trench to be handed over to the Bucks Battalion, and No. 31 and huts to the 4th Glosters. The relief commenced at 3.30 p.m., and the last company reached billets by 9 p.m.

June 10th.—(Pont de Nieppe.) Very hot weather. Inspection by Major-General R. Fanshawe, C.B., D.S.O., now in command of the Division.

June 11th.—The Battalion took over trenches from the 5th R. Warwicks—trenches 36 to 40 and 61 to 63, including old Prowse Point section. A Company on the right; D on the left; H.Q. at Ash House.

June 12th.—Enemy very active sniping in the early morning, and he opened rapid fire for about 10 minutes. C and D Companies were shelled in the afternoon, and about a dozen "Willies" fell near H.Q.

Digitized by Google

June 13*th*.—Continuous shelling most of the day. D Company had two "White Hopes" in their trench, and one shrapnel wounded 6 men.

June 14*th*.—The enemy, at about 2.10 a.m., blew up a mine on our left—about Trench 24. D Company was shelled again this morning. One company of the 5th R. Berks (New Army) was attached to us for instruction.

June 15*th*.—The Battalion was relieved by the 4th R. Berks. D Company's relief was not completed until 11.15 p.m. A and B Companies moved, after dark, to relieve the two companies of the 4th Berks in the Subsidiary Line. One company is near La Plus Douce Farm, the other near Ash House, with a platoon at Hyde Park Corner in the daytime, as well as a section at Château La Hutte; the whole platoon moving up at night.

June 17*th*.—1 man was killed by a stray shot in the Subsidiary Line.

June 18*th*.—Very hot. A good deal of shelling on the trench line. A man in B Company was killed.

June 19*th*.—At Stand-to there was heavy shelling and rifle fire on Ploegsteert Wood. One man in D Company wounded. The Battalion was relieved by the 8th Worcesters, and went into huts between Romarin and Neuve Eglise, the Brigade going into Divisional Reserve.

June 20*th*.—Very hot and fine. In the afternoon the Battalion practised the attack from trench to trench.

June 22*nd*.—Still in hutments in Divisional Reserve. Weather very hot. Company drill in the morning. In the afternoon the Battalion played the R.A.M.C. at cricket at Romarin. Score: 1/4th Oxfordshire, 94; R.A.M.C., 47.

June 23*rd*.—The Battalion ordered to be ready to turn out at half an hour's notice without transport.

June 24*th*.—Ordered to march in Brigade to Bailleul. Reached the starting point, where the Brigade concentrated, at 9.30 p.m.

June 25*th*.—Marched in Brigade from Bailleul to Vieux Berquin, arriving at about midnight.

June 26*th*.—Marched at 8.30 p.m. for billets in the vicinity of Gonnehem.

Digitized by Google

June 27th.—Reached Gonnehem, viâ Merville and Robecq, at 3.30 a.m. Distance about 15 miles. 7 men fell out. At 6.30 p.m. marched again, about 4 miles, to Allouagne. The Division now forms part of the IVth Corps, 1st Army.

June 28th–July 11th.—Remained at Allouagne training and resting, the Division being in Corps Reserve.

July 12th.—The Battalion moved to Nœux-les-Mines. Lieut. Vyner and 9 men were injured by an explosion during practice, and 1 man was killed.

July 13th–15th.—At Nœux-les-Mines furnishing digging parties in the second line. Bivouacked. Weather wet.

July 16th.—Marched in Brigade at 9 p.m. for Ames.

July 17th.—Arrived at Ames at 3.30 a.m. after a very wet march of 15 miles, particularly trying for the men who had formed the working parties during the previous day and the night before; 8 men fell out. The Brigade is to entrain to-morrow.

July 18th.—The Battalion marched from Ames to Berguette Station, 7½ miles. Very hot. Entrained and left Berguette at 4.11 p.m., arriving at Doullens at 9 p.m. Detrained and marched to billets at Terramesnil, 6 miles. Information received that the Division now forms part of the VIIth Corps, 3rd Army, the Corps consisting of the 4th, 48th, and a New Division, and that it would take over trenches from the French.

July 19th.—Marched at 4 p.m. to bivouac at Coigneux, 8 miles. Very hot.

July 20th.—Officers reconnoitred trenches near Hebuterne. At 7.30 p.m. the Battalion marched to take over trenches from the 21st French Territorial Infantry at Hebuterne. All four companies (finding their own supports) in the trenches, which are quite different from those which we have hitherto occupied, being trenches only and no breastworks. A maze of deep communication trenches. The relief was completed by 11 p.m.

July 21st.—Quiet day. Very hot. The Regimental Transport moved to Thievres. The 143rd Brigade relieved the French on our right.

July 22nd.—A few shells fell on the village and behind company trenches; 1 man killed, and 1 wounded.

Digitized by Google

July 23*rd*.—A good deal of rain; trenches very wet and greasy Enemy shelled communication trench behind C Company at 9 a.m. otherwise a quiet day.

July 24*th*.—At about 4 p.m. there was intermittent shelling along the line and near communication trenches.

In the evening the Battalion was relieved by the 4th R. Berks, and moved to billets in Hebuterne; 1 man wounded.

July 25*th*–27*th*.—The Battalion provided working parties in Hebuterne. In the event of attack two companies, under Major Ovey, are to hold the Redoubt.

July 28*th*.—The Battalion returned to the trenches, relieving the 4th R. Berks. Dispositions altered: 3 companies in front line, and 1 company in local reserve round Battalion H.Q. Weather fine again.

July 29*th*.—Occasional shelling but no casualties.

July 30*th*.—Dispositions altered. The Brigade to form the garrison of Hebuterne, with 2 Battalions in trenches, 1 Battalion in Hebuterne, and 1 in Sailly. We handed over trenches from Prat to the right of our line to the 144th Brigade, and took over the remainder of Trench Bataille, also Jena and Gudin from the 5th Glosters, having only 2 companies in the trenches, with 2 in local reserve (A in the village; B in dug-out near H.Q.).

One man killed.

July 31*st*.—(Hebuterne.) A good deal of shelling. The French Artillery moved away.

1/4TH BATTALION.
CASUALTIES UP TO 31ST JULY 1915

Killed.

Captain E. G. DASHWOOD.
2nd Lieut. J. P. HERMON-HODGE.
Lieut. C. J. S. VYNER.
And 11 N.C.O.'s and men.

Wounded.

2nd Lieut. J. E. A. CRANMER.
Captain D. M. ROSE.
Lieut. G. K. ROSE.
And 48 N.C.O.'s and men.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 2/4TH BATTALION, AUGUST 1914 TO 31ST JULY 1915.

THE following account of the raising and training of this Battalion has been contributed by Colonel W. H. Ames, T.D. :—

Within a very few days of the mobilization of the Territorials each Battalion was asked to volunteer for Active Service. A very good response was made to the invitation, but in every case there were a number of men who were, either from age or other reasons, at that moment unable to volunteer. As soon as the services of the various units had been accepted for Foreign Service, the problems arose as to how they were to be brought up to the strength necessary for Foreign Service, how they were to be maintained at that strength, what substitute should be provided for them in the scheme of Home Defence, and what use should be made of those men who were unable to volunteer.

COLONEL W. H. AMES, T.D.

On August 31st the War Office issued a letter to County Associations solving these problems by ordering the formation of a replica of each unit of the Territorial Force. Major Ovey had been detailed to proceed to Oxford to raise the necessary recruits, about 400, to bring the General Service Battalion up to strength, and these were obtained in the course of a very few days. The County Association entrusted the task of raising the new Battalion to Colonel W. H. Ames, who had previously commanded the Territorial Battalion, and on 14th September 1914 that officer began to enrol men in the new Battalion.

Digitized by Google

Headquarters were at Exeter College, and the services of Colour-Sergeant T. V. Wood, who had retired on a pension about nine months previously, were obtained to act as Sergeant-Major. On the first day about 130 recruits were obtained, and by the end of the week there were considerably over 300. Fortunately the services of some experienced regular N.C.O.'s were secured, among them Colour-Sergeants Moore and Williams and Sergeant Gee, of the Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry; Colour-Sergeant Waldram, of the Durham Light Infantry; Sergeant Howland, of the Rifle Brigade; and Colour-Sergeant Bassett, of the Gloucester Regiment. For officers the Commanding Officer had to rely on the services of gentlemen who had had little or no previous military experience beyond what they had acquired in some cases in the O.T.C.

The Battalion was organized in 8 companies as a replica of the First Line Battalion: A, B, and H were Oxford Companies; C and G, Banbury and district; D, Henley and Culham; E, Chipping Norton; F, Witney and Bicester. The greater number of men came from Oxford and overflowed into G Company. A considerable number of National School teachers, who had formerly been members of the Culham College Detachment, joined up and brought other teachers with them, and they overflowed into E Company. At first men were accepted either for Home Service only or for Foreign Service, but towards the middle of October a change was made, and men could be accepted only if they undertook the Foreign Service obligation. By the beginning of the third week in October the Battalion had been recruited up to the necessary strength. The Home Service men from the first line Battalion were retained with that Battalion until about the middle of November, on the ground that they were trained men and were required for the Defence of the Coast. About the middle of November they returned to Oxford, and the Battalion was complete.

It is obvious that training had to be from the very beginning. Officers and men were started together at Squad Drill, which gradually developed into Company Drill. After about a month or six weeks of this work a series of daily Battalion Drills in Close Order were undertaken on Port Meadow, which greatly helped in developing the Battalion into an organized unit. Colonel Waller (late R.E.) instructed both officers and men in the elements of trench digging on the ground behind the Headquarters in St. Cross Road.

There were weekly route marches in the country surrounding Oxford, which gradually increased in length until, just before

Digitized by Google

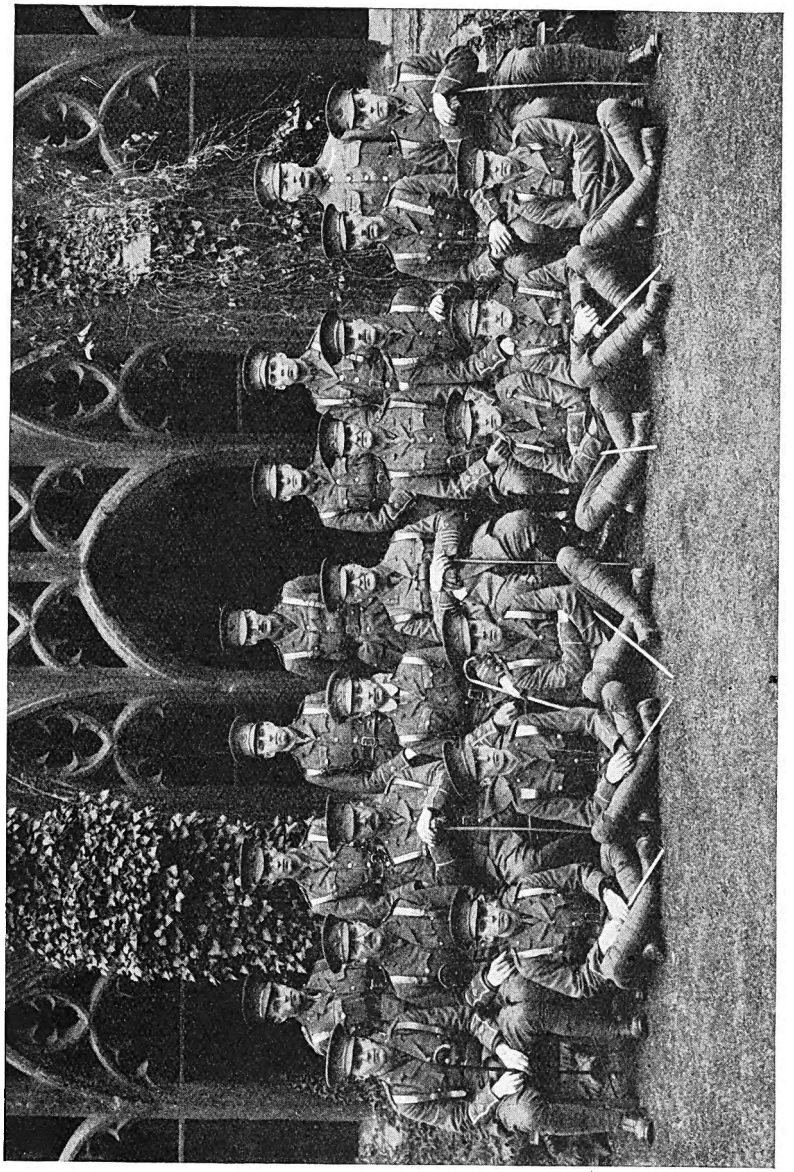
Christmas the Battalion successfully covered a march by Nuneham, Culham, Abingdon—a distance of quite 20 miles. The men were of course without equipment or rifles, but were trained, in accordance with the traditions of light infantry, to march somewhat beyond the regulation pace; and, in fact, coming through Bagley Wood, towards the end of this march, they were covering the space between each milestone in a few seconds under the quarter of an hour. Training in the open was carried out at first on Benman's Farm, on the Eynsham Road, by the courtesy of the tenant, and afterwards chiefly in the Elsfield district, where companies learned the elements of outpost work, working across country, and trench digging, and also night work.

As the men were raised they were billeted in the various colleges. Exeter, Wadham, Balliol, Keble, Magdalen, Oriel, and Brasenose—all came forward and placed their accommodation and their kitchens at the disposal of the Battalion, but by the end of September provision had to be made for the return of the undergraduates, and the Battalion was billeted in the neighbourhood of Holywell, Broad Street, St. Giles, Wellington Square, and Beaumont Street, chiefly in the University lodging-houses. These were certainly the most luxurious billets that the Battalion was destined to occupy. Clothing and equipment proceeded very slowly, as naturally the troops for Foreign Service had to take precedence, but by Christmas most, if not all, of the Battalion had received their uniform. The equipment took longer, but most of it had been obtained by the end of January. As to rifles and bayonets there were none, but by the kindness of the County Association 100 rifles and bayonets, which were kept in store for the National Reserve, were available for use, and each company in turn were grounded in the elements of musketry and the handling of arms.

After Christmas these newly raised units were formed into Brigades and Divisions, an exact replica of the First Line forces, and it was about this time that the title of the Battalion was changed from the 4th Reserve Battalion to the 2/4th Battalion Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry, and it became a unit in the 2/1st South Midland Brigade of the 2/1st South Midland Division. The Marquis of Salisbury was appointed to command the Division, and Colonel Ludlow, C.B., who formerly commanded the 8th Battalion of the Royal Warwick Regiment, was made Brigadier.

Shortly after the New Year the four-company system was applied to the Territorial Force, and the Battalion was reorganized as

Digitized by Google



OFFICERS 2/4TH BATTALION.
New College, Oxford, October 1914.

Digitized by Google

follows : A and F became A Company, D and H became B Company, E and G became C Company, B and C became D Company. Inoculation and influenza interfered considerably with the training during the first part of January, but the Battalion took its part in a Recruiting March round the streets of Oxford in company with the 7th and 8th Battalions, who were then also billeted in Oxford. At the end of January the Division was concentrated at Northampton, and the Battalion moved there by the London and North-Western Railway on January 31st, and in a few days received their first transport in the form of seven riding ponies and two mules. The Battalion was billeted in the neighbourhood of Abington Park, with Battalion Headquarters in Billing Road; the officers' mess was in the museum in Abington Park. During their stay in Northampton the Battalion was trained in Platoon and Company Drill, elements of Trenching, and Open Order work. Japanese rifles were served out on the arrival of the Battalion at Northampton, and were taken into use, and a preliminary course was fired on Harbottle Range. General Sir Ian Hamilton, then commanding the Central Force, inspected the Division, and was much interested in recognizing the "young eagles," whose birth he had predicted in his speech at the Town Hall, Oxford, which attracted at the time considerable attention during the first year of the formation of the Territorial Force. While the Battalion was marching past him in fours, he remarked on the excellence of the band, and added "a trifle fast even for light infantry." Towards the end of March the first-line Division went overseas, and the Reserve Division moved into Essex to take over their quarters. The Battalion was quartered at Writtle, where it took over details left behind by the 1/4th Battalion. On the expiration of ten days the Battalion, with the exception of a few details, was moved to Hoddesdon and Broxbourne, and there employed on digging London defences. The move was made partly by train and partly by march, 620 men marched the 25 miles into Hoddesdon, and not a single man fell out. The remainder of the Battalion went round by train Zeppelin scares were frequent during the three weeks' stay at Hoddesdon, but otherwise there was no incident. On May 7th the Battalion moved back to Broomfield, in the neighbourhood of Chelmsford. Those considered fit to do so marched, and there was considerable emulation among the men to take part in the march; 686 men marched 29 miles to Broomfield between 7 a.m. and 6 p.m. on that day, and only three fell out.

Digitized by Google

From May until the first week in June the Battalion remained at Broomfield, and commenced a Musketry Course at Boreham Range; but, with the old rifles that were then in possession of the Battalion, not much good was done.

About June 10th the Battalion moved to Epping to camp at Wintry Park Farm, where Battalion and Brigade Training were carried out until the middle of July, after which the Battalion marched back to Broomfield.

Digitized by Google

THE BUCKINGHAMSHIRE BATTALION.

As the Bucks Battalion served in the same Brigade as the 4th Battalion of the Regiment, its training at home and its movements before going overseas were practically identical with those of the 4th Battalion. It threw off a second battalion and a third (reserve) battalion, like other Territorial units, the parent battalion being designated the 1/1st Bucks Battalion, and the others the 2/1st Bucks and 3/1st Bucks.

The order to mobilize was received at Battalion Headquarters, Aylesbury, at 6.30 p.m., 4th August, 1914, and the whole Battalion was concentrated at Aylesbury before midnight 4th–5th, with the exception of the Wolverton Company, whose train, by some misunderstanding, was put into a siding, and did not arrive until the morning of the 5th. That day was spent in medical examination, issuing mobilization stores, and inspection of kits.

During the evening the Battalion entrained for Cosham (War Station), where it arrived about midnight, and went into billets arranged by the advance party, under Captain L. W. Crouch, sent down the previous night to draw Transport at Portsmouth.

The next three days were spent in digging trenches on the hills overlooking Portsmouth Harbour, and on August 9th the Battalion was relieved by a Special Reserve Battalion of the Highland Light Infantry. On relief the Battalion moved by rail to Swindon, went into billets, and carried out training until the 16th, when it entrained for Leighton Buzzard, and marched thence to billets at Dunstable.

On the 20th August the march to Chelmsford was commenced, and completed on the 25th, the nights

Digitized by Google

being spent at Hitchin, Ware, Harlow, and Great Dunmow (two nights). This march was very trying for the men, carrying full kits, together with 100 rounds S.A.A., in very hot weather.

With the exception of a cold and wet fortnight in November, spent under canvas at Great Totham, where the Battalion was employed in digging trenches for the East Coast defences, training continued at Chelmsford until March 1915, when the order came to proceed to France.

ROLL OF OFFICERS EMBARKING WITH THE 1/1ST BUCKS BATTALION, 30TH MARCH 1915.

Battalion Headquarters.

Lieut.-Colonel C. P. DOIG (Seaforth Highlanders), Commanding.
Major L. C. HAWKINS, Second in Command.
Captain A. J. N. BARTLETT (2nd Battalion), Adjutant.
Lieut. J. S. B. HILL, Transport Officer.
Lieut. H. V. COMBS, Machine-gun Officer.
Lieut. and Quartermaster E. NICHOL, Quartermaster.
Lieut. L. E. HUGHES (R.A.M.C.), Medical Officer.

A Company.

Captain L. L. C. REYNOLDS.
Captain N. S. REID.
Lieut. A. S. VERNON.
Lieut. B. GREEN.
2nd Lieut. F. G. B. REYNOLDS.
2nd Lieut. G. V. NEAVE.

B Company.

Captain L. W. CROUCH.
Captain G. R. CROUCH.
Lieut. O. V. VINEY.
Lieut. A. C. E. F. KENNISH.
2nd Lieut. E. N. C. WOOLLERTON.
2nd Lieut. R. GREGSON-ELLIS.

Digitized by Google

C Company.

Captain G. E. W. BOWYER.
Captain G. G. JACKSON.
Lieut. J. W. BACKHOUSE.
Lieut. E. L. WRIGHT.
2nd Lieut. P. L. WRIGHT.

D Company.

Captain E. V. D. BIRCHALL.
Captain P. A. HALL.
2nd Lieut. A. D. BURNETT-BROWN.
2nd Lieut. G. M. A. HOBART-HAMPDEN.
2nd Lieut. F. D. EARLE.
2nd Lieut. N. B. WILLIAMSON

Digitized by Google

1/1ST BUCKS BATTALION
ON
ACTIVE SERVICE IN FRANCE AND FLANDERS.
MARCH TO JULY 1915.

BATTALION OFFICERS' DIARY.
See Map 4.

March 30th, 1915.—The Battalion, under the command of Lieut.-Colonel C. P. Doig, marched through Chelmsford, the whole population turning out to say "Good-bye." Entrained at 2.30 p.m., and arrived at Boulogne at 11 p.m.; to Ostrohove Camp for the night.

March 31st.—Marched at 3.30 p.m. to Pont de Briques; entrained, and reached Cassel at 11 p.m., after a crowded journey.

April 1st.—Reached Terdeghem at 2 a.m., after a 4-mile march from Cassel. Scattered billets in farms.

April 2nd.—Marched to Steenvoorde, where the Brigade was inspected by General Sir H. Smith-Dorrien, commanding the 2nd Army.

April 4th.—Easter Sunday. Marched to billets on the Oulter-steene-Bailleul Road, south-east of Meteren. All ranks found first experience of marching (10½ miles) on cobbles a very severe test.

April 7th.—The Battalion marched, viâ Bailleul and Armentières, to billets at Le Bizet, for trench attachment to the 4th Division, distance 12½ miles.

April 8th–11th —On these days all companies were attached to units of the 4th Division (2nd Monmouth, 2nd Lancashire Fusiliers, 2nd Essex).

The first casualty in the Battalion occurred on the 8th.

April 12th.—The Battalion marched to billets at Steenwerck (8 miles), arriving at 11.30 a.m.

April 15th.—Marched to Ploegsteert, relieving the 1st Somerset Light Infantry. Two companies in "Plugstreet" Wood and two at Touquet Berthe.

April 19th.—The Battalion relieved the 5th Glosters in St. Ives trenches, in order from right to left, D, A, C Companies, with B in support; H.Q. at Somerset House.

April 23rd.—Relieved by 5th Glosters, and moved to rest billets at Romarin.

Digitized by Google

April 27th–30th.—In St. Ives trenches again.

May 1st.—Back in rest at Romarin.

May 5th.—Returned to St. Ives trenches.

May 6th.—In St. Ives trenches. The following were wounded by rifle-grenade: Captain L. L. C. Reynolds, Captain H. E. W. Bowyer, Lieut. B. Green, C.-S.-M. Cox, and 8 other ranks.

Captain Reid now commands A Company, and Captain Jackson C Company.

May 9th.—(St. Ives trenches.) There was a demonstration (artillery and infantry fire) to prevent the enemy sending reinforcements to Festubert.

May 10th–13th.—In rest at Romarin.

These periods of rest and trench duty alternated until the end of the month.

June 1st.—(St. Ives trenches.) The 9th Cameronians (9th Division) were attached to the Battalion for instruction.

Lieut. G. M. A. Hobart-Hampden was wounded.

The Division is now commanded by Major-General R. Fanshawe, C.B., D.S.O. (late 52nd Light Infantry), who succeeded Major-General Heath.

June 3rd.—Relieved by 5th Glosters, and returned to Romarin.

June 7th.—The Battalion relieved the 5th Glosters and 4th Oxfords. Front widened to include part of front edge of "Plugstreet" Wood. The line was much more thinly held.

June 9th.—(St. Ives trenches.) The enemy blew a mine at Hampshire trench, and shelled and machine-gunned the wood very heavily, but to no purpose.

June 11th.—The Battalion was relieved by a Warwick battalion of the 143rd Infantry Brigade, and moved to rest billets at Petit Pont.

Lieut. E. L. Wright was attached to 145th Brigade H.Q.

June 15th.—Relieved 5th Warwicks in Douve trenches, facing Messines.

June 19th.—Relieved by 144th Brigade, and moved to Romarin

June 24th.—Our Division was relieved by the 12th Division, and the Battalion marched 5½ miles to billets at Bailleul.

June 25th.—The Battalion marched to billets at Vieux Berquin (5½ miles), arriving about 11 p.m.

June 26th.—To bivouac at Busnettes (16 miles), arriving about 3.30 a.m.

June 27th.—To billets at Allouagne (3½ miles), arriving about 6 p.m.

Digitized by Google

July 12th.—After a fortnight's training the Battalion left Allouagne and marched to bivouac at Houchin (9 miles).

July 13th–14th.—Furnished working parties at Sailly Labourse on the G.H.Q. line.

July 15th.—The Battalion marched at night to Lières (18 miles) in continuous rain.

July 16th.—Arrived at billets in Lières about 6 a.m.

July 18th.—Marched to Berguettes and entrained for Doullens.

July 19th.—Marched from Doullens to bivouac in Marieux Woods (7½ miles).

July 20th.—To bivouac at Coigneux (6 miles).

July 22nd.—To billets in Bayencourt and Sailly-au-Bois.

July 24th.—The Battalion relieved the 5th Glosters in Hebuterne trenches.

July 28th.—From Hebuterne trenches to Hebuterne Keep, in support.

Captain L. L. C. Reynolds rejoined and resumed command of A Company. Captain P. A. Hall was transferred to the command of C Company.

July 31st.—The Battalion still at Hebuterne Keep.

During the above period (March 30th to July 31st) the Battalion had been in very quiet trenches, finding its feet, and getting accustomed to trench warfare. Although the sector was quiet, and there was little or no shelling, the casualties from grenades and snipers were quite numerous, the enemy being exceptionally fine shots. Besides a fortnight's regular training in July, a great deal of experience was acquired in trench engineering, as well as in the art of making uncomfortable conditions comfortable.

1/1ST BUCKS BATTALION CASUALTIES.
1915. MARCH 30TH TO JULY 31ST,

Killed.

9 N.C.O.'s and Men.

Wounded.

Captain L. L. C. REYNOLDS.
Captain G. E. W. BOWYER.
Lieut. B. GREEN.
2nd Lieut. N. B. WILLIAMSON.
2nd Lieut. G. M. A. HOBART-HAMPDEN;
And 57 N.C.O.'s and Men.

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS WHO SERVED OVERSEAS WITH THE 1/1ST BUCKS BATTALION WITHIN THE PERIOD MARCH TO AUGUST 1915.

I.

Embarked with the Battalion.

Temp. Lieut.-Colonel CLAUDE PRENDERGAST DOIG (Seaforth Highlanders), Commanding the Battalion

Temp. Major LIONEL COMBER HAWKINS, second in Command.

Captain LEWIS LESLIE CLAYTON REYNOLDS, A Company Commander; *wounded*, 6th May 1915; rejoined, 27th July 1915.

Captain LIONEL WILLIAM CROUCH, B Company Commander.

Captain EDWARD VIVIAN DEARMAN BIRCHALL, D Company Commander.

Captain GEORGE E. W. BOWYER, C Company Commander; *wounded*, 6th May 1915; attached to 61st Division on rejoining.

Temp. Captain GUY ROBERT CROUCH, B Company; invalided, 21st April 1915.

Temp. Captain PHILIP ASHLEY HALL, D Company.

Temp. Captain GERALD GODDARD JACKSON, C Company.

Temp. Captain NOEL SPENCER REID, A Company.

Lieut. HUGH VIVIAN COMBS, Machine-gun Officer; temp. Captain, 21st May 1915.

Lieut. ARTHUR STANLEY VERNON, A Company; temp. Captain, 6th June 1915.

Lieut. OSCAR VAUGHAN VINEY, Scout and Intelligence Officer; temp. Captain, 6th June 1915.

Temp. Lieut. BERNARD GREEN, A Company; *wounded*, 6th May 1915; rejoined, 27th July 1915.

Temp. Lieut. JOHN WILLIAM BACKHOUSE, C Company; temp. Captain, 10th June 1915.

Temp. Lieut. EGERTON LOWNDES WRIGHT, C Company; temp. Captain, 10th June 1915; attached to H.Q., 145th Infantry Brigade, June 1915.

Digitized by Google

Captain ALFRED JAMES NAPIER BARTLETT (2nd Battalion), Adjutant.

Captain ARTHUR B. LLOYD-BAKER, embarked as Staff Captain, 145th Infantry Brigade.

Temp. Lieut. JOHN BURROW HILL, Transport Officer.

Temp. Lieut. ALAN CHARLES EDWARD FORBES KENNISH, B Company.

2nd Lieut. FRANCIS GODFREY BAYLIE REYNOLDS, A Company; temp. Lieutenant, 21st April 1915.

2nd Lieut. ALEXANDER DENIS BURNETT-BROWN, D Company; temp. Lieutenant, 6th May 1915; *wounded*, 12th July 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. EDWIN NORMAN COLLET WOOLLERTON, B Company; temp. Lieutenant, 6th May 1915.

2nd Lieut. FRANCIS DOUGLAS EARLE, D Company; temp. Lieutenant, 1st July 1915.

2nd Lieut. GEORGE MILES AWDRY HOBART-HAMPDEN, D Company; temp. Lieutenant, 6th May 1915; *wounded*, 1st May 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. REX GREGSON-ELLIS, B Company; temp. Lieutenant, 10th June 1915.

2nd Lieut. PHILIP LOWNDES WRIGHT, C Company; temp. Lieutenant, 10th June 1915.

2nd Lieut. GERALD VANSITTART NEAVE, A Company.

Lieut. EDWARD NICHOL, Quartermaster.

2nd Lieut. NORMAN BRUCE WILLIAMSON, A Company; *wounded*, 4th April 1915.

II.

Joined the Battalion in France.

2nd Lieut. ROBERT CECIL NORWOOD, joined in France, 24th May 1915, D Company.

2nd Lieut. JOHN BASELEY HALES, joined, 27th June 1915, D Company.

2nd Lieut HAROLD JOHN PULLMAN, joined, 27th June 1915, C Company.

2nd Lieut. RALPH ERNEST MARKHAM YOUNG, joined, 27th July 1915, B Company.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 2/1ST BUCKS BATTALION, SEPTEMBER 1914 TO 31ST JULY 1915.

The raising and training of this Battalion was very similar to that of the 2/4th Oxford Battalion already described, since, as soon as its formation was completed, it joined the same Brigade, and thenceforward the two Battalions remained together.

The Bucks Reserve Battalion, afterwards named the 2/1st Bucks Battalion, received official recognition as a unit on the 26th September 1914, and was under the command of Lieut.-Colonel H. M. Williams, with Headquarters at Temple Square, Aylesbury, in which town the Battalion was billeted until 1st February 1915.

On that date the Battalion moved to Northampton, where it joined the newly formed South Midland Reserve Brigade (afterwards the 184th Infantry Brigade) of the 2nd South Midland Division (61st), which moved in April to Chelmsford.

The Battalion now took an active part in Home Defence, forming part of the Third Army, under General Sir Alfred Codrington, and at the end of April was detailed for work on the London Defences near Epping. After three weeks of this work they returned to Chelmsford to continue their training, and in June went into camp with the remainder of the Brigade for six weeks' training at Epping.

At the conclusion of this period in camp the Battalion marched back to billets at Chelmsford, and carried out Battalion and Brigade Training.

Digitized by Google

THE SERVICE BATTALIONS

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

FROM FORMATION TO 31 JULY 1915

Digitized by Google

LIEUT.-COLONEL C. H. COBB.
43rd Light Infantry.
Commanding 5th (Service) Battalion.

Digitized by Google

THE SERVICE BATTALIONS.

THE war had not been many days in progress before Lord Kitchener, the Secretary of State for War, realized that the British Army would require enormous reinforcements if Great Britain were to be of any assistance to her continental Allies. An appeal for recruits was immediately issued, and thousands responded within a few days, battalions coming into being as if by magic. Every class of man joined the ranks, and officers were provided largely from those who happened to be at home on leave from India, from the Reserve of Officers, and from the Officers' Training Corps.

Since little or no clothing, equipment, or arms were forthcoming, the men commenced work in civilian clothes, and so great was their enthusiasm that they gave little trouble in their training camps, and laboured strenuously from daylight to dark in learning the rudiments of their new profession.

Every regiment raised a new battalion, and, when that was up to strength, raised a second battalion, and then a third, a fourth, and so on.

This great force was known unofficially as "Kitchener's Army," and as it grew and was formed into brigades and divisions, it was divided up into armies, called officially the First New Army, the Second New Army, etc., and by the men themselves briefly "K 1," "K 2," etc.

As can be readily understood, the training of these raw levies was no easy matter, and it must be remembered for all time that it never could have been done—these new armies never could have been put in the field but for the untiring zeal and energy of the

Digitized by Google

Officers and N.C.O.'s of the old Regular Army, to whom the training was entrusted. In the course of time they trained other officers and N.C.O.'s to take their places, and on such solid foundations did they raise the new edifice that, in spite of the teachings of history, they proved to the world that improvised armies could meet on equal terms the most highly trained troops in Europe.

The Service Battalions formed for the Regiment during the first year of the war were the 5th, 6th, 7th, 8th, and 9th, all of which were hard at work in training camps in the autumn of 1914, in billets during the winter months, and again in camps in the spring of 1915. Sports of all kinds were used as a means of hardening the men for training, officers and men playing football and hockey regularly, and taking part in numerous cross-country runs, while several of the battalions organized boxing tournaments for the winter evenings.

The 5th Battalion was raised at the end of August, filled up to strength at once, and then drafted men to form the 6th Battalion. Late in September the 7th Battalion was formed, and early in October the 8th Battalion, while the 9th Battalion came into being shortly afterwards as a reserve for the other four Service Battalions, and was formed by drafts from the 3rd (Reserve) Battalion. The officers were appointed by the War Office direct, and the N.C.O.'s and men were in the first instance drafted from the Depôt.

The Record of each Battalion tells its own tale: how it was trained for war; how it went overseas; and how it acquitted itself in the field. But within the period dealt with in this volume only the 5th and 6th Battalions took the field, the others remaining at home for a few months' further training. The 5th formed

Digitized by Google

part of the First New Army ("K 1"), the 6th of the Second New Army ("K 2"), and the 7th and 8th of the Third New Army ("K 3"). The first three of these Battalions were commanded by 43rd or 52nd Officers, with 43rd or 52nd Adjutants, and were consequently reared on Regimental traditions; while the 8th Battalion, being a Pioneer Battalion, was commanded by an officer of an Indian Pioneer Regiment.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 5TH (SERVICE) BATTALION FOR 1914–1915.

Lieut.-Colonel C. H. Cobb, who commanded the Battalion for the first year of its existence, has contributed the following :—

THE CREATION OF THE 5TH (SERVICE) BATTALION.

On the 4th August 1914 (the day on which war was declared) I was at home on eight months' leave from the 1st Battalion in India, and due to sail, on the 25th October, in the Austrian-Lloyd's S.S. "Hungaria," from Trieste to Bomaby.

On the 6th August I received a telegram ordering me to embark for India, in the "Somali," on the 11th. On the 10th, however, just as I was starting for the station, there was put into my hand another telegram, cancelling my previous orders, and telling me to await further instructions. These came on the 22nd August, when I was ordered to proceed forthwith to Aldershot for duty with the new 5th (Service) Battalion of the Regiment.

I drove over there in my car, and went to the lines formerly occupied by the 52nd, hoping to find someone there. I found Kirkpatrick, who had been left behind to hand over barracks and to see the heavy baggage of the Battalion sent off. And next day (Sunday) I went to the Headquarters' Office to inquire about my future. I was told that none of my new unit had yet arrived, but that when they did they would be quartered at Deep Cut. So that afternoon I decided to go and have a look at Deep Cut, as I had never been there.

On arrival at the barracks I found Captain R. O. Logan and Lieut. B. C. T. Paget (1st Battalion) in command of about 150 men of the new Battalion, having come from Oxford three days before; and on the following day I took over this party. Then I began to get busy. I was ordered to draw camp equipment, blankets, etc., for 1,000 men, and to move to Old Dean Common (near Camberley), where I was to pitch a camp. I had no quartermaster, but with the aid of my car we managed things between us. I interviewed several people of the Ordnance, A.S.C., and Transport, and though I found

Digitized by Google

every one working at high pressure and nearly off their heads, still they readily rose to the occasion and did all they could for me.

During that evening two or three more officers arrived. Captain W. F. R. Webb (21st Punjabis) was one, and I think others were Captain Sanderson (1st Battalion) and Lieut. Murphy.

The next day I spent interviewing various Staff Officers, A.S.C., R.E., etc., while Captain Webb marched the party to Old Dean Common. The men were fully armed and equipped, but were absolutely raw and new, and, the weather being hot, they felt even this short march very much. Then came a real difficulty—pitching camp with men who had never seen a tent before. The officers and the few N.C.O.'s did most of the work, but gradually the recruits picked it up, and we got a camp going.

On the following day (Wednesday, the 26th) the men had their first experience of a wet camp, for it rained all day. However, we had to be busy, trying to get things into shape, and in the evening Lieut. Hanbury-Williams (2nd Battalion) arrived with 100 more men, who came in plain clothes, as the stock of uniforms at the Depôt had become exhausted.

Thus things went on from day to day. We started drills at once, and were at it all day from dawn to dusk, with lectures in the evening, putting in nine hours' work a day, including Sundays.

Gradually more officers and some old N.C.O.'s of the 43rd, 52nd, and other regiments joined the Battalion, so in the course of time companies got commanders, sergeants-major, and drill instructors, and were able to carry on fairly well. My great difficulty at this time was the feeding of the men—not for want of rations, for they were plentiful, but only the original men of Logan's party had mess-tins, knives, and forks, and the other men had nothing wherewith to eat or drink. We were obliged to have meals in relays, using the same mess-tins, and this was a serious handicap, in that it wasted time and delayed work a good deal. But it was only one of the many discomforts with which my new soldiers had to put up.

On Saturday, 29th August, we were visited by the new Commander of the Aldershot Training Centre, General Sir Archibald Hunter.

During the week more officers arrived: Watt, Carfrae, Foljambe, Plowden, and others (all of the 1st or 2nd Battalion), as well as new ones. I was also glad to get a Quartermaster in Lieut. Roberts, who had formerly been a Warrant Officer in the Regiment.

Our numbers increased rapidly, and to give an idea as to how the men came, I will quote from a few notes which I have kept. On

Digitized by Google

September 5th 500 men arrived, on the 7th another 500, and next day 64. On September 7th I wanted only 14 subalterns and 24 sergeants to complete to strength, and on September 8th the 5th Battalion was reported complete.

I was then ordered to form a 6th Battalion, and on September 14th the 6th Battalion was 833 strong, while the 5th Battalion had a strength of 1,203. Soon after this Colonel E. D. White, who recently commanded the 43rd, arrived, and we divided up the two Battalions, he taking command of the 6th.

The men's clothes were a great source of difficulty. Expecting to be put into uniform at the Depôt, they naturally came up in their oldest clothes, which in some cases were hardly decent; and as there was no uniform or equipment to give them, they had to go about in any sort of kit for some considerable time. There were also not enough blankets to go round, and the nights in camp were cold. However, as far as these were concerned, the two counties came to our rescue in a noble way, and blankets were sent to us in hundreds, and after a bit the men were made altogether more comfortable.

But at first they had a very rough time of it, and it was quite astonishing to see how well they stood it. Always cheerful, they seemed to laugh at their misfortunes, and for some of them it must have been a very hard trial. There were a great many men from most respectable homes and businesses. Some gentlemen, many indoor servants, grooms, gardeners, chauffeurs, gamekeepers, well-to-do tradesmen, hotel-keepers, clerks, etc., etc., to say nothing of the engineers, fitters, and hands from the great works in Birmingham and Coventry. All these men had left good, comfortable homes, with good wages, and had come voluntarily out of a sheer sense of duty. They were brought suddenly face to face with every sort of discomfort on Old Dean Common—discomforts which were absolutely unavoidable, because of the impossibility of supplying the wants of 500,000 recruits at a moment's notice. Yet they faced it all in a splendid way and with stout hearts, and never a murmur. This showed the sort of stuff of which the New Army was made, and that it was the right sort of stuff has been amply proved on every occasion on which the 5th Battalion has encountered the enemy in the field.

For the next few weeks drills went on all day and every day, the men doing a solid nine hours' work each day, and some of the officers a good deal more.

Digitized by Google

Towards the end of our time on Old Dean Common, Field-Marshal Earl Roberts rode over to see us one morning and inspected the Battalion on parade, which, of course, pleased the men immensely. It was the first time that many of them had seen the distinguished veteran Field-Marshal, and it was the last time, to the regrets of all of us, that we ever saw him.

On the 21st September we marched into Aldershot, and occupied Malplaquet Barracks With us in these barracks were the 5th Shropshire Light Infantry, also of our Brigade (42nd); while the other two Battalions of the Brigade, viz., the 9th King's Royal Rifles and the 9th Rifle Brigade, were in the next barracks.

Training was continued with vigour, and on the 26th September the 14th (Light) Division, to which we belonged, was inspected on the Queen's Parade by H.M. the King. The men now had arms, and most of them were in uniform, but I think that scarcely any of them had caps, and the different kinds of headgear that appeared on that parade must have amused His Majesty.

Company Training now succeeded Individual Training, and musketry and bayonet-fighting went on continuously, the Battalion gradually becoming equipped in every detail.

After two months at Aldershot we received orders to move again, and on the 27th November the Battalion entrained for Cranleigh (near Guildford) to be billeted for the winter. It commenced to rain the moment we arrived at Cranleigh, and there was hardly a fine day between then and the end of February, when we left the place. But rain was not allowed to check our training, and we were out in all weathers manœuvring over the country. As often as not we returned soaked to the skin, and at that time the men had no change of clothing, being possessed of only the one suit of khaki and the one pair of boots. In spite of all this they kept their health in an extraordinary way, as well as their cheerful spirits. I do not suppose that any body of men were ever happier in billets than were ours at Cranleigh, which was due in a great measure to the constant care and kindness of the inhabitants of the village. After their day's work the men returned to comfortable billets, where there were good fires to dry their things and hot tea awaiting them. In fact, all that could be done for the men's comfort was done by these kind people. The 5th Battalion—those that are left of them—will always keep a warm corner in their hearts for the people of Cranleigh, who, led by their excellent Rector, the Reverend P. Cunningham, did everything that was possible to make our stay

Digitized by Google

in the village a happy one; and they succeeded in every way, in spite of the atrocious weather. It made all the difference in the world to the existence of these new soldiers, and, more than that, it preserved their health, improved their characters, and did a good deal towards making them the fighting men they afterwards became. I feel very strongly about this, and I take the opportunity of recording in our REGIMENTAL CHRONICLE, which will be handed down to posterity, my most grateful thanks to the Cranleigh people for their splendid hospitality to the Battalion.

That the men appreciated what was done for them is proved by their excellent behaviour, and the following is a copy of a letter received by me from some of the leading gentry of the village on our departure :—

Cranleigh, Surrey.
9th February 1915.

To the Officer Commanding 5th (Service) Battalion of the Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry.

DEAR COLONEL COBB,

We hear that your Battalion is leaving our neighbourhood shortly, and we feel that we ought not to let you go without expressing to you our appreciation of the exemplary conduct of the men under your command during the ten or eleven weeks that they have been with us, and of the friendly relations which have been established between them and the people on whom they have been billeted.

We have had ample opportunity of observing the good military discipline, and we have admired the pluck, endurance, and cheerfulness with which they have carried out their very severe duties under the most trying weather conditions.

We feel that they will not fail to carry out in the same spirit the more serious work that will at no distant date devolve upon them in the defence of their King and Country.

We congratulate you and your officers on having such a splendid body of men under your command.

With our best wishes for your future success, we beg to subscribe ourselves,

Yours faithfully,

G. F. BONHAM
WM. WELCH
C. E. H. CHADWYCK HEALEY } Justices of the County of Surrey.
P. CUNNINGHAM, Rector of Cranleigh.

Digitized by Google

Whilst at Cranleigh we did Company Training up to the 14th January, and for the next month Battalion Training, which was carried out every day and most nights. I will not enter into details about all this training, but will confine myself to an extract from my Battalion Training diary describing the work of two memorable days, when we marched to Witley for the inspection of the whole of the 14th Division by Lord Kitchener and the French War Minister :—

January 21*st*, 1915.—In the morning packing blankets, etc., on the wagons, in preparation for marching to Witley.

12 *noon*.—Dinners.

1.15 *p.m.*—Battalion parade. Marched in heavy rain, viâ Parkhatch, Loxhill, Little Burgate, Hydestile, Milford Station.

On reaching Little Burgate snow began and continued very heavily. Great difficulty in getting the transport up the short steep hills between Loxhill and Hydestile.

Eventually I sent the Battalion ahead, and stayed behind to help bring the transport on, keeping B Company with me.

It was now snowing very hard, and each cart had to be manhandled up the hills. We reached Witley Huts at 5.15 p.m., and spent the night on the floors of the empty rooms.

January 22*nd*.—6.30 a.m., Reveille. It had been snowing all night, and snow was deep on the ground.

8.30 a.m. Paraded, and marched to Hankley Common, where we formed up with the rest of the Division to await the arrival of Lord Kitchener and the French War Minister. Bitterly cold and snowing all the time. Lord Kitchener and party arrived at 12.45 p.m.

At 1.10 p.m. we started back to march to Witley, where we arrived at 2.30 p.m. Snow very deep. Dinners. Paraded at 3.15 p.m., and left Witley on our return march to Cranleigh. The going was very heavy and snow fell continuously. On crossing Hascombe Hill from Hydestile onwards the snow was quite a foot deep, which made marching very trying.

At 7 p.m. we reached Cranleigh, the men well closed-up, stepping a good pace, and singing at the top of their voices.

One man fell out of the ranks on parade on Hankley Common from cold and exhaustion; all the rest came in with the Battalion.

At the end of February 1915 we went back to Aldershot and occupied Salamanca Barracks, and remained there, carrying out Brigade and Divisional Training, until the 20th May, when we

Digitized by Google

marched to the Government siding to entrain for embarkation for France. The R.A.M.C. Band played us out, at the special request of their Bandmaster, Mr. Bradley, for many years Bandmaster of the 52nd, and we all greatly appreciated the compliment.

So ended the training for war of the 5th Battalion; but I must not omit to mention that, during this period of training, the Battalion earned for itself a great name in the athletic world. Cross-country runs were very popular, and commenced with a Brigade run at Witley Camp, which we won easily. Later came Divisional and Training Centre runs, in all of which the 5th Battalion secured first place each time. The many cups and shields which we accumulated testify to the successes of the Battalion; but, unfortunately, I am unable to lay my hand on the records which I kept, and can only say that we won practically everything that there was to win, including the Aldershot Command Championship, when His Majesty the King started the race and Her Majesty the Queen gave away the cup.

The following are the officers who went out to France with the 5th Battalion :—

Lieut.-Colonel C. H. COBB, Commanding.
Major W. F. R. WEBB, Second in Command.
Captain B. C. T. PAGET, Adjutant.
Lieut. B. K. COOKE, Transport Officer.
Lieut. E. W. MAUDE, Machine-gun Officer.
Lieut. H. H. COBB, Signalling Officer.
Lieut. F. M. ROBERTS, Quartermaster.
Captain R. O. LOGAN, A Company Commander.
Captain C. F. K. CARFRAE, B Company Commander.
Captain A. E. SANDERSON, D Company Commander.
Captain A. W. T. WEBB, C Company Commander.

Lieuts.: W. R. BIRCH, C. M. BERLEIN, C. B. CRAWFORD, N. F. BARWELL, A. RIDGE-JONES.

2nd Lieuts.: J. S. FENWICK, L. W. SWEET-ESCOTT, H. F. CLARKE, L. S. LEE, J. M. H. JACKSON, W. T. BECKINGHAM, T. F. H. FREMANTLE, C. H. WALTER, P. A. CURRY, J. BLEECK, H. A. LE MESURIER, I. T. DAVIES, K. V. CARTER, H. J. CUPPER.

C. H. COBB.

Digitized by Google

FRANCE AND FLANDERS.

See Maps 4 and 5.

About the middle of May the long-expected orders came, and the 5th Battalion, with the remainder of the 42nd Infantry Brigade, 14th (Light) Division, proceeded to France, moving forthwith up to the vicinity of the Ypres front. Here the newcomers were gradually and progressively introduced to the realities of trench warfare. They began in the second-line trenches, and furnished strong working parties by night, thus receiving their baptism of fire, though not subjected to intense shelling. Next, each company was attached for instruction to a tried battalion in the front trenches for a 48 hours' tour of duty, when all ranks learned all that there was to learn of trench routine in the face of the enemy. This was followed by a few days' training behind the line and by digging communication trenches and dug-outs. After which, within a month of leaving Aldershot, the Battalion took its place in the trenches.

The situation at this time was somewhat as follows: The Second Battle of Ypres had come to an end; the Germans, feeling sure that the Allies in the West had made their great offensive effort for the year, had decided to leave a sufficient force to hold their line, and with the remainder to go East and settle accounts with the Russians. The Allies had as yet neither the men nor the munitions to pursue a vigorous offensive on the Western Front, but they had enough to make thrusts at the enemy whenever opportunity offered. The British portion of the line now extended from the north of Ypres to a few miles north of Arras; the VIth Army Corps, on the left, joined on to the French at Boesinghe, and the Vth Army Corps, on its right, held the Ypres salient almost as far as Hooge; then came in

Digitized by Google

succession to the south, the IInd, IIIrd, Indian, and Ist Army Corps.

The IInd Army Corps (Ferguson) was disposed thus: on the north the 5th Division (Morland); next, holding the trenches in the neighbourhood of Hooge, the 14th (Light) Division (Couper); and on its right the 46th (North Midland) Division (Stuart-Wortley).

For the next six weeks the 14th (Light) Division, which had the honour of being the first entire Division of the New Army to be engaged with the enemy, held the trenches on the Ypres Salient about Hooge, brigades and battalions relieving one another periodically, and having daily losses while up in the line. How these losses mounted up will be seen by the summary of casualties given elsewhere; but it may be said here that the 5th Battalion of the Regiment, although not called upon during the six weeks to take part in an engagement on a large scale, lost of its original numbers no fewer than one-third in officers and one-third in other ranks.

The trenches occupied by the Battalion were in Railway Wood, but it did not come in for any serious attack by the enemy. On the right of the 42nd Brigade, however, it fell to the lot of the 41st Brigade to bear the brunt of a violent onslaught delivered by the Germans on the 30th July, on which occasion, for the first time, the enemy made use of liquid fire, and by that illegal method of warfare drove the unfortunate Brigade out of its position.

The following extracts from the diary of Captain and Adjutant B. C. T. Paget give a continuous and detailed account of the doings of the Battalion:—

May 14th.—We have been expecting to move overseas, in accordance with orders received. This morning we paraded, with the remainder of the 42nd Brigade, in close mass, on the slopes of

Digitized by Google

Beacon Hill, when the Brigadier addressed us on the good and willing work which had been done by all ranks during the past eight months of the hardest training for war ever carried out by any troops; and he told us that we must remember that we were an Army of Vengeance for the abominable crimes and outrages committed by the Germans—a thought which should strengthen us in the day of battle.

May 15th.—Practised mobilization, loading baggage, etc.

May 17th.—Heard to-day that our move is postponed indefinitely. Our spirits sank to zero. Later we learned that the 41st Brigade have orders to entrain for Southampton at 6.45 a.m. to-morrow. Splendid news, for which we have waited for months.

May 18th.—41st Brigade went off to-day. We received our time-table for to-morrow. The first train with the transport leaves at 8.55 a.m. Busy practising entraining and detraining.

May 19th.—The first trainload marched off the Battalion parade-ground at 7.30 a.m. without a hitch. It consisted of Major Webb (Second in Command), Lieut Maude (Machine-gun), Lieut. Cooke (Transport Officer), and 106 N.C.O.'s and men, with 23 vehicles and 78 horses and mules. Entrained at 8.30 and left at 8.55 a.m. for Southampton and Havre.

Respirators for use against gas were issued to-day.

May 20th.—Strength of the Battalion, proceeding on active service: 31 officers (including Medical Officer, attached), 924 other ranks, 1 armourer-sergeant, 14 riding horses, 52 draught and pack, 12 heavy draught for train, 25 vehicles (including 6 train wagons), and 9 bicycles.

The second train, under command of Lieut.-Colonel Cobb, left at 4.20 p.m., and arrived at Folkestone at 7.38 p.m.; the third train arrived half an hour later; and embarkation on the "Invicta" took place at once Escorted by a destroyer we reached Boulogne at 10.30 p.m., after a smooth crossing. Disembarked, and, after an hour's uphill march, got into camp at Ostrokoye shortly after midnight.

May 21st.—Reveille at 7 a.m.; much business. Drew an interpreter, Monsieur Guillaume, ranking as Warrant Officer. Q.-M.-S. Manton taken away for the A.G.'s office at Havre. Miss Lena Ashwell gave a concert in the Y.M.C.A. tent at 3 p.m. Inspection, by companies, of all kit, equipment, arms, ammunition, etc. Iron ration issued to all ranks. Remained in camp all day.

Digitized by Google

May 22nd.—Paraded at 2.15 a.m., and marched off at 2.30 for Pont-de-Briques Station, arriving at 3.35 a.m. Entrained, and passing through Boulogne, Calais, and St. Omer (G.H.Q.), reached Bavinchove, near Cassel, at 10.30 a.m., and detrained. Our transport was already there, having had 23 hours in the train from Havre.

The men's blankets and waterproof sheets, which they had brought with them, were put on the wagons, and the Battalion marched off. A trying march to Rubrouck in very hot weather, the men having had no breakfast. Sixty-six fell out, but all except two were in half an hour after our arrival. Went into billets—men in barns with plenty of straw, officers in houses with beds and sheets!—the Officers' mess and orderly-room in a large house.

May 23rd.—(Rubrouck.) Church Parade at 10 a.m. The C.O. read the King's Message and a special message to the 14th (Light) Division. Lieut. Cobb (Signals) has connected Battalion H.Q. with all companies, etc., which saves a lot of running about; and the 14th Signal Company has connected us up with 42nd Brigade H.Q.

May 24th.—Brigade route march; the men went well, and no one fell out.

May 25th.—Companies paraded, under their Company Commanders, for practising rapid extension. A definite Headquarters Company was formed to-day.

May 26th.—(Rubrouck.) Special instructions issued about the use and value of respirators. The 41st Brigade moved to-day; we march to-morrow at 6 a.m. The payment for billeting is 1 franc per officer per night, and for the men 5 centimes.

May 27th.—(Rubrouck to Steenvoorde, 12½ miles.) Reveille at 3.30 a.m.; breakfast at 4 a.m.; baggage packed by 4.45, and the Battalion moved off at 5.15 a.m., being leading battalion of the Brigade, and having D Company as advance guard. Marched through Cassel, where there are a lot of French troops, and reached Steenvoorde at about 11 a.m. The men's feet suffered a good deal from marching on the pavé in nailed boots. Went into good and clean billets in farms on the east of the town. We have not been able to have a Battalion Officers' mess here, as the companies are much scattered; so the officers of each company have their own mess. We were told that the farm in which we have our headquarters was once occupied by 300 Uhlans.

Digitized by Google

May 28th.—The C.O. saw companies at training. We are in the Second Army area, under General Sir Herbert Plumer. The H.Q. Company is now in very good working order, under Major Webb. There are 8 officers and 150 other ranks, and all are billeted in one farm, which is a great convenience. Visited by Sullivan (52nd), who is A.P.M. of the IInd Army Corps.

May 29th.—(Steenvoorde.) Usual routine hours.

May 30th.—Marched out of billets at 5.25 a.m. as rear Battalion of the Brigade, and passed the cross-roads in Godewaersvelde at 6.50 a.m., where General Sir H. Plumer saw us. Then on to Zevecoten, and occupied huts in a wood about one mile south of that place, arriving at 11.15 a.m. after a march of 9 miles over very bad roads and pavé. The Battalion marched well, and only one man fell out (sprained ankle). The 14th (Light) Division now forms part of the IInd Army Corps, commanded by General Sir Charles Fergusson, which is in the Second Army (General Plumer), the other Divisions in the Corps being the 5th and the 46th (Territorials). Major Weatherby (52nd), who is G.S.O. 3 of the 5th Division, came to see us this evening. This place is within range of enemy artillery; it has also been gassed. After dinner we watched a heavy bombardment in the direction of Ypres; there was also heavy rifle and machine-gun fire to the east of us. The 9th R.B. here with us; other battalions farther east.

May 31st.—(Camp near Zevecoten.) General Sir C. Fergusson addressed the Battalion and the 9th R.B. this morning at 9.30 a.m., making a very fine and impressive speech. Major Webb has been appointed Camp Commandant at Dickebusche (about 3 miles from here), which is a blow, as he is our only major. A sergeant and 3 men detailed for permanent divisional guard. Fighting strength of the Battalion to-day is 28 officers and 900 other ranks.

At 7 p.m. the Battalion paraded as a working party on second line of trenches. We carried 5,000 sand-bags, and each man a pick or shovel. As the main road to Ypres was exposed to shell-fire, we moved by side roads north of Dickebusche. Ypres was burning fiercely in three or four places, and Kruisstraathoek, through which we passed, was a mass of ruins and smelling horribly of corpses. Thence we went north-west to a ruined château close to the canal. Our task was the completion of a breastwork from the road junction to the canal and the filling of 5,000 sand-bags for the R.E. The breastwork is almost finished, and is a good bit of work; it extends for miles on either side, and is revetted inside with fine mesh wire

Digitized by Google

netting, the top being sand-bagged for a height of about two feet. Rifle fire of varying intensity continued all night about 1,500 yards north-east of us, and some big guns were firing to the west. The ruined houses were a pathetic sight, and there were dead bodies of women and children in those at the road junction where we were working. The road has evidently been shelled frequently; motor ambulances without lights were passing along it—the driving must be difficult.

We had to be clear of the Dickebusche-Ypres road by daylight, so stopped work at 1 a.m. (1st June). It was a good experience for us all—the gun and rifle fire, the blazing town of Ypres, the shell-shattered houses, and the stench of corpses.

June 1st.—Marched off at 1.30 a.m. and reached camp at 4.15 a.m., having marched altogether 13 miles without a man falling out. The men had some tea and went to bed. Reveille at 8 a.m.; breakfast, 9 a.m.; Orderly Room, 10.30; Company Commanders inspected their companies and overhauled everything.

Paraded at 7 p.m. for the same work as last night.

June 2nd.—Knocked off work at 1 a.m.; back in camp at 3.30; reveille, 9 a.m.; breakfast, 10 a.m. At 7 p.m. to work again as before.

June 3rd.—Same as yesterday. Just as we reached our task a shrapnel shell burst a little beyond us, and was followed by several H.E. shells; but they went over us, and we came to the conclusion that they were intended for the batteries on the high ground beyond. Afterwards things were extraordinarily quiet; hardly any shell or rifle fire.

June 4th.—No trench digging to-night; the troops need a rest after five nights' work with a 12-mile march each night.

June 5th.—Ordered to be ready to move to-morrow. The Germans showed considerable activity last night and to-day in shelling the trenches on which we have been working. Lieut. Maude and the M.G. Section marched at 2 p.m. for the neighbourhood of Dranoutre, where they will be attached to the 5th Leicesters (T.F.) for instruction in the trenches.

June 6th.—(To Dranoutre) Reveille at 4.15 a.m. 2nd Lieut. Bleeck and a billeting party left at 6.30 a.m. Battalion, with first line transport, etc., marched at 7 a.m., Lieut. Birch remaining behind to hand over huts to the 8th R.B. We marched viâ La Clytte and Locre, and arrived at Dranoutre at 9.40 a.m.; took

Digitized by Google

over Dettington huts, but there were only 15 of them, holding 20 to 25 men apiece. So A and B Company, who are for the trenches to-night, bivouacked. Battalion Headquarters were established at a farm, and the C.O. and I then visited H.Q. 138th Brigade, when the Brigadier (Clifford) discussed the programme of training in trench warfare. Afterwards we went on to the H.Q. 4th Leicesters, near Kemmel, for further discussion on the same subject. A and B Companies go into the trenches to-night with the 4th and 5th Leicesters respectively for 48 hours' instruction. C and D Companies are digging a communication trench.

Casualties.—Wounded: 8477 Sergeant A. Cuss, bullet through wrist, in trenches with M.G. Section; 10891 Private G. Smith, bullet through shoulder, with D Company working party.

June 7th.—(Dranoutre.) C and D Companies returned from work at 3.30 a.m., having been under fairly heavy indirect fire. The C.O., Major Webb, and I went to H.Q. 4th Leicesters at 2 p.m., and were then conducted all round the trenches, taking about 5 hours to complete the tour. We obtained a very good view of the German position, and were much struck by the irregularity of the top of their trenches, as well as by their use of variously coloured sand-bags. Our fire trenches are partly breastwork and partly trench. In many places the smell of decaying humanity is unpleasantly strong; corpses are frequently unearthed during work on the trenches.

Each Brigade has four pigeons in the firing line in charge of a specialist. In case of emergency, when the telephone wire has been cut, a pigeon (with message) is released, and flies to Bailleul; but a bird only remains two days in the trenches, and is then released. We were told that a pigeon has been timed between Kemmel and Bailleul, and flew the distance in 3 minutes, i.e., 100 miles per hour.

Having made a minute inspection of everything, we returned to the 4th Leicesters' H.Q. for dinner, after which Colonel Cobb and Major Webb made a night tour of the trenches, while I went through returns, etc., with the Leicester Adjutant.

June 8th.—D Company paraded at 3 p.m. for work on the communication trench between Regent Street and Pall Mall. C Company paraded at H.Q. 4th Lincolns, near Locre, at 8.50 p.m., and relieved B Company in the trenches. At night I accompanied the Adjutant, 4th Leicesters (Captain Dyer-Bennett), on a tour of the trenches. We crawled out in front of our trenches to look at a mine crater, and made the serious error of not warning our men.

Digitized by Google

In consequence, we had a hot time from both sides, and Dyer-Bennett was hit in the leg, and got a slight bayonet wound in jumping over the parapet, and I got a scratch from a bullet in the shoulder.

Casualty.—11953 Private R. Stevenson (B Company), M.G. Section, wounded in the thigh last night in a listening post.

June 9th.—Lieut. Crawford, with 14 of the Reserve M.G. Section, relieved Lieut. Maude and 12 of the Service Section in the trenches held by the 4th Lincolns, where also is C Company. Lieut Ridge-Jones to Étaples, to command Base Details temporarily. Lectures and demonstrations. Very hot and sultry. A Company used baths of 138th Brigade.

June 10th.—(Dranoutre.) B Company at work on communication trenches from 1.30 to 7.30 p.m., and then relieved D Company in the right sector of the trenches. A relieved C in the left sector at 8 p.m. Major Webb and I went round the trenches in the afternoon.

Casualty.—10776 Bugler R. Donald, slightly wounded.

June 11th.—2nd Lieut. Carter returned from M.G. course. A and B Companies came out of trenches preparatory to move of Battalion. Company Sanitary Sections have been under training with the Divisional Sanitary Section.

Casualty.—10852 Private Blundy (D Company), slightly wounded.

June 12th.—(Dranoutre to La Clytte.) Battalion paraded at 7 a.m., and marched, viâ Dranoutre and Locre, to huts near La Clytte. Colonel Cobb and Major Webb reconnoitred east of Ypres. The Germans put a few shrapnel into Canada Huts, occupied by 5th K.S.L.I. and 8th K.R.R C., to the north of us.

June 13th.—Church Parade at 9.45 a.m. Major Webb and Captain Barwell out on reconnaissance to east of Ypres; and later Captain Carfrae and Lieut. Berlein went on same duty. Battalion system of Intelligence started under Major Webb.

June 14th.—(La Clytte to Vlamertinghe.) Reveille at 6.30 a.m. Marched at 9.15 a.m., with two minutes' interval between companies, by Zevecoten and Ouderdom to huts about a mile south-west of Vlamertinghe. Battalion made dug-outs and improved and drained company trenches in case of being shelled, as the Germans have been firing on the water-tanks here (supplied by pipes from Dickebusche).

Digitized by Google

Draft of 90 N.C.O.'s and men arrived, from 3rd Battalion, under 2nd Lieut. Sweet-Escott. There were a good many old 43rd and 52nd men.

June 15th.—(Vlamertinghe to trenches south of Ypres.) Battalion paraded at 9.45 p.m. and marched at 10 p.m., men with 200 rounds of ammunition First-line transport parked at a farm; train returned to Poperinghe. The Brigade marched in two columns by the main road to Ypres, and the Battalion went into trenches just south of the Lille Gate. On arrival the two sand-bags carried by each man were filled, and cover improved.

June 16th.—(Trenches south of Ypres.) At 3.30 a.m. our artillery opened very heavy fire with about 100 guns, and continued, with one short break, until 6.30 a.m. During this time we received news of what was going on from our Divisional H.Q. At 4.20 a.m. we received a message, "1st Army successfully attacked enemy's trenches 6 p.m. last night. 51st Division captured German redoubts (vicinity Festubert), Canadian and 6th Divisions capturing enemy's first line trenches." At 5.20 a.m. a further message said: "At 4.22 a.m. Scots Fusiliers penetrated first line trenches; at 4.30 a.m. Liverpool Scottish preparing to assault." At 5.45 a.m. we heard: "5th Fusiliers have captured first line of trenches in Railway Wood and to south of it. Royal Fusiliers and Wilts have also captured trenches. 26 prisoners taken."

At 9.50 a.m. we were held in readiness to move. At 11.30 a.m. A Company (in north end of trenches) moved out to occupy dug-outs on the railway bank, but found them still full of 9th K.R.R.C., so had to remain outside. At noon Brigade H.Q. stopped further movement.

A German observation balloon was hanging all day over Hooge, looking straight down the railway past Hell-fire Corner, and was reminiscent of a story in the "Green Curve," which came true for us later in the day.

At 3.30 p.m. we moved east along the south side of the railway across a ridge, which was being heavily shelled by the enemy, and into some trenches south of the Menin Road, near Hell-fire Corner. Here the Battalion was collected, less half A Company, which, under Major Webb's guidance, had gone on to trenches north of the road about 800 yards ahead. We had a few men hit in crossing the ridge.

Colonel Cobb and I now went across the Menin Road and up a communication trench, in some places three feet deep in water, and

Digitized by Google

found it blocked by wounded near the recently captured enemy first-line trench. We were told that all the assembly trenches, into which we had been ordered to move, were already packed with troops, so we returned to the Battalion, and I went off to the H.Q. 9th Infantry Brigade to make inquiries, and found them in a dug-out under the railway.

At 8 p.m. 42nd Brigade received orders to return to Vlamertinghe under cover of darkness, battalions to move independently. Apparently what had happened was that ten battalions had been brought up to occupy a three-battalion front, and there was no room for us. The men were much disappointed at not being able to push on and get at the enemy. The trenches in which we were were very heavily shelled by shrapnel and H.E. for about an hour and a half in the evening.

Lieut. C. M. BERLEIN was killed; 2nd Lieut Curry wounded; Captain Carfrae slightly wounded, but remained at duty; and 30 other ranks were wounded. The Battalion behaved splendidly in this, its first engagement, which the G.O.C. admitted was a severe test. Collected our kits, which had been left in the dug-outs, and marched back to camp by companies, C Company carrying back Lieut. Berlein's body.

Lieut.-Colonel C. H. Cobb supplements the above account as follows :—

The work of the Battalion on the 16th June was not only very important, but also exceedingly trying for men who had never been under really heavy fire before.

We were in trenches south of Ypres, just south of the Lille Gate. About 3 p.m. we were sent forward to occupy some reserve trenches at Witte Poort Farm.

At dawn on this day our troops had carried the German trenches at Cambridge Road, and two lines of trenches in front of this, but had not quite got to the top of the hill, but the front line was close up to Bellewaarde Farm—a strong position held by the Germans.

At the time I moved off the Germans were putting a very heavy barrage on to the top of the hill south of the railway bridge and cutting, and immediately in front of the trenches which we had just left. This artillery fire came from the neighbourhood of St. Julien, about two miles north-east of Ypres, from the hill behind Bellewaarde and Hooge, and also from Wytschaete, about two miles due south of Ypres. So we were getting it from front, right, and left.

Digitized by Google

I had personally reconnoitred this ground a few days before, and I knew that the bridge was a fatal spot, so I elected not to take the Battalion through the railway cutting [that I was right was proved by the fact that when I came back through the cutting at night I found it full of dead men of another battalion who had tried it].

The alternative to using the cutting was to go over the hill which was under the enemy's barrage. I pointed out to my men the shells bursting on the hill, and told them that their only chance was, when they got near this spot, to run over the hill as hard as they could, to keep together as well as they were able, and to rally on the far side, where the railway provided some sort of cover.

I explained matters to each company, and then Paget and I went ahead of A Company and led them up. We got along fairly well, hugging the ditch alongside the railway, till we reached the top of the hill, when we had to run over the open to some old trenches south of the Menin Road. Into these I got the men, who, although in places up to their arm-pits in mud and water, now had a certain amount of cover from fire. Coming over the hill we had had a very hot time indeed, with fire coming from all sides; but the men behaved splendidly, and the company officers led well. Our casualties were not so heavy as one would have expected them to be. Major Webb's Company (C) went on beyond these trenches, and took up a position a little ahead, just alongside the Menin Road, more or less under cover.

As soon as all the companies had come up, Paget and I had a look at the ground over which the Battalion would have to continue its advance. It appeared to be so swept with shell and machine-gun and rifle fire, that I decided that, before I moved any men, I would make a personal reconnaissance with a view to trying to discover a way up.

Accordingly I and Paget started off, and we had a most awful time. We crawled under the railway, near the left of our trench, through a very small culvert, and on the other side we presently came across an old communication trench, from 3 to 5 feet deep in water, and blocked with wounded. The Germans shelled us the whole way up, but we reached Witte Poort Farm, and there found that the trenches were fully occupied and no more men wanted for the present.

We then went back down our trench, and I sent Paget to report to the Brigadier where I was and what I had done. The order came back that I was not to move, and that I had done right.

Digitized by Google

We therefore stayed where we were in our somewhat precarious position, and got heavily shelled until 9.30 p.m., when I withdrew to our bivouac near Vlamertinghe, and saw the last company come in at 4.30 a.m. (17th). The steadiness and staunchness of the Battalion on this trying day was simply wonderful. A Gunner-Major of a Battery at Ypres, whom I came across when passing through his lines in the night, congratulated me on the behaviour of the men, saying that he had watched our movements with great admiration. The General also complimented me.

Another account of the events of this day was contained in a letter written home by Captain C. F. K. Carfrae, on June 17th, 1915 :—

We got into huts at 12.40 a.m. to-day, after a pretty lively time. The night before last we were digging in a certain locality quite close to the majority of our artillery positions at this point. At 12.50 they started bombarding the German trenches, and this continued for 1½ hours. The fire was terrific; some of the guns were only about 200 yards behind us, and we felt as if our heads were coming off. At 4.15 a.m. our first-line troops assaulted, and captured three lines of trenches. At 11 a.m. we were ordered to move up and support the Brigade in the newly captured trenches.

Our guns opened to cover the movement, and it was not until we had moved about a mile that the enemy's guns began to let us have it. We saw the wounded coming back from the batteries in front, and we knew that the enemy had spotted us. However, by watching where the shells burst, and by moving quickly where it was hottest, we managed to get right up to the first communication trench with only a few wounded. The only bad case was one of my subalterns, Curry, who was struck by a bullet in the left elbow, and, I fear, was in great pain. As soon as we reached one of the support trenches the enemy's fire became intense, but I must say our men behaved splendidly, both during our advance and in this trying situation. I never saw anyone without a cheerful face. An Artillery Officer and several "old stagers" described this bombardment to be the worst experienced since the battle of the Aisne.

At about 3 p.m., having been round to see that my men were all right, I was sitting in the trench next to the Colonel, when a shell burst right over us, and a bullet grazed my head, just over my right

Digitized by Google

ear. One of my subalterns, who was sitting on the other side of me, put on my first field dressing at once, and to-day I have had it properly done up, and am quite comfortable and as fit as ever.

At about 9.30 p.m. we were ordered to retire, as the first trenches had already been amply reinforced, and we were doing no good where we were. My company had been under continuous fire throughout the day, four hours of which had been a regular "plastering"; yet we had only ten men wounded. C Company lost an officer—a very keen young fellow—a shrapnel bullet killing him at once. Otherwise our casualties consisted of wounded. We came off far more lightly than any other battalion in the Brigade, and I really think that it was largely owing to the steadiness of the men and to good leading. The trying part was that we never could get a hit back. The General was very pleased with us.

CAPTAIN PAGET'S DIARY CONTINUED.

June 17th.—(Vlamertinghe.) Lieut. Berlein was buried at 2.30 p.m. near the huts. His platoon and the officers of the Battalion, also some officers of the 5th K.S.L.I., attended.

We have now a standing order to be ready to move off at two hours' notice. We hear that the Vth Corps captured the 1st and 2nd, and in some places the 3rd lines of German trenches north of Hooge yesterday, but had to give up the 2nd and 3rd lines, so now occupy the whole of the 1st line of German trenches on a front of 1,000 yards. One hundred and seventy German prisoners were taken.

June 18th.—(Vlamertinghe.) The C.O. and Company Commanders rode out to H.Q., 9th Infantry Brigade, and were shown round the trenches into which we are to go to-morrow.

June 19th.—(Vlamertinghe to trenches on Ypres salient.) A draft of 50 men from the 3rd Battalion arrived to-day.

The Battalion paraded at 7.15 p.m., to take over, from the 2nd R. Scots, trenches on the Ypres salient. Moved off with 100 yards between companies, and between rear company and transport. Just after we left Vlamertinghe a shell fell in it, killing and wounding some 20 of the 9th K.R.R.C.

We marched through Ypres—a city of the dead, not a house without a shell-hole, and the Cloth Hall in ruins. We have had to burn certain quarters nearest the enemy, in order to lessen the effect of their shells. We went out by the Ménin Gate, guides from the Royal Scots meeting us there; and passing the cemetery, which is very

Digitized by Google

much knocked about by shells, came to the École de Bienfaisance. From here companies went on, with a quarter of an hour interval between each, up the road alongside a communication trench to Railway Wood trenches.

Transport dumped supplies and 124 petrol cans of water at the École, and then returned to the Brigade centre at Vlamertinghe. Companies began to get into their trenches at 10 p.m.; at 11 p.m. the enemy started shelling the communication trenches with lachrymatory shells and shrapnel. This went on all the time the relief was taking place; the low-lying ground was thickly covered with gas fumes, which made breathing difficult and the eyes very painful. The relief was completed by 3 a.m. (20th).

Casualties.—Lieut. Crawford severely wounded; 2nd Lieut. Clarke slightly, by a shell which burst on the railway; other ranks, 6 killed, 7 wounded.

June 20th.—(Railway Wood trenches.) Spent the day in surveying our position, which is a pretty unhealthy one. The trenches require a great deal of work to make them habitable. They were captured from the Germans on the 16th, and had been almost destroyed by our shell fire. They are narrow and shallow, without traverses. Corpses lie all over the place. Some have been there for six weeks between the old opposing first line trenches. As we now occupy what was the German first line, things are rather topsy-turvy in places, with communication trenches running up towards the enemy. These, of course, are now blocked.

A, C, and D Companies are in the front line, B in reserve. The latter supplies 3 platoons for carrying up water, rations, etc., from the dump at the École. This took from 9 p.m. to 2 a.m. for two journeys. Water very short, not a full water-bottle per man for the 24 hours.

June 21st.—(Railway Wood trenches.) Fairly quiet day. Snipers busy; artillery on both sides registering. At night two officers patrols, under 2nd Lieuts. Davies and Le Mesurier, were sent out to examine enemy position, and try to find out if it was held in any strength, as our airmen had reported that large German forces had moved southwards. Left patrol, under Davies, reported enemy holding trench south of Y. 7, facing south; also in the easternmost of the two trenches running south from Y. 7, and the northern end (near railway) of the trench west of Y. 7. The fire coming from these trenches points to their being strongly held. Right patrol (Le

Digitized by Google

Mesurier) reported enemy holding trenches west of Bellewaarde Farm in some strength.

At dawn about 40 enemy advanced against our barrier, but were bombed back, leaving behind them two dead, if not more.

Casualties to-day.—Other ranks: wounded, 13; suffering from gas, 3.

June 22nd.—The following hours are observed in the trenches held by the 42nd Infantry Brigade at present:—

Stand to Arms, 1.45 to 2.45 a.m.
Rest and breakfast, 2.45 to 8 a.m.
Work in trenches, 8 to 11 a.m.
Rest and dinner, 11 a.m. to 3 p.m.
Work in trenches, 3 p.m. to 5 p.m.
Tea, 5 to 6 p.m.
Stand to Arms, 6 to 8 p.m.

To-night we were ordered to attack the enemy redoubt opposite C. 5. From 7 to 7.40 p.m., and from 7.45 to 8 p.m., some five batteries carried out a bombardment.

Two platoons of C Company in two columns were ordered to carry out the assault, led by 2nd Lieut. Davies from C. 5 trench, and 2nd Lieut. Jackson from the Barricade (C. 4); both columns headed by a party of bomb-throwers (our own men with some from the 5th K.S.L.I. and 9th R.B.).

The bombardment was tremendous while it lasted, our guns pounding the Germans, and their guns pounding us. At 8 p.m. the bombardment ceased; but, as we had had to evacuate our front trenches during our bombardment, there was some delay in getting the assaulting columns up into position again, ready to advance. This, unfortunately, enabled the enemy to reoccupy the redoubt, and when our columns moved forward they came under very heavy fire. The two columns acted in accordance with orders, but when (8.15 p.m.) No. 1 column had gone a short distance beyond the barrier, it was met by machine-gun and rifle-fire from a work in low-lying ground to the right of the redoubt. No. 2 column kept too much to the right, and Captain A. Webb (C Company), who was controlling operations from a central position, ran out to try correct the direction, but was too late.

2nd Lieut. Davies and a few men of No. 2 column reached the redoubt, which proved to be strongly held. In the meanwhile No. 1 column had been checked by the heavy fire. Then someone

Digitized by Google

was heard to shout out "Retire"; and although the men had been warned of this German trick, some of them forgot the warning, and began to retire. By now 2nd Lieut. Davies had, it is thought, been killed, and 2nd Lieut, Jackson severely wounded; but Lieut. Barleven, of the 62nd Company R.E., realizing what was happening, shouted to the men not to retire, and rallied those at hand, but in the end was obliged to retire.

The columns returned to the fire-trench, which they lined and held. Two platoons of B Company came up to reinforce, as soon as the C.O. heard that the attack was held up. Great assistance was rendered by the 62nd Company R.E., who, when the column was checked, threw down their tools, and charged in with our men.

June 23rd.—The day passed fairly quietly.

June 24th.—The Germans in the redoubt put up a notice-board, on which was written: "This way to the Redoubt." They also put out red and white artillery screens in front of their trenches—probably thinking that our guns would cease firing. At night we were relieved by the 6th Somersets.

June 25th.—The relief was late, and we did not get away from the trenches until early morning, which, fortunately, was misty. Companies marched back through Ypres, which in the mist of early dawn looked ghostly and desolate. One mile west of the town the Battalion assembled, and then marched on to a point a little west of Vlamertinghe, where a hot meal was served out, after which we proceeded, through Poperinghe, to very comfortable billets in farms and fields about 3½ miles north-west of the latter place.

Casualties during this tour in the trenches.—Killed, 20 N.C.O.'s and men; wounded, Lieut. Crawford, 2nd Lieut. Jackson, 2nd Lieut. Clarke, and 96 N.C.O.'s and men; missing (believed killed), 2nd Lieut. I. T. DAVIES, and 6 N.C.O.'s and men.

June 26th.—(Billets near Poperinghe.) Day spent in cleaning up, and checking casualties.

June 27th.—Church Parade. Discussion at Brigade H.Q. concerning the carrying up of supplies to the trenches. The method adopted has not worked satisfactorily; more men are required; and it is suggested that whole battalions shall be employed, which means that two battalions would have to be kept in reserve, and the other two up in the trenches.

June 28th.—The C.O. addressed each company in turn. 2nd Lieut. Cupper (now Brigade Bombing Officer) started a bombing school.

Digitized by Google

June 29th.—Companies at drill, skirmishing, etc. Cold and wet. 2nd Lieut. Bleeck appointed sniping and bombing officer to the Battalion.

June 30th.—Training in bomb-throwing, attacking trenches, etc.

July 1st.—(Billets near Poperinghe.) Route marching by companies.

July 2nd.—A draft of 96 N.C.O.'s and men arrived. We are now at full strength, except in officers, of whom we are 7 short.

Heard to-day that Private Astill died at Bailleul, on the 29th of last month, of wounds received on the 24th He was a stretcher-bearer, and always showed great bravery. It was while rescuing a wounded man in Cambridge Road that he was hit.

We furnished to-night a working-party of 400 men (100 from each company, with an officer), under the command of Major Webb. The party went in motor-buses to Ypres, and thence, viâ the Lille Gate, to dig trenches on the salient.

July 3rd.—The working-party returned at 4.30 a.m.; no casualties

July 4th —Church Parade at 10 a.m. Cricket Match against the 9th R.B. in the afternoon; won by us.

July 5th —Sergeant-Major drilling the new draft. A good many of the men have come out again after being wounded, and do not appear to be fit for active service yet. Although the draft contains some very good old soldiers, the quality generally is not so good as our original material.

July 6th.—(Billets near Poperinghe.) Brigade-bombers training with live bombs. Working-party of 4 officers and 274 other ranks, under Captain Logan, left for Ypres at 6 p.m.

July 7th.—Played the 5th K.S.L.I. at cricket, and beat them. The country all around is covered with crops, and looks very prosperous. Colonel Cobb went up to the trenches at Railway Wood, on the Ypres salient, to arrange with the O.C., 8th R.B., about our relieving his battalion to-morrow night.

July 8th.—Preparing to go up to the trenches. Parties moved up separately, and assembled at the advanced starting point, at the road junction west of Ypres. At 8.30 p.m. the companies moved off at intervals of a quarter of an hour, and reached the trenches without casualties.

July 9th.—(Railway Wood trenches.) The relief was completed by 1.5 a.m. The communication trenches have been much improved since we were last here, and Cambridge Road has been traversed as a protection from shells from Wytschaete.

Digitized by Google

Heavy mist at dawn, which was utilized for various small reconnaissances, but it made it necessary for all front-line trenches to stand to arms until 4 a.m. Severe shelling by our guns and by the enemy's going on all the afternoon and evening; aircraft also very active—apparently neither side out for a fight. Carrying-parties (strength about 400) of the 5th K.S.L.I. brought up all our rations, stores, etc., to-night. Very quiet night, for which we were thankful, as we had a lot of work to do wiring and at French trench. Since we were last here the Huns have learned how to burst 77 mm. shells short of and in Cambridge Road.

Casualties.—1 man killed, and 3 wounded.

July 10th.—At 7.10 a.m. enemy bombarded our railway barricade, and knocked it down. About 100 H.E. shells were fired at it. A good deal of artillery fire on both sides all day, also trench mortars firing on Railway Wood. Logan's dug-out was blown up; he had left it three minutes before.

Casualties.—7 men wounded.

July 11th.—We frequently send off a pair of pigeons to Poperinghe for practice. They are brought up overnight by the carrying-parties. From Poperinghe the messages are telephoned to Divisional H.Q., and thence to the addresses given. The artillery supporting our section of the line at present consists of 2 batteries 18-pr., 1 battery 4.5 howitzers, 1 siege-gun (6-in.); and in our front line we have 2 trench howitzers, which are very useful for replying to enemy whiz-bangs on our trenches.

We are rapidly making the French trench tenable, thus linking up D. 10 and D. 12.

Casualties.—17 men wounded, and 1 officer slightly (remained at duty).

July 12th.—(In trenches.) About 3 a.m. a hand-grenade (supposed to have been one of our own) exploded in one of C Company's bombing posts, killed Corporal Ludford, and severely wounded three others, two of whom subsequently died.

Casualties.—1 killed, 13 wounded.

July 13th.—Our artillery bombarded the enemy barricade on the railway, commencing at 9.45 a.m. At about 10.30 a.m. our observing aeroplane was seen to dive down head first in a sheet of flame, and to fall about 600 yards in rear of enemy's lines—evidently the petrol tank had been hit by shrapnel bullets. Our artillery thereupon ceased bombarding, but had already done a good deal of damage to the barricade.

Digitized by Google

We were relieved in the trenches to-night by the 5th K.S.L.I., the first party arriving at Cambridge Road at 10.45 p.m. The relief was stopped for a short time, on account of an enemy attack to the north of us, but was completed by 1.15 a.m. (14th) without any trouble.

Casualties to-day.—4 men killed, 7 men wounded.

July 14th.—(Ypres.) The Battalion went into dug-outs in the ramparts of Ypres, between Menin Gate and Sally Port, D Company on the north of the Menin Gate. Battalion H.Q. in a large bake-house, cut in the ramparts, next to Brigade H.Q. in a similar place; some of the Company officers' dug-outs very comfortable and not badly furnished. D Company found a large and well-stocked cellar in their portion of the ramparts.

The Battalion found the carrying-party for the 5th K.S.L.I. to-night—9 officers and 443 other ranks.

Casualties.—3 killed and 7 wounded.

July 15th.—Day spent in cleaning up. Night very wet. Carrying-parties (8 officers and 411) took 3½ hours, instead of about one hour, to reach the trenches.

At 9 p.m. every night our transport brings up rations, mails, etc., to Battalion H.Q. One or two of the wagons remain, until the return of the carrying-parties, who bring back, from the trenches, salved rifles, equipment, etc., of the casualties.

Casualties.—7 men of D Company wounded in Cambridge Road by a 77 mm. to-night.

July 16th.—D Company's cellar was cleared, by priests and gendarmes, of its contents, the wine being removed in motor lorries. The owner is in England.

During the day we pulled down some walls of ruined houses which were swaying dangerously in the wind; cleared the roads of debris, and collected the timber for the Brigade workshop.

Very wet night. Carrying-party, 8 officers and 372.

July 17th.—Officers of 10th D.L.I. visited dug-outs, preparatory to taking over to-morrow. Our artillery fairly busy all day, but the enemy makes no reply. In addition to the usual carrying-party, we furnished a working-party of 2 officers and 100 men, but owing to failure of guides to meet the party, they did not arrive at their task until 1.30 a.m. (18th), and it was then too late to start work.

July 18th.—Battalion relieved by 10th D.L.I. at 10 p.m., and marched back, by companies independently, via Vlamertinghe.

Digitized by Google

first house on the Menin road; 9th K.R.R.C. thence S. 3. a. The 43rd Brigade hold northern edge of Zouave Wood, and Sanctuary Wood up to G. 1. The enemy used liquid fire yesterday against the 41st Brigade, and drove them back. The liquid is brought up to their trenches in cylinders, and with compression of about 5 atmospheres is sprayed forward, lighting spontaneously. It requires no fire to start it, and the maximum distance to which it can be thrown is about 40 yards.

Heavy shelling between 2 and 4 a.m., and again between 2 and 4 p.m. on Sunken Road and Cambridge Road, as well as in the vicinity of K. 2. Very little damage; casualties of day and night estimated at 15. Enemy opened rifle and grenade-fire at 2.15 a.m., and maintained it for about 20 minutes. Our mortars did good work on the redoubt in the afternoon, blowing holes in the parapet.

Our heavy guns shot very accurately on the redoubt, and knocked it about a good deal. The enemy's mortars were again a nuisance day and night; his ammunition seems unlimited; ours is at present very short.

Captain Carfrae and Lieut. Birch, of B Company, did most useful work observing what was going on at Hooge from K. 16–17, where it is still possible to look over the parapet without a periscope.

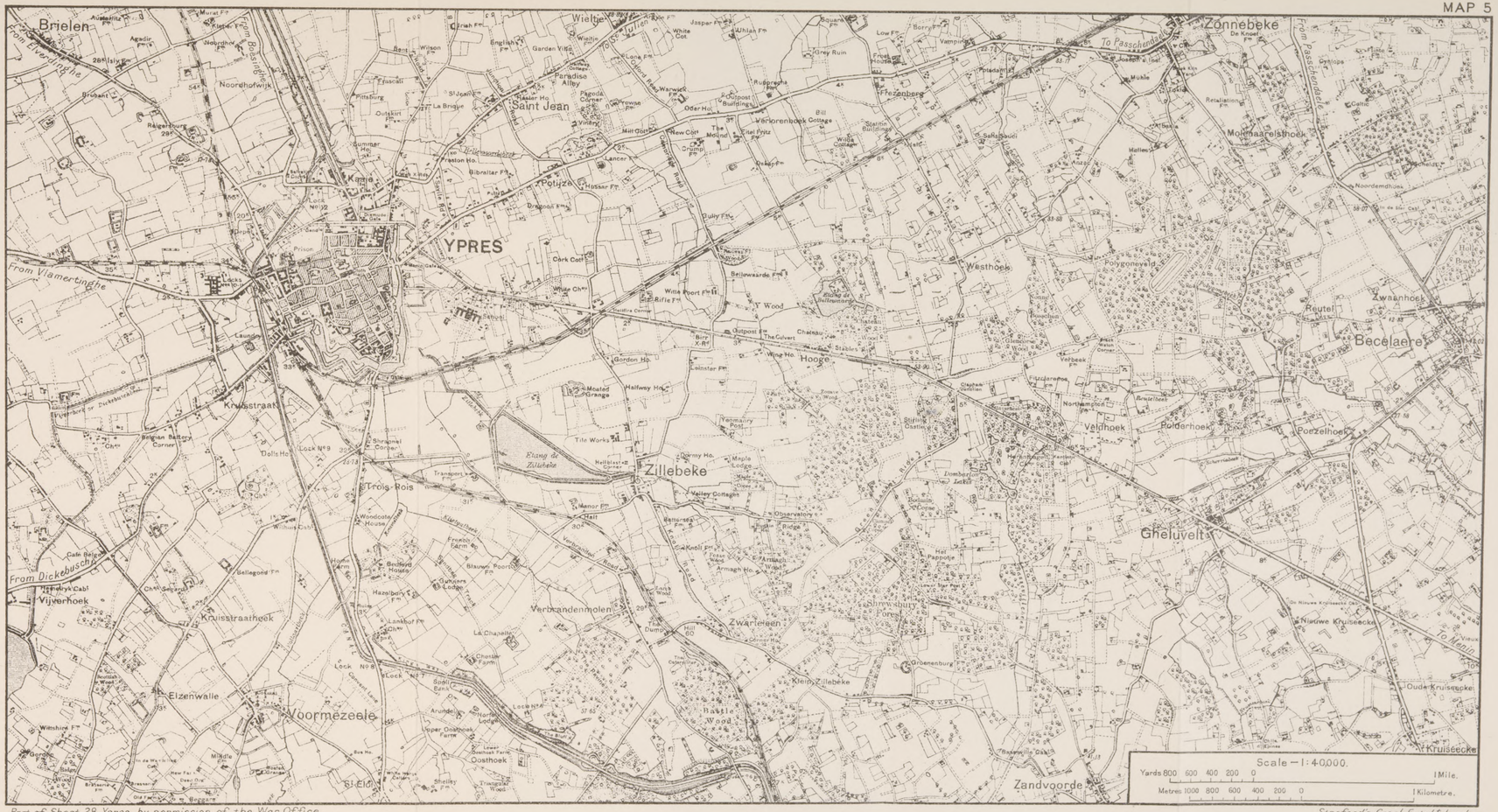
At 2 p.m. our artillery opened fire preparatory to counter-attack on Hooge, and the enemy shelled heavily in return, using also trench-mortars. Our snipers had a good day, bagging 1 officer and 8 others for certain, and probably more.

Casualties.—1 man killed, 15 wounded, and 2 temporarily insane.

SUMMARY OF CASUALTIES IN THE 5TH BATTALION. 6TH JUNE TO 31ST JULY 1915.

——	Officers.	N.C.O.'s and Men.
Killed – – – – –	1	38
Missing, believed killed – – –	1	1
Died of wounds – – – –	—	8
Wounded – – – – –	8	266
Accidentally wounded – – –	—	2
Total – –	10	315

Digitized by Google



Part of Sheet 28, Ypres, by permission of the War Office.

Stanford's Geog! Estab!, London

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

NAMES OF OFFICERS.

Killed.

Lieut. C. M. BERLEIN, 16th June.
2nd Lieut. I. T. DAVIES, 22nd June.

Wounded.

Captain C. F. K. CARFRAE, 16th June.
2nd Lieut. P. A. CURRY, 16th June.
2nd Lieut. H. F. CLARKE, 20th June.
Lieut. C. B. CRAWFORD, 20th June.
2nd Lieut. J. M. H. JACKSON,[1] 22nd June.
2nd Lieut. L. W. SWEET-ESCOTT, 10th July.
Captain R. O. LOGAN, 27th July.
Lieut. C. R. JURY, 30th July.

REINFORCEMENTS TO 31ST JULY 1915.

4 Officers and 266 other ranks (4 Reinforcements).

[1] Died of his wounds 18th August 1915.

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS WHO SERVED WITH THE 5TH (SERVICE) BATTALION BETWEEN THE DATE OF ITS FORMATION AND THE 31ST JULY 1915.

Lieut.-Colonel C. H. COBB, Major, 1st Battalion; appointed temp. Lieut.-Colonel, to command the 5th Battalion, 18th August 1914; trained the Battalion, took it to France, and was in command of it on the 31st July.

Major R. E. WATT, Reserve of Officers, late 1st Battalion; appointed to the 5th Battalion, 31st August 1914; transferred to the 9th Battalion, 28th March 1915.

Captain Hon. G. W. F. S. FOLJAMBE, Reserve of Officers, late 2nd Battalion; appointed temp. Major, 5th Battalion, 29th August 1914; transferred, as temp. major, to the 6th (Service) Battalion, 22nd October 1914.

Captain A. S. CRUM, Hon. Captain in the Army, late Lieutenant, 2nd Battalion; appointed temp. Captain, 5th Battalion, 17th September 1914; temp. Major, 1st October 1914; transferred to the 9th Battalion, 7th May 1915.

Captain H. V. KNOX, late Captain, R. Garrison Regiment; appointed Captain (temp.), 5th Battalion, 2nd September 1914; transferred to the Depôt, Cowley Barracks, 8th January 1915.

Captain W. F. R. WEBB, Captain, 22nd Punjabis; appointed Captain, 5th Battalion, 24th August 1914; promoted Major (temp.), 13th March, 1915; accompanied the Battalion to France as Second in Command.

Captain R. O. LOGAN, Captain, 1st Battalion; appointed to the 5th Battalion, 21st August 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France in command of A Company, and was *wounded* on the 27th July 1915; to England.

Captain A. E. SANDERSON, Captain, 1st Battalion; appointed to the 5th Battalion, 25th August 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France in command of D Company.

Digitized by Google

Captain C. F. K. CARFRAE, Captain, 2nd Battalion; appointed to the 5th Battalion, 29th August 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France in command of B Company; *wounded*, 16th June 1915, but remained at duty.

Lieut. C. R. C. BOYLE, Lieutenant, 2nd Battalion; appointed Adjutant, 12th September 1914; transferred to 6th Battalion; Captain (temp.) in Army, 15th November 1914.

Lieut. B. C. T. PAGET, Lieutenant, 1st Battalion; posted to 5th Battalion, 22nd August 1914; appointed Adjutant, 14th September 1914; temp. Captain in the Army, 1st October 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France as Adjutant.

Lieut. G. F. PLOWDEN, Lieutenant, 1st Battalion; posted to 5th Battalion, 22nd August 1914; Captain (temp.), 1st October 1914.

Lieut. G. PHILLIMORE (3rd Battalion, temp. Lieutenant from Private, 10th September 1914); appointed Lieutenant (temp.), 5th Battalion, 16th September 1914.

Lieut. J S. FENWICK, appointed (temp.), 22nd August 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France.

Lieut. C. F. R. HANBURY-WILLIAMS, Lieutenant, 2nd Battalion; posted to 5th Battalion, 26th August 1914; transferred to the 9th Battalion, May 1915.

2nd Lieut. E. J. ANDERSON, appointed (temp.), 22nd August 1914; Lieutenant, 6th Battalion, 22nd October 1914.

2nd Lieut. C. M. BERLEIN, appointed (temp.), 22nd August 1914; temp. Lieutenant, 1st October 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France; *killed*, 16th June 1915.

2nd Lieut. B. K. COOKE, appointed (temp.), 22nd August 1914; Lieutenant (temp.), 1st October 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France, as Transport Officer.

2nd Lieut. R. O. GOOLDEN, appointed (temp.), 22nd August 1914.

2nd Lieut. L. W. SWEET-ESCOTT, appointed (temp.), 22nd August 1914; Lieutenant (temp.), 13th May 1915; accompanied the Battalion to France; *wounded*, 10th July 1915; returned to duty, 17th July 1915.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. H. F. CLARKE, appointed (temp.), 22nd August 1914; Lieutenant (temp.), 20th May 1915; accompanied the Battalion to France; *wounded*, 20th June 1915; returned to duty, 3rd July 1915.

2nd Lieut. W. R. BIRCH, appointed (temp.), 22nd August 1914; Lieutenant (temp.), 1st October 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France.

2nd Lieut. L. S. LEE, appointed (temp.), 26th August 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France.

2nd Lieut. J. M H. JACKSON, appointed (temp.), 26th August 1914; Lieutenant (temp.), 20th May 1915; accompanied the Battalion to France; *wounded*, 22nd June 1915; and died of his wounds in the following August.

2nd Lieut. E. W. MAUDE, appointed (temp.), 1st September 1914; Lieutenant (temp.), 1st October 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France as Machine-gun Officer

[2nd Lieut. D. H. F. FULLER, appointed (temp.), 1st September 1914; Lieutenant, 11th Rifle Brigade, 3rd February 1915.]

2nd Lieut. C. B. CRAWFORD, appointed (temp.), 2nd September 1914; Lieutenant (temp.), 1st October 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France; commanded Reserve Machine-gun Section; *wounded*, 20th June 1915; to England.

2nd Lieut. W. T. BECKINGHAM, appointed (temp.), 22nd September 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France.

2nd Lieut. T. F. H. FREMANTLE, appointed (temp.), 30th September 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France.

Lieut. A. W. T. WEBB, Lieutenant, Indian Army; appointed Lieutenant, 5th Battalion, 12th October 1914; Captain (temp.), October 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France in command of C Company.

Lieut. N. F. BARWELL, appointed (temp.), 4th October 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France; Captain (temp.), 26th April 1915.

Lieut. A. RIDGE-JONES, appointed (temp.), 7th October 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. H. H. COBB, appointed (temp.), 7th October 1914; Captain (temp.), 26th April 1915; accompanied the Battalion to France as Signalling Officer.

2nd Lieut. C. K. WALTER, appointed (temp.), 10th October 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France.

[2nd Lieut. A. M. GRAY, appointed (temp.), 18th November 1914.]

2nd Lieut. P. A. CURRY, appointed (temp.), 2nd December 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France; *wounded*, 16th June 1915; to England.[1]

2nd Lieut. J. BLEECK, appointed (temp.), 4th December 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France; Battalion Sniping and Bombing Officer, June 1915.

2nd Lieut. H. A. LE MESURIER, appointed (temp.), 30th December 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France.

2nd Lieut. I. T. DAVIES, appointed (temp.), 26th January 1915; accompanied the Battalion to France; *killed*, 22nd June 1915.

2nd Lieut. K. V. CARTER, appointed, 10th March 1915; accompanied the Battalion to France.

2nd Lieut J. H. CUPPER, appointed, 20th March 1915; accompanied the Battalion to France; 42nd Brigade Bombing Officer.

Lieut. H. J. T. DAY (9th Battalion; appointed temp. Lieutenant, from 10th Welsh Regiment, 3rd November 1914); joined the 5th Battalion in France, July 1915; invalided same month; transferred to 9th Battalion.

Lieut. C. R. JURY (9th Battalion; temp. Lieutenant, 15th December 1914); joined the 5th Battalion in France; *wounded*, 30th July 1915; to England; eventually invalided from the Army. At the outbreak of war he was at Magdalen College, Oxford, having come there from St. Peter's College, Adelaide, Australia.

Lieut. S. H. BIRD, appointed, 28th December 1914; joined the Battalion in France, July 1915.

[1] 2nd Lieut. Curry did duty with 9th Battalion from January 1916; transferred to Embarkation Staff, 30th May 1916; Captain A.E.S.O. and transferred to General List, June 1916; to Ministry of Shipping for duty in New York, January 1917; Major, August 1918; awarded O.B.E.—ED.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. L. S. M. NEWMAN, appointed 9th Battalion, 19th January 1915; joined the 5th Battalion in France, July 1915.

Lieut. A. C. WALKER, appointed (temp.), 23rd April 1915; joined the Battalion in France; invalided, July 1915.

2nd Lieut. G. S. GARNIER, appointed (temp.), 5th January 1915.

2nd Lieut. V. D. FRENCH, appointed (temp.), 19th March 1915.

Hon. Lieut. and Quartermaster F. M. ROBERTS, promoted from Quartermaster-Sergeant, Depôt and 3rd Battalion (formerly 1st Battalion), and appointed to the 5th Battalion, 25th August 1914; accompanied the Battalion to France.

Lieut. COATES (R.A.M.C.), attached to the Battalion as Medical Officer, and accompanied it to France.

Lieut. H. A. GILLESPIE (R.A.M.C.), attached to the Battalion in France, in relief of Lieut. Coates, June 1915.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 6TH (SERVICE) BATTALION FOR 1914–1915.

As mentioned in the account of the formation of the 5th Battalion, the 6th Battalion came into existence in September 1914, when Lieut.-Colonel E. D. White, who previously commanded the 1st Battalion, was brought in from half-pay to command the newly raised unit. Major E. M. Childers (Reserve of Officers, late 2nd Battalion) was appointed Second in Command; Major J. D. W. Davy (Reserve of Officers, late 2nd Battalion) Major in the Battalion; and Lieut. C. R. C. Boyle (2nd Battalion) Adjutant (temp. Captain). A little later other Regular Officers joined the Battalion: Captain the Hon. G. W. F. S. Foljambe (Reserve of Officers, late 2nd Battalion) as Captain; Lieut. J. E. Osborne (late Lieutenant, 2nd Battalion) as Captain; while Sergeant-Major T. Pears (late Sergeant-Major, 1st Battalion) joined as R.S.M., was promoted Captain a few months later; and the Quartermaster was Lieut. W. Brazier (late S.M. 2nd Battalion).

The training of the 6th Battalion was so similar to that of the 5th that it is unnecessary to describe it in detail, although it continued for a somewhat longer period. Belonging to the Second New Army, the 6th Battalion formed part of the 60th Infantry Brigade, 20th (Light) Division, quartered during the autumn of 1914, the winter and early spring of 1915 in the vicinity of Aldershot (Bisley, Blackdown, Grayshott), and moving in March to Lark Hill Camp, Salisbury Plain.

The Battalion took the field only ten days before the close of the period included in this volume, and the time was occupied in moving up to the front.

Digitized by Google

FROM THE REGIMENTAL DIARY.

To France and Flanders.

July 21st, 1915.—(Lark Hill Camp, Salisbury Plain.) The advanced party, consisting of all Transport and 105 N.C.O.'s and men, under Major E. M. Childers, left Amesbury Station at 3.15 a.m., for Southampton and Havre.

July 22nd.—The Regiment left Amesbury in two trains at 3.25 p.m., and at 4.10 p.m. crossed from Folkestone to Boulogne, in the S.E. and C.R. packet "Queen," arriving at 12 midnight, and marching to the rest camp. Rain.

July 23rd.—At 9.30 a.m. left Boulogne and marched to Point à Pitres Station, where entrained at 12 noon, and joined up with the advanced party from Havre. At 4 p.m. arrived at Lumbres Station and marched to billets at Acquin. (Map : Hazebrouck 5A).

July 24th–26th.—Route marching and instruction.

July 27th.—Marched to billets at Campagne.

July 28th.—Marched to Borre in the evening, and went into billets. Very hot. 62 men fell out, but rejoined in the evening.

July 29th.—Marched to billets between Bailleul and Oultersteene.

July 30th–31st.—Rest, inspections, and training.

The *Army List* [1] of July 1915 showed the following officers as belonging to the 6th Battalion :—

In Command : Lieut.-Colonel E. D. WHITE.

Major (Second in Command) : Major E. M. CHILDERS.

Majors : J. D. W. DAVY, Hon. G. W. F. S. FOLJAMBE.

Captains : R. J. VYNER, R. M. WILLIAMS, J. E. OSBORNE, T. PEARS, J. E. BRYANT, H. E. STEPHENS.

Lieutenants : E. J. ANDERSON, J. T. MILNE, J. S. BOISSIER, A. B. BAINES, H. V. SMITH, R. L. G. HUNT, E. A. SHAW, V. J. F. LACK, G. E. MIDDLEDITCH.

2nd Lieutenants : G. OSMAND, R. B. ROGERS, B. W. FAGAN, L. H. ST. G. FARRER, H. J. SUTHERLAND, A. C. V. GOSSET, D. C. BURN, F. SOUTHAM, F.W. WHITLOCK, E. W. BROOKS, C. C. GOODWYN, C. S. BENSON, C. A. CLUTSOM, G. G. GRAY, A. W. SMITH, G. D. BOISSIER, T. WALKER, T. N. C. HARRIS, S. E. PRODGER, W. E. C. MCILROY, H. G. H. COPEMAN, V. G. BELL, A. TUBBS, R. H. BELL.

Adjutant. Temp. Captain C. R. C. Boyle.

Quartermaster : W. BRAZIER (Hon. Lieutenant).

[1] The Monthly Official Army List at this period cannot be relied on for absolute accuracy, and its information was seldom up to date.—ED.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 7TH (SERVICE) BATTALION FOR 1914–15.

The Battalion was formed at Cowley Barracks, Oxford, of newly enlisted recruits; and on the 26th September 1914 Lieut.-Colonel R. G. H. Hughes (who formerly commanded the 52nd Light Infantry) took over command and proceeded with the Battalion by rail to Sherrington Camp, Codford St. Mary, for training. Strength: 11 officers, 1 warrant officer, 33 N.C.O.'s, and 607 privates.

September 30th.—Major F. J. Newton-King (formerly 43rd Light Infantry), with 2 officers, 17 N.C.O.'s, and 350 privates, joined the Battalion in camp. Total strength of the Battalion: 1,022 of all ranks.

These were formed into 4 Companies, commanded as follows:—

A Company.—Captain R. M. LOGAN (late 1st Battalion).
B Company.—Captain G. E. HARCOURT.
C Company.—Lieut. C. WHEELER.
D Company.—Major F. J. NEWTON-KING (late 1st Battalion).

ROLL OF OFFICERS.

Lieut.-Colonel R. G. H. HUGHES.
Major F. J. NEWTON-KING.
Captain R. M. LOGAN.
Captain G. E. HARCOURT.
Lieut. C. WHEELER.
2nd Lieut. R. B. PEMBERTON.
2nd Lieut. C. L. WICKS.
2nd Lieut. A. D. J. MELLISS.
2nd Lieut. G. C. MILLER.
2nd Lieut. C. C. STATT.
2nd Lieut. R. C. STREATFIELD.
Lieut. and Quartermaster G. J. PRICE.

Digitized by Google

Attached from 3rd (S.R.) Battalion.

Lieut. Colonel G. F. PASKE.
Lieut. H. C. MAUL.
2nd Lieut. C. W. H. BAILIE.

Warrant Officer.

Sergeant-Major L. J. ELLIS (from the Depôt)

The Battalion now formed part of the 78th Infantry Brigade, 26th Division, 3rd New Army, and during the next few weeks the N.C.O.'s and men were clothed in such old uniforms as could be supplied by old clothing contractors. Khaki was impossible to obtain, and the uniforms were mostly of blue serge, with an obsolete pattern service cap. There were no badges; so, in order to identify battalions of the 78th Brigade, patches of buff, blue, white, and green were sewn on the left upper arm, the 7th Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry wearing green.

Arms, accoutrements, and equipment were not yet available for issue.

Training proceeded with vigour as long as the fine weather lasted, but towards the end of October rain set in, when the camping ground became a sea of mud, which practically stopped all useful work.

October 10th.—Captain G. E. Harcourt transferred to the General List.

Lieut. C. Wheeler promoted Captain.

October 17th.—Lieut. F. Debenham joined the Battalion.

November 3rd.—Captain R. M. Logan promoted Major.

November 12th.—On this date the Battalion moved into billets at Oxford, being accommodated at first in New College, Balliol College, Keble College, and the Corn Exchange. Later, billets were taken up in private dwelling-houses in High Street, Longwall Street, and Walton Street, Battalion Headquarters being at No. 3 Wellington Square, and the Officers' Mess at Keble College, where also most of the officers were billeted.

From this time until the following spring the training of the Battalion was carried out principally in the University Parks, Wytham Park, and on Shotover Hill

December 17th.—Captain G. B. Martin joined the Battalion.

Lieut. F. Debenham promoted Captain

Digitized by Google

The following is a list of the officers on the strength of the Battalion on the 31st December 1914 :—

Lieut.-Colonel.

R. G. H. HUGHES.

Major.

F. J. NEWTON-KING (Second in Command).

Captains.

R. M. LOGAN.
G. E. HARCOURT.
P. V. ROSE.
C. WHEELER.

Lieutenants.

M. G. HEPBURN.
F. DEBENHAM.
W. PHELPS.
R. B. PEMBERTON.

2nd Lieutenants.

C. L. WICKS.
A. D. J. MELLISS.
C. C. STATT.
P. C. H. BENNETT.
C. P. KER.
C. A. SALVESEN.
O. S. ROYAL-DAWSON.
S. L. SYMONDS.
A. GRAY.
H. A. HENRY
E. RILEY.
B. L. SIMPSON.
A. H. DITCHBURN
W. A. YOUNG.
G. C. HOLLAND.
A. P. BOOR.
T. F. H. FREMANTLE.
G. C. MILLER.
R. C. STREATFIELD.
J. H. C. KEBLE.
F. A. D. STAHLSCHMIDT.
N. J. PEIRSON.
C. P. BAKER.
S. H. ROWLAND.
W. GARLAND.
G. P. BARBE DE PASS.
D. S. NORTHCOTE
T. W. HATHAWAY.
J. T. S. HOEY.
A. G. GIBBONS.
A. L. THOMAS

Adjutant.

2nd Lieut. D. A. D. SEWELL (2nd Battalion).

Quartermasters.

Lieut. H. WALDER.
Lieut. G. J. PRICE.

1915.

The Battalion continued to occupy billets in Oxford throughout the winter.

January 1st.—Sergeant-Major L. J. Ellis was promoted Captain and appointed Adjutant.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. and Quartermaster J. Price was transferred to the Royal Garrison Artillery, and Regimental Q.M.-Sergeant T. Powell was promoted Lieutenant and Quartermaster.

January 21st.—Lieut.-Colonel R. G. H. Hughes having resigned on account of ill-health, Major F. J. Newton-King was promoted Lieut.-Colonel to command the Battalion.

February 9th.—Captain C. Wheeler promoted Major.

February 15th.—Sergeant-Major J. Guise promoted Captain.

March 1st.—Lieut. C. A. Salvesen promoted Captain.

April 2nd.—Leather equipment was issued to the Battalion.

April 4th.—Lieut. O. Royal-Dawson promoted Captain.

April 28th.—The Battalion moved into huts at Fovant Camp, near Salisbury, joining up with the remainder of the Brigade for Brigade Training.

The 78th Infantry Brigade, commanded by Brigadier-General E. D'A. Thomas, was composed of the following battalions :—

9th (Service) Battalion, Gloucestershire Regiment.

11th (Service) Battalion, Worcestershire Regiment.

7th (Service) Battalion, Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry.

7th (Service) Battalion, Royal Berkshire Regiment.

During the Battalion's period of training the men were encouraged to take part in athletic sports, and several open events were won by them. For the Reading Cross-Country Team Race the Battalion entered two teams, and took 1st and 3rd places. Again at Reading the Battalion won the Army Cross-Country Team Race, and became holders of the Army Championship Cup. (It is noteworthy that in this race the 5th (Service) Battalion of the Regiment took 2nd place, and the 8th (Service) Battalion 3rd place.)

At Stamford Bridge the 7th Battalion won the Seven Mile Marathon Race (for teams of 12) in Marching Order, and was second in the Open Relay Race. It won the 78th Brigade Relay Race on two occasions, and the Open Mile Race was won by Corporal Higgs, of the Battalion, while Private Barwell was second in the High Wycombe Ten Mile Road Race, open to the Army.

July 11th.—Captain F. Debenham promoted Major.

July 20th.—The Battalion marched to huts at Sandhills Camp, near Longbridge Deverill, for divisional training and musketry, the 26th Division being now commanded by Major-General Mackenzie-Kennedy, C.B.

Digitized by Google

July 21*st*.—Major R. M. Logan resigned, and Major C. Wheeler was appointed second in command.

July 25*th*.—The new rifle (R.S.M.L.E. Mark III) was issued to the Battalion, which had previously been training with the D.P. Rifle (L.M.M.).

July 31*st*.—The Officers[1] belonging to the Battalion on this date were as follows:—

Lieut.-Colonel F. J. NEWTON-KING, Commanding.
Major C. WHEELER, Second in Command.
Captain L. J. ELLIS, Adjutant.
Lieut. T. POWELL, Quartermaster.

Company Officers.

Major F. DEBENHAM.
Captain G. B. MARTIN.
Captain J. GUISE.
Captain O. S. ROYAL-DAWSON.
Captain C. A. SALVESEN.
Captain M. G. ARNETT.
Captain B. L. SIMPSON.

Lieutenants.

R. B. PEMBERTON.
G. C. MILLER.
H. A. HENRY.
A. H. DITCHBURN.
C. P. BAKER.
C. L. WICKS.
F. A. D. STAHLSCHMIDT.
H. J. PEIRSON.
J. H. C. KEBLE.

2nd Lieutenants.

T. BOWMAN.
C. P. KER.
W. GARLAND.
D. S. NORTHCOTE.
J. T. S. HOEY.
A. L. THOMAS.
P. E. ANDREWS.
C. H. GREEN.
T. W. WALDING.
J. W. SHAW.
H. W. ROBINSON.
A. S. BOBBY.
R. C. STREATFIELD.
S. L. SYMONDS.
E. RILEY.
T. W. HATHAWAY.
W. A. YOUNG.
A. P. BOOR.
P. L. MOLYNEUX.
C. A. W. MANNING.
W. T. BLAKE.
A. S. HOLIDAY.
G. W. RILEY.

[1] In all cases temporary rank.—ED.

Digitized by Google

Names of Officers in the *Monthly Army List*[1] of July 1915 :—

In Command : Lieut.-Colonel F. J. NEWTON-KING.

Major (*Second in Command*) *:* Vacant.

Majors : R. M. LOGAN, C. WHEELER

Captains : G. B. MARTIN, F. DEBENHAM, L. J. ELLIS, J. GUISE.

Lieutenants : W. PHELPS, R. B. PEMBERTON, C. L. WICKS, G. C. MILLER, F. A. D. STAHLSCHMIDT, C. A. CAVE-BROWN-CAVE, C. A. SALVESEN, O. S. ROYAL-DAWSON.

2nd Lieutenants : T. BOWMAN, J. BOWMAN, C. C. STATT, R. C. STREATFIELD, L. G. CHOWN, P. C. H. BENNETT, J. H. C. KEBLE, C. P. KER, N. J. PEIRSON, C. P. BAKER, S. L. SYMONDS, W. GARLAND, H. A. HENRY, G. P. B. DE PASS, E. RILEY, D. S. NORTHCOTE, B. L. SIMPSON, T. W. HATHAWAY, A. H. DITCHBURN, J. T. S. HOEY, W. A. YOUNG, A. L. THOMAS, A. P. BOOR, P. E. ANDREWS, P. L. MOLYNEUX, N. P. CAMPBELL, H. J. CARR, C. H. GREEN, C. A. W. MANNING, T. W. WALDING, W. T. BLAKE, G. BRADLEY, R. M. SCOTT, G. W. R. BANHAM, M. G. ARNETT, J. W. SHAW, A. S. HOLIDAY, H. W. ROBINSON, G. W. RILEY, A. S. BOBBY.

Adjutant : Captain L. J. ELLIS.

Quartermaster : T. POWELL (Hon. Lieutenant).

---

[1] Officers were so frequently moved from one battalion to another at this time that the Monthly Army List cannot be relied on for accuracy.—ED.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 8TH (SERVICE) BATTALION FOR 1914–1915.

The 8th Battalion was formed at Cowley Barracks, Oxford, early in October 1914, and Brevet-Colonel C. Le G. Justice (Indian Army) was appointed to the command.

On the 14*th October* 480 men, under the command of Captain F. Llewellyn, proceeded from Oxford to Boyton Park Camp, Codford, Wilts, where the Battalion assembled, and went under canvas to commence training, for which purpose a few old N.C.O.'s and privates had been supplied from the Depôt.

The majority of the recruits came from Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire, as well as from Birmingham, and turned out to be a very superior lot of men, respectable and well-behaved, many having given up good situations in civil life in order to serve their country in this great crisis.

During the next few weeks parties of recruits arrived from the Depôt almost daily, and the numbers gradually swelled; but, on the other hand, discharges were numerous, since apparently the Recruiting Medical Officers had passed men who were quite unfit for service. Officers also were appointed and joined in quick succession, amongst whom were the following: 2nd Lieutenants Burt, J. Bowman, T. Bowman, Morgan, Tabor, Tardrew, Thompson, Payne, and Leman joined on the 14th October, on transfer from the North Staffordshire Regiment; 2nd Lieut. A. H. Lowe on the 18th; Company-Sergeant-Major Darnley (who afterwards became Adjutant, and later Major), on the 19th; 2nd Lieuts. Wade-Gery, Dunthorne, and Forwood, on the 22nd; 2nd Lieut. Chown, on the 26th; and Major L. B. Scott (2nd in command) and 2nd Lieut. Eales, on the 28th.

These officers were posted to platoons as they arrived, and by the 19*th October* 7 platoons had received officers. On the 29*th October* the first postings to command companies were made as follows: A Company, 2nd Lieut. Burt; B, 2nd Lieut. J. Bowman; C, 2nd Lieut. T. Bowman. There were now 16 platoons for the first time, with an officer in command of each.

Digitized by Google

The Battalion remained in camp for a month, during which time little or no training was possible, owing to the continuous torrential rain, which made the whole country ankle-deep in mud. The men had no change of clothing or of boots, and they began their soldiering under the most adverse circumstances possible; yet they maintained their keenness and cheerfulness, and their conduct was exemplary.

On the 16*th November* the Battalion moved into billets at Oxford, much to every one's joy, and the men were located in the area south of Magdalen Bridge, while the officers were billeted in Magdalen College, whose President, Sir Herbert Warren, and the College officials went out of their way to make every one comfortable.[1] The billeting being "with subsistence" obviated the necessity of having men on regimental employ, and, consequently, every man turned out on parade each day, which enabled the training to progress rapidly. Moreover, the Battalion now received 690 rifles (D.P.), which, though insufficient in number, were a great help in teaching the men to handle their arms.

During the following week large drafts were sent down from the Depôt, and by the 23*rd November* the Battalion was at war strength. Many new officers also joined, and several promotions were made. Captain Llewellyn was promoted Major, and assumed command of D Company; Q.M.-Sergeant Woollen was promoted Lieutenant and Quartermaster; 2nd Lieuts. Burt, Lowe, and Wade-Gery were promoted Captains; Sergeant-Major Darnley, Captain and Adjutant; while Company-Sergeant-Major Cantwell became Regimental Sergeant-Major. Between the 16th November and the end of the year the following officers joined: 2nd Lieuts. F. S. Straight, G. B. Maul, J. G. Dick, C. S. W. Rayner, E. L. D. Robinson, E. F. Medcalf, A. F. Benjamin, A. Guillaume, H. A. Smith, and W. L. Giffard.

1915.

Early in 1915 the authorities decided to form a Pioneer Battalion for each Division of the new armies, and the 8th Battalion Oxfordshire and Buckinghamshire Light Infantry was selected to become the Pioneer Battalion of the 26th Division, and as far as equipment and material allowed, it commenced its special training as such forthwith.

[1] On leaving at the end of the billeting season, the Officers of the Battalion were invited to consider themselves permanent honorary members of Magdalen College.

Digitized by Google

One hundred service rifles and 16 miniature rifles were now issued, and the Battalion proceeded to make its own miniature range in Headington Hill Park, thrown open for training purposes by Mrs. Herbert Morrell, who also generously lent cottages for regimental offices and stables for the officers' horses. Major L. B. Scott looked after the musketry, and the men became very keen about miniature range shooting, and won many prizes in competitions with other units.

On the 7*th January* Lieut. Tabor was transferred to the Naval Air Wing, and during the month Lieut. G. Bartrum and 2nd Lieuts. J. S. Carrington-Punch and J. E. Pogson-Smith joined.

In *February* various classes for Signallers, Scouts, Machine-gunners, etc., were formed, and specialist training began in earnest. On the 6th 2nd Lieuts. T. Bowman, J. Bowman, and L. G. Chown were transferred to the 7th Battalion, and the following joined before the end of the month : 2nd Lieuts. G. D. Amery, F. N. Lund, W. Simpkin, R. Jee, W. M. Pierce, H. L. Swift, G. L. Haggen (transferred from the Manchester Regiment).

March brought further additions to and alterations in the roll of officers. Lieuts. Tardrew, Dunthorne, and Eales were promoted Captains, and 2nd Lieuts. Payne, A. R. Edwards, Morris, and Maul, Lieutenants; while there joined Lieuts. G. S. Cosby, C. A. Garden, H. L. Groocock, and 2nd Lieuts. P. Y. Brimblecombe, E. F. Chappell, and H. E. Curtis.

2nd Lieut. W. L. Giffard was appointed acting Adjutant on the 22nd March (confirmed in the appointment, 1st May).

With the spring came the move to less restricted training ground, and on the 29*th March* Major Llewellyn, with D Company, 233 strong, left Oxford for Fovant Camp, where for some weeks they were engaged on pioneer work, such as building ranges, sheds, huts, and cisterns, making roads, sinking wells, etc. On the 19*th April* the remainder of the Battalion, which had now reached a total strength of 1,114, and was clothed in khaki for the first time, entrained for Sutton Veny (Salisbury Plain), where No. 1 Camp was occupied, and training was taken up with fresh vigour.

In *April* 2nd Lieuts. G. S. Rose, A. H. Edwards, A. Calder (from the Worcestershire Regiment), C. W. Sheppard, T. N. Watts-Watts, and A. R. Seabrook joined; but within the next three months a good many officers were transferred to other corps: Captain Wade-Gery, 2nd Lieuts. A. Guillaume, and G. B. Smith to the Lancashire Fusiliers; Major L. B. Scott, to the Ordnance Department; Lieut.

Digitized by Google

G. S. Cosby, to the Northumberland Fusiliers; Captain C. A. Garden, to R.E. (Chemical Companies); and 2nd Lieuts. Dick, Robinson, Simpkin, Punch, Swift, Lund, Campbell, and Chappell, to the 9th (Reserve) Battalion of the Regiment.

On May 5th 2nd Lieut. W. H. Shaddock joined, and on the 10th Major F. Llewellyn was appointed second in command, Captain Darnley was promoted Major, Lieuts. Bartrum and Garden Captains, and 2nd Lieuts. Rayner and Medcalf Lieutenants.

At Sutton Veny the Battalion remained in training until its embarkation for overseas in September 1915.

Digitized by Google

THE

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

ROLL OF HONOUR

AUGUST 1914 to AUGUST 1915

Digitized by Google

ROLL OF HONOUR.

OXFORDSHIRE AND BUCKINGHAMSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

AUGUST 1914 to 31st JULY 1915.

Lieut. A. W. BAILEY (*9th Battalion*) was killed in action on the 4th June 1915. He was gazetted temp. Lieutenant, 9th (Service) Battalion, 28th December 1914.

2nd Lieut. AUBREY HAMPDEN BARRINGTON-KENNETT (2nd Battalion, *Supplementary List*), son of Lieut.-Colonel R. H. Barrington-Kennett, H.M.'s Body Guard, was born in 1890, and educated at Radley and University College, Oxford. He was appointed to the Supplementary List of the Regiment (Spec. Res.) as 2nd Lieutenant, 5th April 1913.

2ND LIEUT. A. H. BARRINGTON KENNETT.

Accompanying the 2nd Battalion to France, he took part in the Retreat from Mons, the Battle of the Marne, and the early stages of the Battle of the Aisne; was mortally wounded at La Cour de Soupir on the 19th September 1914, and died of his wounds on the 21st.

Captain FRANCIS HUGH BEAUFORT (*2nd Battalion*), son of Major F. Beaufort (Royal Artillery), was born on the 27th July 1883, and was educated at Wellington, and Christ Church, Oxford (B.A., 1904).

He obtained a commission as 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment, from the University, 16th August 1905; Lieutenant, 10th August 1907; Captain, 18th April 1914. Most of his service was spent with the 1st Battalion in India and Burma, where he played polo for the Regiment in many tournaments. Posted to the 2nd Battalion on promotion to Captain in 1914, he joined, with a reinforcing

Digitized by Google

draft, on the 3rd December 1914, and was killed in action at Richebourg on the 16th May 1915 when in command of B Company.

Captain Beaufort was a great-great-nephew of Colonel H. S. Davis, who served in the 52nd from 1826 to 1851.

CAPTAIN F. H. BEAUFORT.

Lieut. CHARLES M. BERLEIN (*5th Battalion*), eldest son of Mr. and Mrs. J. Berlein, of Cross Oaks, Berkhampstead, was killed in action on the 16th June 1915, aged 27 years.

He was appointed temp. 2nd Lieutenant, 5th (Service) Battalion, 22nd August 1914; promoted temp. Lieutenant, 1st October 1914, and accompanied the Battalion to France in May 1915.

He was the first officer of the 5th Battalion to be killed on active service.

Captain RICHARD REGINALD MAUDE BROOKE (*1st Battalion*) was killed in action in Mesopotamia on the 31st May 1915 in his 38th year.

Born on the 4th February 1878, he was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant (from the Militia), 9th December 1899, and was posted to the 1st Battalion, then at Aldershot under orders to proceed to South Africa. He embarked with the Mounted Infantry Company of the Regiment, and served with it for the greater part of the South African War, his services being officially described as follows: *South African War*, 1899–1902 —Operations in the Orange Free State, February to May 1900, including actions at Vet River (5th and 6th May) and Zand River. Operations in the Transvaal, west of Pretoria, July to 29th November 1900. Operations in Orange River Colony (May to November 1900), including actions at Ladybrand (2nd to 9th September) and Bothaville. Operations in Cape Colony, south of Orange River, 1899–1900. Operations in the Transvaal,

CAPTAIN R. R. M. BROOKE.

Digitized by Google

December 1900 to July 1901, and October 1901 to 31st May 1902 Operations in Orange River Colony, July 1901 to October 1901, and January to March 1902. Queen's Medal with 3 clasps; King's Medal with 2 clasps.

He was promoted Lieutenant 12th January 1901; accompanied the 1st Battalion to England at the conclusion of the South African War, and in January 1903 was transferred to the 2nd Battalion in India, with which he returned again to England in November of the same year. From December 1905 to January 1908 he served at the Regimental Depôt, and from 1908 to 1912 was Adjutant of the 2nd Volunteer Battalion of the Regiment (afterwards 4th (T.F.) Battalion), being promoted Captain on the 28th December 1908.

In April 1912 Captain Brooke rejoined the 2nd Battalion, and in July was posted to the 1st Battalion in India. He accompanied the Battalion to Mesopotamia, and was killed whilst leading his Company in the attack on Norfolk Hill, in the first advance up the Tigris, 31st May 1915.

2nd Lieut. ROBERT EDWARD BUXTON BULL (*2nd Battalion*), elder son of Mr. and Mrs. Herbert Bull, of Castle House, Buckingham, was killed in action at Richebourg on the 16th May 1915, aged 20 years.

He was educated at Malvern and Sandhurst, and received his commission as 2nd Lieutenant (from the R.M. College) on the 15th August 1914 (temp. Lieutenant, 15th November), joining the 2nd Battalion in France on the 8th February 1915.

2ND LIEUT. L. A. DASHWOOD.

2nd Lieut. LIONEL A. DASHWOOD (*2nd Battalion*), who was killed in action at Richebourg on the 16th May 1915, was the son of Sir George Egerton Dashwood, of Egdon Hall, Byfield, Northants, and of Lady Mary Dashwood.

He was promoted (from Corporal, R.E. Motor Cyclists) 2nd Lieutenant, February 1915, and joined the 2nd Battalion in France on the 15th March.

Digitized by Google

Captain ERNEST GEORGE DASHWOOD (1/4th *Battalion*) was killed in the trenches on the 12th May 1915. He was the second son of Sir George Egerton Dashwood, of Egdon Hall, Byfield, Northants, and of Lady Mary Dashwood.

2ND LIEUT. R. E. B. BULL.

He served with the 4th Battalion prior to the war, and was promoted Lieutenant in 1911; Captain, 15th April 1914. He accompanied the Battalion to France in March 1915, and took over the

Digitized by Google

command of B Company (Woodstock) from Captain D. M. Rose (who had been wounded) the day before he was killed.

Captain Dashwood lived for some years at Ludwell Farm, Wootton, and took great interest in local affairs.

2nd Lieut. I. T. DAVIES (*5th Battalion*), son of T. A. Davies, of Freshfield, North Finchley, N., was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 5th Battalion, 26th January 1915, and proceeded with it to France in May.

In the action of the 22nd June 1915 he was last seen leading the assaulting column on the enemy's parapet, and was reported missing. Subsequently reported killed in action.

Captain ROSSLYN CURZON EVELEGH (*2nd Battalion*), elder son of the late Colonel F. J. Evelegh, 52nd Light Infantry, was killed on the 19th September 1914.

He was born on the 13th May 1885, educated at Rugby and Sandhurst, and appointed to the Regiment as 2nd Lieutenant, 10th October 1903, joining the 2nd Battalion at Chatham. Promoted Lieutenant 30th December 1905, and Captain 22nd March 1914. From 1906 to 1910 he was A.D.C. to the Major-General, Mauritius; served at the Depôt, 1911–12; and became Assistant-Adjutant, 2nd Battalion, in October 1912.

As 2nd Captain of C Company, he accompanied the 2nd Battalion to France; was present in the Retreat from Mons, the Battle of the Marne, and the opening phases of the Battle of the Aisne. On the 16th September 1914 he was slightly wounded at Soupir, but returned to duty on the 18th, and was killed at La Cour de Soupir on the following day.

Captain Evelegh was an Interpreter (2nd class) in French.

2nd Lieut. LEONARD AMAURI FILLEUL (*2nd Battalion, attached from 3rd Somerset Light Infantry*), killed on the 21st October 1914, aged 26, was the second son of the Rev. P. W. G. Filleul, Rector of Alfold, Billinghurst, and formerly Rector of Devizes.

He was educated at Trent College, Derbyshire, and Lincoln College, Oxford (B.A.); rowed in his College eight for four years, and in the last year in the winning trial eight. In 1911 he became a master at Monkton Combe School, Bath, and at the outbreak of war joined the Somerset Light Infantry, to which Regiment he became attached (Supplementary List) on leaving the Oxford O.T.C. After training for some weeks at Plymouth he joined the 2nd Battalion, Oxford and Bucks Light Infantry, in Flanders on 8th October.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. PAUL CHANCOURT GIRARDOT (*2nd Battalion*), only son of the late Lieut.-Colonel J. F. Girardot, 43rd Light Infantry (a survivor from the wreck of the "Birkenhead"), was born on the 17th November 1895. Educated at Cheltenham and Sandhurst, he

CAPTAIN R. C. EVELEGH.

Digitized by Google

was gazetted to the Regiment on the 25th February 1914, and joined the 2nd Battalion at Aldershot.

He accompanied the Battalion to France in August 1914, took part in the Retreat from Mons and the Battles of the Marne and

2ND LIEUT. P. C. GIRARDOT.

Digitized by Google

the Aisne, and was killed in action near La Cour de Soupir on the 16th September 1914.

Captain ALLAN HUMPHREY HARDEN (*2nd Battalion*), born on the 23rd March 1881, was the second son of the late Lieut.-Colonel J. E. Harden, and was educated at Dulwich.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment, from the Militia, 5th January 1901; Lieutenant, 2nd September 1901; Captain, 22nd January 1910; Adjutant, T.F., 1908–1912.

War Services.—Served throughout the South African War, 1899–1902, with the Militia and with the 1st Battalion of the Regiment, taking part in the operations in Cape Colony, December 1900 to January 1901, and in the Orange River Colony, January 1901 to May 1902. Queen's Medal with 2 clasps, and King's Medal with 2 clasps.

Proceeded to France with the 2nd Battalion, August 1914, and was present in the Retreat from Mons and the Battles of the Marne and the Aisne. Killed in action near Langemarck (Flanders), during the First Battle of Ypres, 21st October 1914.

Captain Harden was subsequently mentioned in Sir John French's Dispatch of 14th January 1915.

CAPTAIN A. H. HARDEN.

2nd Lieut. JOHN PERCIVAL HERMON-HODGE (*1/4th Battalion*) was killed in the trenches in Ploegsteert Wood on the 28th May. He was the sixth son of Sir Robert and Lady Hermon-Hodge, of Wyfold Court, Oxfordshire. Educated at Radley, he joined the 4th Battalion as 2nd Lieutenant 3rd September 1914, and accompanied it to France in the following March.

Lieut. DOUGLAS H. W. HUMFREY (*3rd Battalion, attached 2nd Battalion*), fourth son of the late Rev. A. G. Humfrey and of Mrs. Humfrey, of Thorpe Mandeville, Northants, was killed in action at Richebourg on the 15th/16th May 1915, aged 27 years.

He was appointed 2nd Lieutenant 3rd Battalion, 2nd December 1911, and joined the 2nd Battalion in France with a reinforcement on the 21st September 1914, taking part in the Battle of the Aisne, and in the subsequent operations in Flanders. Wounded at

Digitized by Google

the Haanixbeck, 23rd October 1914, he was invalided to England, but returned to the 2nd Battalion in France on the 8th February 1915. *See* illustration on page 287.

2nd Lieut. JOHN LESLIE JOHNSTON (*3rd Battalion, attached 2nd Battalion*), son of Canon J. O. Johnston, formerly Principal of Cuddesden College, was killed at Richebourg l'Avoué, on the 11th May 1915.

He was born on the 1st December 1885, and was educated at Radley and Magdalen College, Oxford. He had a most brilliant university career, and at the outbreak of war he was Fellow, Lecturer, and Senior Dean of Arts, Magdalen College. He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 3rd Battalion (from the O.T.C.), 15th August 1914, and joined the 2nd Battalion in France on the 21st February 1915.

On the night of the 11th May 2nd Lieut. Johnston, accompanied by two men, went out to bring in some wounded. The party was fired on by the Germans, 2nd Lieut. Johnston and one of the men being wounded. The latter was eventually brought in by our stretcher-bearers, but no trace could be found of the officer, who it was thought had been picked up by the enemy. He was, however, never again heard of, and it was therefore presumed that he had been killed.

2nd Lieut. JESSE JONES (*2nd Battalion*), killed on the 11th November 1914, had served for 17 years in the ranks of the Regiment, and was promoted 2nd Lieutenant from Company-Sergeant-Major two days before his death.

With the 1st Battalion he took part in the South African War, 1900–1902, and received the Queen's Medal with 4 clasps, and the King's Medal with 2 clasps. He accompanied the 2nd Battalion to France, and was present in the Retreat from Mons, the Battles of the Marne and Aisne, and subsequent engagements.

Major EDWARD HARTLEY KIRKPATRICK (*2nd Battalion*), who was reported missing, and believed killed, at the Battle of Richebourg, 16th May 1915, was the son of the late Edward Kirkpatrick, and was born on the 17th September 1878.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment (University Candidate) from the 13th Middlesex V.R.C., 24th January 1900, and joined the 1st Battalion at Bloemfontein, 27th May 1900; promoted Lieutenant, 5th April 1902; Captain, 13th February 1909. War services.—*South African War*, 1900–1902: Operations in Orange River Colony, May to November 1900, and September 1901

Digitized by Google

to 31st May 1902. Queen's Medal with 2 clasps, King's Medal with 2 clasps.

After the conclusion of the South African War he returned to England with the 1st Battalion, and went to India with it in the autumn of 1903. In the following year he contracted enteric fever,

2ND LIEUT. J. L. JOHNSTON.

Digitized by Google

and in 1905 was invalided home, where he remained on sick leave until the end of 1906, when he was posted to the 2nd Battalion at Tidworth.

From 1908 to 1911 Captain Kirkpatrick was A.D.C. to the Governor and Commander-in-Chief, Gambia, West Africa, and rejoined the 2nd Battalion at Aldershot in April 1912. At the outbreak of war he was doing duty at the Depôt, and on mobilization proceeded with the 3rd Battalion to Portsmouth. On the 8th October 1914 he

MAJOR E. H. KIRKPATRICK.

joined the 2nd Battalion at Soupir, just before it left the Aisne for Flanders; was wounded at Langemarck on the 21st October, and invalided to England; rejoined on the 4th February 1915; mentioned in Dispatches; promoted Brevet-Major, and killed in action on the 15th/16th May.

2nd Lieut. Jenner Stephen Chance Marshall (*2nd Battalion*), only son of the late Mr. Jenner Guest Marshall, of Westcott Barton

Digitized by Google

2ND LIEUT. J. S. C. MARSHALL.

Digitized by Google

Manor, Oxon, and of Mrs. George Miller, of Teffont Rectory, near Salisbury, was born on the 1st June 1895, and educated at Charterhouse and Sandhurst. He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment, 17th September 1913, and proceeded to France with the 2nd Battalion in August 1914, taking part in the Retreat from Mons and the Battles of the Marne and Aisne. In the action near Langemarck (First Battle of Ypres), on the 21st October 1914, he was mortally wounded, and died two days later. He was buried in Ypres Cemetery.

Lieut. HUGH MOCKLER-FERRYMAN (*2nd Battalion*), elder son of Lieut.-Colonel A. F. Mockler-Ferryman, late Oxfordshire Light Infantry, and nephew of Major G. F. Mockler, of the same Regiment, was born on the 3rd May 1892. He was educated at Wellington and Sandhurst, and was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment, 20th September 1911. Promoted Lieutenant, 27th April 1914.

He accompanied the 2nd Battalion to France in August 1914, being present in the Retreat from Mons, the Battle of the Marne, and the early stages of the Battle of the Aisne. He was killed in action on the 16th September 1914, near La Cour de Soupir, and was buried in the churchyard at Soupir.

Lieut. Mockler-Ferryman played cricket for the Regiment, as well as for Berkshire, and the Aldershot Command.

Lieut. CHRISTOPHER FOWLER MURPHY (*2nd Battalion*), younger son of the Reverend Canon R. W. Murphy, M.A., Rector of Clifden, Connemara, was born on the 17th May 1889, and was educated at Abbey School, Tipperary, and Trinity College, Dublin.

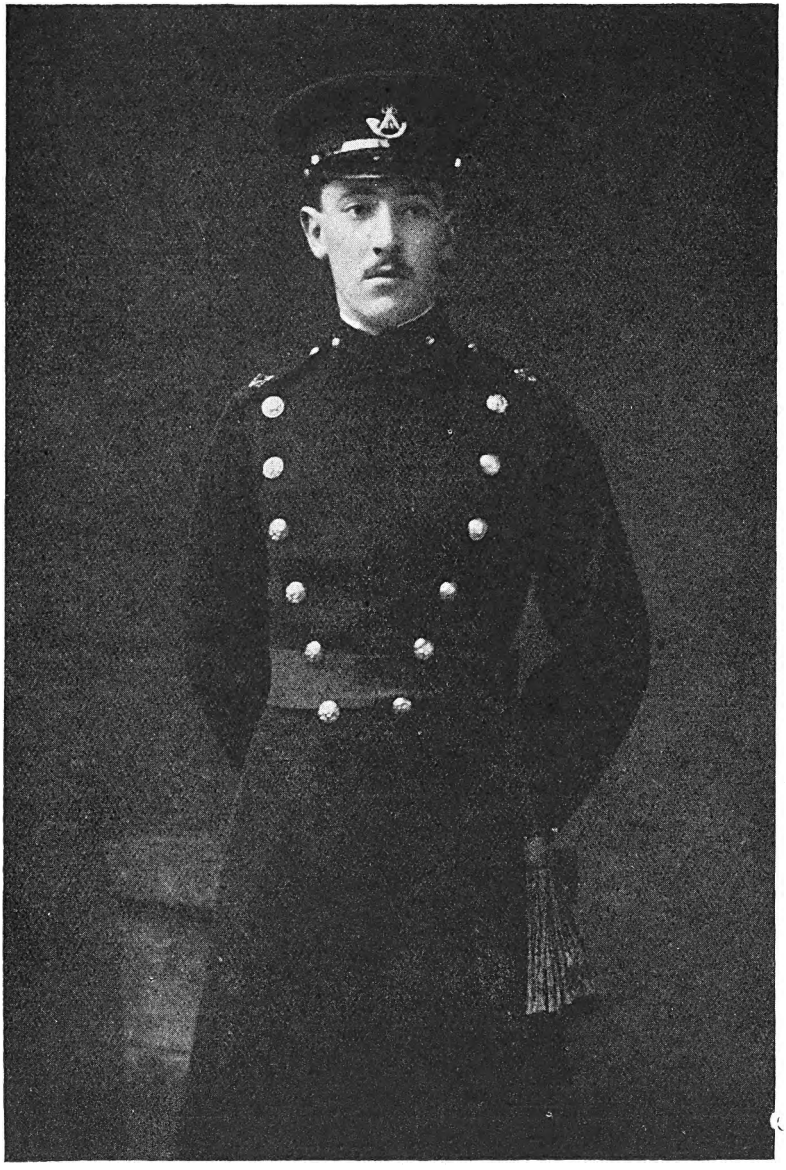
He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant (from the Special Reserve), 7th December 1910, and joined the 1st Battalion in India, where he served until early in 1914, being promoted Lieutenant, 22nd January 1914. In April of this year he was appointed Assistant District Commissioner at the Gold Coast, and was placed on half-pay to take up the appointment. Rejoining at the outbreak of war, he first did duty at the Depôt at Cowley, and then (8th October 1914) joined the 2nd Battalion in France, taking part in the operations on the Aisne, and subsequently in Flanders.

He was killed in action near Langemarck (First Battle of Ypres) on the 21st October 1914 while leading his company in an attack.

2nd Lieut. FRANCIS PEPYS, D.S.O. (*2nd Battalion*), second son of Captain Arthur Pepys, of Budleigh Salterton, was born in 1891, and was educated at Charterhouse and Sandhurst.

Digitized by Google

He was gazetted to the Regiment as 2nd Lieutenant (from the Special Reserve), 24th May 1913, and joined the 2nd Battalion at Aldershot. Proceeding to France with the Battalion, he was



LIEUT. HUGH MOCKLER-FERRYMAN.

Digitized by Google

present in the Retreat from Mons, the Battle of the Marne, the Battle of the Aisne, and the operations in Flanders up to the time of his death. He was killed near Ypres on the 12th November 1914 by a shrapnel bullet (*see* page 204), and in the following month

LIEUT. C. F. MURPHY.

his name appeared in the *London Gazette* in the list of officers awarded the DISTINGUISHED SERVICE ORDER, as follows :—

"On November 3rd conspicuous good work in advancing from his trench and assisting in driving away a party of the enemy who were

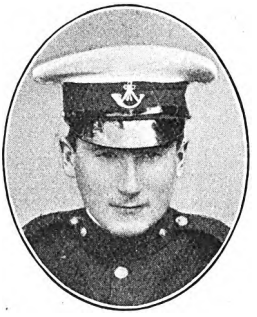
Digitized by Google

commencing to dig a new trench within thirty yards of his own. Thirty of the enemy were shot down on the occasion. (Since killed in action)."

A fuller account of this service will be found on page 198 of this volume. He was also mentioned in Sir John French's Dispatches of January 1915.

A good cricketer, 2nd Lieut. Pepys played regularly for the Regiment and for the Aldershot Command during the seasons of 1913 and 1914.

He was a great-grandson of Major John Woodgate, a 52nd Peninsular officer.



LIEUT. F. PEPYS, D.S.O.

Lieut. REGINALD DACRES RENDEL (*2nd Battalion*), younger son of the late Mr. L. J. Rendel and of Mrs. Rendel, of Arverne, Crowborough, was killed in action at Richebourg on the 16th May 1915.

He was born on the 3rd May 1896, was educated at Wellington and Sandhurst, and was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant (from the R.M. College) 11th August 1914; temporary Lieutenant, 15th November 1914.

Joining the 2nd Battalion on the 3rd December 1914, he served with it up to the time of his death.

2nd Lieut. FRANCIS EDMUND LANGTON RIDDLE (*2nd Battalion*), killed at Richebourg on the 16th May 1915, was the second surviving son of the Rev. A. E. Riddle, Rector of Todmorton, Banbury, and was born on the 10th June 1893.

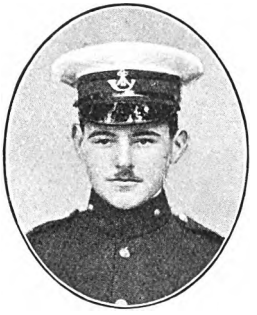
He was educated at Bloxham, and was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant, 3rd Battalion, on the 1st October 1913, mobilizing with that Battalion at the outbreak of war. On the 1st September 1914 he received a permament commission as 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment, and was posted to the 2nd Battalion. After doing duty on the recruiting staff at the Depôt for some weeks, he joined the 2nd Battalion in France on the 4th December 1914, and served with it throughout the winter and ensuing spring. *See* illustration, page 289.

Lieut. G. M. R. TURBUTT (*3rd Battalion, attached to 2nd Battalion*), was killed at Langemarck on the 21st October 1914.

He had served in the 3rd Battalion prior to the war, his promotion to Lieutenant being dated 5th March 1910, and he joined the

Digitized by Google

2nd Battalion in France, with the first reinforcement, on the 4th September 1914, at the close of the Retreat from Mons. He took part in the Battles of the Marne and Aisne, the First Battle of Ypres, and subsequent operations in Flanders up to the time of his death.



LIEUT. A. TYLDEN-PATTENSON.

Lieut. ARTHUR DAGNALL TYLDEN-PATTENSON (*2nd Battalion*), only son of Major and Mrs. A. H. Tylden-Pattenson, of Telham Place, Battle, Sussex, was killed at Richebourg St. Vaast, near Bethune, on the 5th January 1915, in his 21st year.

He was born on the 17th March 1894, and on passing out of the R.M. College, Sandhurst, was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant in the Regiment 24th January 1914. He joined the 2nd Battalion at Aldershot, and went with it to France, being present in the Retreat from Mons, the Battles of the Marne and Aisne, the first Battle of Ypres, and subsequent engagements in Flanders. He was slightly wounded at Soupir (Aisne), 16th September 1914, but was able to return to duty two days later. He was appointed temporary Lieutenant 15th November 1914.

Lieut. Tylden-Pattenson's great-grandfather (Cooke Tylden-Pattenson) served with the 43rd throughout the Peninsular War,[1] and another ancestor, Sir John Maxwell Tylden, served in the 43rd from 1804 to 1811, and in the 52nd from 1811 to 1826.[2]

2nd Lieut. JACK BOUVERIE MALLAM WARD (*2nd Battalion*), second son of Mr. F. Ward, of Wallasey, Caterham, Surrey, was killed in action on the 6th November 1914, aged 19.

He was gazetted 2nd Lieutenant (from the R.M. College, Sandhurst) 8th August 1914, and joined the 2nd Battalion in Flanders only two days before his death.

He was mentioned in Sir John French's Dispatches of January 1915.

2ND LIEUT. J. B. M. WARD.

[1] *See* CHRONICLE, 1912, page 186. [2] *See* CHRONICLE, 1898, page 113.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. CORNWALLIS JOHN WARNER (*3rd Battalion, attached to 2nd Battalion*), who was killed at Richebourg on the 16th May 1915, had served in the 3rd Battalion some time previous to the war (1906–1914), and had resigned in May 1914. On the 26th September 1914 he was re-appointed to it as Lieutenant, and joined the 2nd Battalion in France on the 26th December.

He was the 2nd son of Colonel Sir Courtenay Warner, Bart. (formerly commanding the 3rd Battalion), and of Lady Leucha Diana Warner, and was born on the 1st February 1884.

Educated at Eton and Christ Church, Oxford, he was called to the Bar in 1911, in December of which year he unsuccessfully contested Salisbury as a Liberal.

LIEUT. C. J. WARNER.

Lieut. REGINALD GEORGE WORTHINGTON (*2nd Battalion*), second son of the late G. M. Worthington and Mrs. Worthington, of Dyson's Wood, near Reading, was killed at Soupir on the 16th September 1914. He was born on the 4th December 1886, and was appointed 2nd Lieutenant (from the Militia), 6th May 1908; promoted Lieutenant, 1st April 1911.

LIEUT. R. G. WORTHINGTON.

He accompanied the Battalion to France as Scout Officer, and carried out valuable work during the Retreat from Mons, the Battle of the Marne, and the first days of the Battle of the Aisne.

He was awarded (posthumously) the Cross of Chevalier of the Legion of Honour (France).

Digitized by Google

OBITUARY.

AUGUST 1914 TO 31ST JULY 1915.

COLONEL STANLEY CROZIER.

Died on the 9th January 1915 at Folkestone.

He entered the 43rd Light Infantry as Ensign, 8th June 1855; Lieutenant, 8th January 1856; Captain, 30th April 1864; Major, 1st December 1875; Lieut.-Colonel, 1st July 1881; Colonel, 1st July 1885. He commanded the 43rd from 1885 to 1887; retired on half-pay, 1st July 1887; and on retired pay, 12th August 1889.

Colonel Crozier served with the 43rd in the Indian Mutiny Campaign, 1857–8, and was present at the actions of Sahao, Dooleypore, and Purraha, for which he received the Medal. He also served with the Regiment in the New Zealand War, 1863–6, and took part in the engagements at Te Arie, Te Piro, and Ngapuke-Teiranga. Medal.

A portrait of Colonel Crozier will be found in the CHRONICLE, 1893.

Digitized by Google

SUBSCRIBERS TO THE CHRONICLE.

VOLUME XXIV.

The late Major H. A. Adair
Lieut. E. C. J. Allday.
Lieut. W. A. R. Ames.
Captain E. J. Anderson, M.C.
Captain Hon. C. A. J Annesley.
The late Major-General T. M. Bailie.
Captain C. W. H. Bailie.
Captain C. S. Baines, D.S.O.
Major J. A. Ballard.
Lieut. W. L. Barnard.
Mrs. Barrington-Kennett.
Major A. J. N. Bartlett, D.S.O.
Captain Bartlett.
Colonel A. G. Bayley, D.S.O.
Major C. B. Benson, D.S.O.
Captain H. T. Birch-Reynardson.
Lieut. R. Blackwell.
Major G. Blewitt, D.S.O., M.C.
Lieut. E. K. Blyth.
Miss P. Boardman.
The Misses Boardman.
Captain P. A. Bobby, M.C.
Lieut. P. Booth.
Major U. J. D. Bourke.
Captain E. T. C. Bower.
J. Bowman, Esq.
Major C. J. Boyle.[1]
Major R. J. Brett.
Major A. A. Bridgewater.
Captain W. T. Brindley.
Colonel H. R. M. Brooke-Popham, C.M.G., D.S.O.
Lieut. J. R. Brown.
The late Lieut. R. E. B. Bull.
J. A. Carfrae, Esq.
Colonel J. Colebrooke Carter.[1]
Major L. J. Carter, D.S.O.
Lieut. W. H. Carter.
Lieut. T. G. C. Caulfield-Stoker.
Lieut. Challenger.
Captain C. T. Chevallier.
Major C. O. Chichester.
Major E. M. Childers.
Captain G. Christie-Miller, D.S.O., M.C.
Colonel W. Clark.
Colonel P. T. Clark.
Lieut.-Colonel E. R. Clayton, D.S.O.
Lieut. R. H. Coad.
Lieut.-Colonel C. H. Cobb.
Miss E. M. Cobb.
Lieut. T. A. Coffin.
Lieut. J. F. Collinge.
The late Lieut.-General Sir F. M. Colvile, K.C.B.

[1] Member of CHRONICLE Committee.

Digitized by Google

Brigadier-General G. N. Colvile, D.S.O.
Lieut.-Colonel Lord Cottesloe.
Lady Courtis.
Lieut. F. H. Cowell.
Lieut. P. E. Craddock.
Captain A. T. Crosse.
Major R. B. Crosse, D.S.O.[1]
Lieut. C. R. Crosley.
Lieut. L. M. Crosfield.
Captain G. Crouch.
Lieut. W. C. M. Cubbage.
Lieut.-Colonel W. H. Cunliffe.
Lieut. J. C. Cunningham.
Major P. A. Curry, O.B.E.
Lieut.-Colonel Sir C. Cuyler, Bart., O.B.E.
Lieut. R. H. Dalbriac.
Brigadier-General Hon. A. E. Dalzell, C.B.
Major H. F. Darell-Brown.
A. Davenport, Esq.
Miss Davenport.
Lieut. C. T. Davenport.
Major-General H. R. Davies, C.B.
Major J. D. W. Davy.
Captain C. Dean.
The late Lieut.-Colonel H. M. Dillon, D.S.O.
Lieut.-Colonel H. M. S. Douglas.
Lieut. L. S. Dowson.
Lieut.-Colonel G. Drage, D.S.O.
Lieut. H. S. Eagle.
W. Eccles, Esq.
Colonel A. J. F. Eden, C.M.G., D.S.O.[1]
Captain M. Edmunds.
Captain L. J. Ellis.
Mrs. Evelegh.
The late Major C. E. G. M. Fairtlough.
Captain H. G. Fane.
Major-Gen. Sir R. Fanshawe, K.C.B., D.S.O.
Major R. M. Feilden.
Captain G. Field, M.C.
Captain M. G. Fielding, M.C.
Major C. Fitzgerald.
Lieut. R. A. Fitzgerald.
Lieut.-Colonel Earl Fitzwilliam, K.C.V.O., D.S.O.
Major Hon. G. W. F. S. Foljambe.
Lieut. C. E. P. Foreshew, M.C.
Captain C. A. Fowke, M.C.
Lieut.-Colonel C. H. Frith.
Lieut. L. E. W. O. Fullbrook-Leggatt, M.C.
Colonel J. F. C. Fuller, D.S.O.
Lieut. C. B. Gamlen.
Lieut. L. W. Giles, M.C.
Major P. T. Godsal.
Captain B. Green, M.C.
Captain W. H Green.
Captain G. H. Greenwell, M.C.
Lieut.-Colonel P. A. Hall, D.S.O., M.C.
Colonel Sir St. V. A. Hammick, Bart.[2]
The late Captain S. F. Hammick
Major-General Sir J. Hanbury-Williams, K.C.B., K.C.V.O., C.M.G.[3]
J. N. Hardcastle, Esq.

[1] Member of CHRONICLE Executive Committee.
[2] Member of CHRONICLE Committee.
[3] President of CHRONICLE Committee.

Digitized by Google

Mrs. Harden.
Lieut. R. M. Harman.
Lieut. D. E. Haymen.
Captain A. Henley.
Major C. F. Henley.
Major F. J. Henley.
Lieut.-Colonel C. G. Higgins, D.S.O.
The late Colonel H. N. Holden, D.S.O.
Major F. V. Holt, C.M.G., D.S.O.
Follet Holt, Esq.
Lieut. H. D. Hopcraft.
Captain K. Horan.
Lieut C. R. Horley.
Lieut.-Colonel R. G. H. Hughes.
Lieut.-Colonel W. C. Hunter.
Captain C. A. Hutchins.
Major T. Ivey.
Lieut. K. S. Jefferson.
Lieut.-Colonel J. Johnstone.
Major R. D. Keyworth.
Lieut. H. W. Kirkham.
Mrs. Kite.
Brigadier-General F. G. L. Lamotte, C.M.G.
A. R. M. Langhorne, Esq.
Captain F. W. Laylor.
Lieutenant-Colonel E. A. E. Lethbridge, C.M.G., D.S.O.
W. A. Littledale, Esq.
Lieut. F. C. Loundes, M.C.
Lieut. R. C. Loverock.
Major R. C. Luard.
Lieut. A. E. Mason.
Mrs. G. Martin.
Colonel W. Marriott-Dodington.
The late Captain J. P. Meade.
Mrs. Miller.
The late Major C. J. Mitchell, D.S.O.
Major G. F. Mockler.
Lieut.-Colonel A. F. Mockler-Ferryman.[1]
Lieut.-Colonel A. C. Money.
Captain H. Money, M.C.
Major W. E. T. Morland, D.S.O., M.C.[2]
Captain S. C. B. Mundey.
Lieut. J. B. Murray.
Lieut.-Colonel G. S. F. Napier.
Lieut. Naylor.
Lieut. G. Naylor.
Captain A. F. Newbolt.
Lieut.-Colonel F. J. Newton-King.
Lieut. J. E. Neville, M.C.
Captain H. C. Nisbet.
Lieut. R. G. Norman.
Miss Odell.
Lieut.-Colonel R. L. Ovey, D.S.O.
The late Major R. M. Owen.
Lieut.-Colonel W. Owen.
Captain R. C. R. Owen, C.M.G.
Major B. C. T. Paget, D.S.O., M.C.
Major A. C. Paris, M.C.
Lieut.-Colonel C. Parr, C.B.E.
Major C. C. Pearson.
Lieut. G. E. Pearson.
Captain T. H. Pearson.
Captain J. H. Peel, M.C.
Captain H. V. Pendavis, D.S.O.
D. H. J. Peploe, Esq.
Captain Arthur Pepys.
Lieut. D. S. L. Perkins.

[1] Hon. Editor.
[2] Member of CHRONICLE Executive Committee.

Digitized by Google

Major P. Pickford, D.S.O., M.C.
Lieut. F. H. Plaistowe.
Major G. F. Plowden, M.C.
Miss Pocklington.
Major J. A. Pollock, D.S.O.
Colonel L. H. R. Pope-Hennessy, D.S.O.
Captain J. L. Portal, D.S.O.
Captain J. J. Powell.
Colonel H. L. Powys.
Lieut. W. A. Ramsay.
Captain V. W. H. Ranger, M.C.
Captain N. S. Reid, D.S.O., M.C
The late Lieut. R. D. Rendel.
Colonel L. L. C. Reynolds, D.S.O.
The late Lieut. F. E. L. Riddle
Captain P. M. Ridout.
Captain E. Riley.
Lieut. B. F. Roberts.
Lieut.-Colonel H. L. Ruck-Keene, D.S.O.
Lieut.-Colonel R. E. Salkeld.
Captain C. A. Salvesen, M.C.
Major A. E. Sanderson, D.S.O.
Lieut. R. W. Sawers.
F. W. M. D. Scott, Esq.
Major L. F. Scott.[1]
L. B. Sebastian, Esq.
Captain D. A. D. Sewell.
Captain A. J. Shaw.
Lieut. G. W. Shaw.
Lieut. E. C. Simmons.
Lieut. H. A. Smith, M.C.
Captain E. L. Somers-Cocks.
Captain J. A. Southey.
Major A. V. S. Spencer, D.S.O.
Lieut. Stall.
Lieut.-Colonel E. A. Stanton.
Lieut.-Colonel F. H. Stapleton, C.M.G.
Major R. Stephens.
Mrs. Stokes.
Colonel J. A. Strachan.
Captain A. T. W. Stukeley, M.C.
Lieut. O. H. M. Sturges.
Lieut.-Colonel G. A. Sullivan, D.S.O.
The late Major F. A. B. Talbot.
Lieut. H. Taylor.
Captain W. H. Taylor.
Major H A. Terry.
Captain W. E. C. Terry.
Lieut. W. E. Thompson.
Lieut. J. Thorne.
Major G. W. Titherington.
Captain W. G. Tolson, M.C.
Major S. John Tombs.
Major L. Tunnard.
Major A. Tylden-Pattenson, D.S.O.
Lieut. T. Tyrwhitt-Drake, M.C.
Lieut. H. Vernon.
Lieut. E. H. Vigars, D.C.M.
Colonel E. Villiers, A.D.C.
Lieut. W. R. Vince.
F. Ward, Esq.
Lieut.-Colonel L. E. S. Ward, C.M.G., D.S.O.
Sir Courtenay Warner, Bart.
Lieut. R. C. Warren, M.C.
Lieut.-Colonel R. E. Watt.
Lieut. J P. Wayte, M.C.
Lieut.-Colonel J. T. Weatherby D.S.O.
Captain G. E. Webster.
Lieut. H. E. Wells.

[1] Hon. Treasurer.

Digitized by Google

Major C. Wheeler, D.S.O.
Colonel E. D. White, C.M.G.
Captain E. H. Whitfeld, M.C.
Lieut. P. H. R. Whitehead.
Major G. E. Whittall, M.C.
Mrs. R. C. Wicks.
Lieut. F. J. Wilcox, M.C.
Major C. H. Williams.
Lieut.-Colonel H. M. Williams.
Lieut. R. G. Wilsdon.
The late Lieut.-Colonel Hon. G. H. Windsor-Clive.
W. H. Wingfield, Esq.
Major H. L. Wood.
Mrs. Worthington.
Major P. L. Wright, M.C.
Captain J. W. G. Wyld, D.S.O., M.C.
G. B. Young, Esq.
The Superintendent of Publications, H.M. Stationery Office.
The Agency to the University Libraries.

A few extra copies of this Volume are for sale at £1 1s.; application should be made to Major L. F. Scott, 4 Rawlinson Road, Oxford.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google